

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
Washington, D.C. 20549**

**FORM F-1  
REGISTRATION STATEMENT  
UNDER  
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

**ZYMEWORKS INC.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

**Canada**  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

**2834**  
(Primary Standard Industrial  
Classification Code Number)

**47-2569713**  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

Suite 540—1385 West 8<sup>th</sup> Avenue  
Vancouver, BC V6H 3V9  
(604) 678-1388

(Address, including zip code and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

CT Corporation System  
1209 Orange Street  
Wilmington, DE 19801  
(302) 658-7581

(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

*Copies to:*

**Riccardo Leofanti**  
Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom  
LLP  
222 Bay Street, Suite 1750  
Toronto, ON, M5K 1J5  
(416) 777-4700

**Joseph Garcia**  
Blake, Cassels & Graydon LLP  
595 Burrard Street,  
Suite 2600  
Vancouver, BC, V7X 1L3  
(604) 631-3307

**Charles S. Kim**  
David Peinsipp  
Andrew S. Williamson  
Cooley LLP  
4401 Eastgate Mall  
San Diego, CA, 92121  
(858) 550-6000

**David Frost**  
McCarthy Tétrault LLP  
745 Thurlow Street,  
Suite 2400  
Vancouver, BC, V6E 0C5  
(604) 643-7113

**Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public:** As soon as practicable after this Registration Statement becomes effective.

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, check the following box.

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(d) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

**CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE**

Title of Each Class of Securities To Be Registered	Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price(1)(2)	Amount of Registration Fee
Common Shares	\$	\$

(1) Estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the registration fee in accordance with Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act").

(2) Includes common shares the underwriters have the option to purchase to cover over-allotments, if any.

**The Registrant hereby amends this Registration Statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the Registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this Registration Statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act or until the Registration Statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.**

The information in this preliminary prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This preliminary prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and we are not soliciting offers to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED FEBRUARY 23, 2017

PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS



Shares

# Zymeworks Inc.

## Common Shares

We are offering \_\_\_\_\_ common shares. Prior to this offering there has been no public market for our shares. We currently expect the initial public offering price to be between \$ \_\_\_\_\_ and \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per common share.

We have applied to list our common shares on the New York Stock Exchange and, we intend to apply to list our common shares on the Toronto Stock Exchange, under the symbol “ZYME.”

We are an emerging growth company, as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 and, as such, will be subject to reduced public company reporting requirements.

Investing in our common shares involves a high degree of risk. See “[Risk Factors](#)” beginning on page 13.

	<u>Per share</u>	<u>Total</u>
Initial public offering price	\$ _____	\$ _____
Underwriting discounts and commissions(1)	\$ _____	\$ _____
Proceeds to us, before expenses	\$ _____	\$ _____

(1) See “Underwriting” for additional information regarding total underwriter compensation.

We have granted the underwriters the right to purchase up to an additional \_\_\_\_\_ common shares to cover over-allotments, if any. The underwriters can exercise this right at any time within 30 days after the date of this prospectus.

The underwriters expect to deliver the common shares against payment in New York, New York on or about \_\_\_\_\_, 2017.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state or Canadian securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or passed upon the adequacy or accuracy of this prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

*Joint Book-Running Managers*

**Citigroup**

**Barclays**

**Wells Fargo Securities**

*Lead Manager*

**Canaccord Genuity**

*Co-Manager*

**Cormark Securities (USA) Limited**

Prospectus dated \_\_\_\_\_, 2017

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<a href="#">SUMMARY</a>	1
<a href="#">RISK FACTORS</a>	13
<a href="#">CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</a>	60
<a href="#">PRESENTATION OF FINANCIAL INFORMATION</a>	63
<a href="#">EXCHANGE RATE DATA</a>	63
<a href="#">MARKET, INDUSTRY AND OTHER DATA</a>	63
<a href="#">USE OF PROCEEDS</a>	64
<a href="#">DIVIDEND POLICY</a>	66
<a href="#">CAPITALIZATION</a>	67
<a href="#">DILUTION</a>	69
<a href="#">SELECTED HISTORICAL CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL DATA</a>	71
<a href="#">UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</a>	73
<a href="#">MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS</a>	74
<a href="#">BUSINESS</a>	96
<a href="#">MANAGEMENT</a>	155
<a href="#">EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION</a>	168
<a href="#">CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS</a>	178
<a href="#">PRINCIPAL SHAREHOLDERS</a>	181
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF SHARE CAPITAL</a>	184
<a href="#">SHARES ELIGIBLE FOR FUTURE SALE</a>	191
<a href="#">TAXATION</a>	193
<a href="#">UNDERWRITING</a>	201
<a href="#">EXPENSES RELATED TO THIS OFFERING</a>	208
<a href="#">LEGAL MATTERS</a>	209
<a href="#">EXPERTS</a>	210
<a href="#">CHANGES IN REGISTRANT'S CERTIFYING ACCOUNTANT</a>	211
<a href="#">WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION</a>	212
<a href="#">INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</a>	F-1

---

Neither we nor the underwriters have authorized anyone to provide you with information other than that contained in this prospectus or in any free writing prospectus prepared by or on behalf of us or to which we have referred you. We take no responsibility for, and can provide no assurance as to the reliability of, any other information that others may give to you. The information contained in this prospectus or any free writing prospectus is accurate only as of the date of this prospectus or such free writing prospectus, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus or any free writing prospectus.

We are offering to sell, and seeking offers to buy, common shares only in jurisdictions where offers and sales are permitted. Neither we nor the underwriters have taken any action to permit a public offering of our common shares or the possession or distribution of this prospectus in any jurisdiction where action for that purpose is required, other than the United States and Canada. You are required to inform yourselves about and to observe any restrictions relating to this offering and the distribution of this prospectus.

We own or have rights to trademarks, service marks or trade names that we use in connection with the operation of our business. In addition, our names, logos and website names and addresses are our service marks or trademarks. Azymetric, Zymeworks, ZymeCAD and the phrase "Building Better Biologics" are our registered trademarks. The other trademarks, trade names and service marks appearing in this prospectus are the property of their respective owners. Solely for convenience, the trademarks, service marks, tradenames and copyrights

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

referred to in this prospectus are listed without the ©, ® and TM symbols, but we will assert, to the fullest extent under applicable law, our rights or the rights of the applicable licensors to these trademarks, service marks and tradenames.

We express all amounts in this prospectus in U.S. dollars, except where otherwise indicated. References to “\$” and “US\$” are to U.S. dollars and references to “C\$” are to Canadian dollars. Except as otherwise noted, all amounts referred to in this prospectus as “\$”, as converted” shall mean the U.S. dollar amount applying the conversion rate from Canadian dollars as of December 31, 2016. See “Exchange Rate Data.”

Except as otherwise indicated, references in this prospectus to “Zymeworks,” “the Company,” “we,” “us” and “our” refer to Zymeworks Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries. Furthermore, except as otherwise indicated, references to “Merck,” “Lilly,” “Celgene,” “GSK,” and “Daiichi” refer to Merck Sharp & Dohme Research Ltd., Eli Lilly and Company, Celgene Corporation and Celgene Alpine Investment Co. LLC, GlaxoSmithKline Intellectual Property Development Limited and Daiichi Sankyo Co., Ltd., respectively.

## SUMMARY

*This summary highlights certain information contained elsewhere in this prospectus. This summary does not contain all of the information that may be important to you. You should read and carefully consider the following summary together with the entire prospectus, especially the “Risk Factors” section of this prospectus and our consolidated financial statements and the notes thereto appearing elsewhere in this prospectus before deciding to invest in our common shares. For more information on our business refer to the “Business” section of this prospectus. Some of the statements in this prospectus constitute forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in such forward-looking statements as a result of certain factors, including those discussed in the “Risk Factors” and other sections of this prospectus. See “Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements.”*

### Overview

Zymeworks is an innovative, clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company dedicated to the discovery, development and commercialization of next-generation multifunctional biotherapeutics, initially focused on the treatment of cancer. Our suite of complementary therapeutic platforms and our fully-integrated drug development engine provide the flexibility and compatibility to precisely engineer and develop highly-differentiated product candidates. These capabilities have resulted in multiple wholly-owned product candidates with the potential to drive superior outcomes in large underserved and unaddressed patient populations, as further described below.

Our lead product candidate, ZW25, is a novel bispecific (dual-targeting) antibody currently being evaluated in an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial, targeting two distinct domains of the human epidermal growth factor receptor 2, or HER2, a protein that promotes the growth of cancer cells. This unique design enables ZW25 to address patient populations with all levels of HER2 expression, including those with low to intermediate HER2-expressing tumors, who are otherwise limited to chemotherapy or hormone therapy. Approximately 81% of patients with HER2-expressing breast cancer and 57% of patients with HER2-expressing gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer have tumors that express low to intermediate levels of HER2, making them ineligible for treatment with currently-approved HER2-targeted therapies, such as Herceptin and Perjeta, which generated combined sales of \$8.3 billion in 2015. In our Phase 1 clinical trial, ZW25 has demonstrated preliminary anti-tumor activity across multiple cancer types in patients who have progressed after several lines of treatment with HER2-targeted therapies. Our second product candidate, ZW33, capitalizes on the unique design of ZW25 and is a bispecific antibody-drug conjugate, or ADC, based on the same antibody framework as ZW25 but armed with a cytotoxic (potent cancer cell-killing) payload. We designed ZW33 to be a best-in-class HER2-targeting ADC for several indications characterized by HER2 expression for which we expect to initiate a Phase 1 clinical trial in the second half of 2017. We are also advancing a deep pipeline of preclinical product candidates and discovery-stage programs in immuno-oncology and other therapeutic areas. In addition to our wholly-owned pipeline, two of our therapeutic platforms have been further leveraged through multiple revenue-generating strategic partnerships with the following global pharmaceutical companies: Merck, Lilly, Celgene, GSK and Daiichi.

Our proprietary capabilities and technologies include four modular, complementary therapeutic platforms that can be easily used in combination with each other and with existing approaches. This ability to layer technologies without compromising manufacturability enables us to engineer next-generation biotherapeutics with synergistic activity, which we believe will result in superior patient outcomes. Our core platforms include:

- **Azymetric**, our bispecific platform, which enables therapeutic antibodies to bind two distinct locations on a target, known as epitopes. This is achieved by tailoring multiple configurations of the antibody’s Fab regions (locations on the antibody to which epitopes bind);
- **ZymeLink**, our ADC platform, which comprises multiple cytotoxic payloads and the linker technology used to couple these payloads to tumor-targeting antibodies or proteins. This platform can be used in conjunction with our other therapeutic platforms to increase safety and efficacy as compared to existing ADC technologies;

- **EFECT**, which enables finely-tuned modulation (both up and down) of immune cell recruitment and function; and
- **AlbuCORE**, our antibody-alternative platform, which augments the properties of naturally-occurring human serum albumin, or HSA, with multivalent (multi-targeted) binding to enable complex mechanisms of action that are not amenable to antibody-based approaches.

Our protein engineering expertise and proprietary structure-guided molecular modeling capabilities enable these therapeutic platforms. Together with our internal antibody discovery and generation technologies, we have established a fully-integrated drug development engine and toolkit that is capable of rapidly delivering a steady pipeline of next-generation product candidates in oncology and other therapeutic areas.

The field of oncology has benefited from major advances in the understanding of cancer biology over the past decade, which have led to the development of several successful biotherapeutics contributing to a global market valued at greater than \$83.7 billion in 2015 and projected to grow to \$128.0 billion by 2020. Despite this scientific progress, cancer remains the second-leading cause of death worldwide, leaving a substantial opportunity for Zymeworks to develop and deliver more effective medicines. We believe our novel therapeutic platforms, and our ability to build better biologics, uniquely position us to take advantage of recent advancements in cancer biology and address these underserved patient populations.

Our lead product candidate, ZW25, is an Azymetric bispecific antibody currently being evaluated in an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial, which simultaneously binds two non-overlapping epitopes of HER2 resulting in dual HER2 signal blockade and increased tumor cell binding, immune cell recruitment and HER2 receptor downregulation as compared to existing HER2-targeted therapies. In our Phase 1 clinical trial, preliminary anti-tumor activity has been observed across multiple cancer types in patients who have progressed after several lines of treatment with HER2-targeted therapies. We plan to present detailed safety and preliminary anti-tumor activity data for ZW25 at the American Society of Clinical Oncology meeting in June 2017. For our second product candidate, ZW33, we expect to initiate a Phase 1 clinical trial in the second half of 2017. ZW33 is a bispecific anti-HER2 ADC that is based on the same antibody framework as ZW25, but is armed with a potent cytotoxic payload. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, has granted Orphan Drug Designation to both ZW25 and ZW33 for the treatment of ovarian cancer and to ZW25 for the treatment of gastric cancer. We will continue to focus on advancing multiple well-differentiated product candidates into clinical trials to build our pipeline portfolio as well as exploiting our protein engineering expertise to develop innovative therapeutic platforms.

Our unique combination of proprietary protein engineering capabilities and resulting therapeutic platform technologies was initially validated through strategic partnerships with Merck and Lilly, which focus on our Azymetric and EFECT therapeutic platforms. We subsequently entered into broader strategic partnerships with Celgene and GSK followed by a collaboration and cross-licensing agreement with Daiichi. During the initial partnerships with Merck, Lilly and GSK, the relationships were expanded to include either additional licenses or therapeutic platforms. These relationships provide our strategic partners with access to components of our proprietary Azymetric and EFECT therapeutic platforms for their development of a defined number of protein therapeutics on a predominantly non-target-exclusive basis. Importantly, these strategic partnerships have provided Zymeworks with non-dilutive funding as well as access to proprietary therapeutic assets, which increase our ability to rapidly advance our product candidates while maintaining worldwide commercial rights to our wholly-owned therapeutic pipeline.

The mission that unites everyone at Zymeworks is to create biotherapeutics that allow patients to return home to their loved ones, disease free. We intend to advance the development of disruptive therapeutic platforms and impactful biotherapeutics, especially in areas of unmet need. We believe we are well-positioned to deliver on our mission.

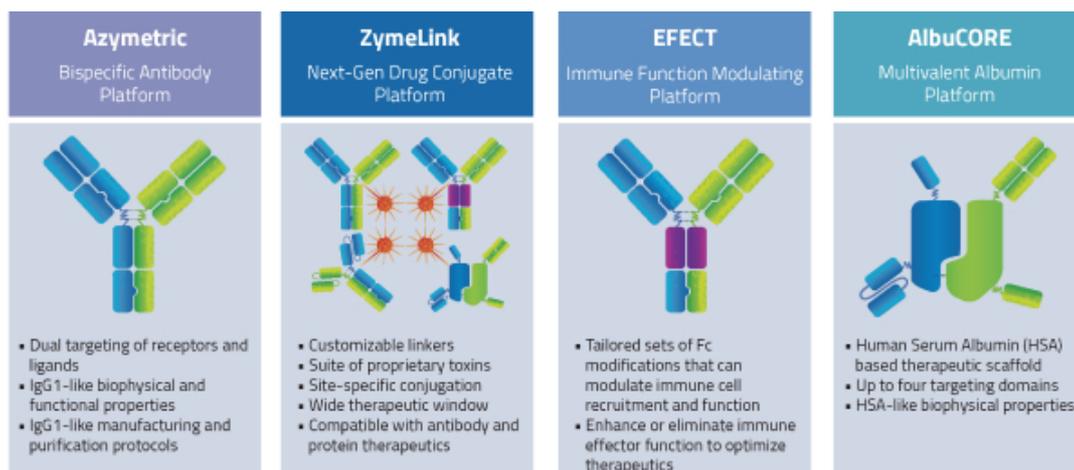
### **Overview of our Proprietary Therapeutic Platforms**

Our expertise in protein engineering has enabled the development of our proprietary therapeutic platforms, a complementary suite of highly-tailored biologics solutions. Our therapeutic platforms can be used alone, or in combination, with synergistic activity to develop multifunctional fit-for-purpose biotherapeutics with bispecific capabilities (Azymetric), cytotoxic payload delivery (ZymeLink), finely-tuned immune function modulation (EFFECT) and multivalent targeting (AlbuCORE). The modular design and ease of use of our therapeutic platforms allow for the design and evaluation of multiple candidates with different formats to determine the optimal therapeutic combination early in development. We continue to leverage these therapeutic platforms to expand our pipeline of next-generation biotherapeutics that we believe could represent significant improvements to the standard of care in multiple cancer types.

We believe our in-house biologics design and engineering capabilities confer significant competitive advantages to our therapeutic platforms and are ultimately reflected in our programs. Some of these key advantages are:

- **Highly Modular and Customizable.** Our platforms can be combined in multiple ways and this capability has achieved synergistic results in preclinical studies. For example, our ZymeLink platform enables the attachment of cytotoxic payloads to the candidates in any of our other platforms to create enhanced therapeutics, such as ADCs. These capabilities allow us to finely-tune characteristics such as tumor-killing potential, target specificity and immune cell engagement, and expand our ability to engineer superior drugs against multiple cancers.
- **Fit-For-Purpose.** Our platforms can also be utilized to engineer biotherapeutics that are tailored for the particular target and disease state. For example, Azymetric bispecifics can be developed with multiple antigen binding formats to provide specific engagement geometry for a given target. This allows us to identify the targets and diseases that we wish to exploit and then engineer an optimized biotherapeutic to maximize therapeutic effect. We believe this method of deliberate drug development is a more effective and efficient mechanism for the creation of next-generation biotherapeutics.
- **Consistent with Native (Antibody or Albumin) Formats.** Our antibody platforms are differentiated from our competitors and have been engineered to retain the desirable biophysical characteristics of native antibody (Immunoglobulin, or IgG) formats such as a low risk of provoking an adverse anti-drug immune response, or immunogenicity, superior pharmacokinetics, the ability to beneficially recruit the immune system through effector function, and ease of manufacturing and purification. Likewise, our AlbuCORE platform builds on native HSA and exploits the natural accumulation of albumin in tumors, which we believe may lead to enhanced targeting of the tumor.
- **Readily Scalable and Transferable.** Our in-house biologics design and engineering expertise and infrastructure is positioned to create a steady stream of product candidates that are scalable, efficient to manufacture (by us, a partner or a contract manufacturing organization) and naturally endorse favorable characteristics such as high production and purity levels. We believe this is a significant competitive advantage given the historical challenges faced by others in the field who manufacture complex biologics, such as bispecifics and ADCs.

### Proprietary Therapeutic Platforms



**Azymetric Bispecific Antibody Platform.** The Azymetric platform consists of a library of proprietary amino acid substitutions that enable the transformation of monospecific antibodies into bispecific antibodies, which gives them the ability to simultaneously bind two non-overlapping epitopes. Azymetric bispecific technology enables the development of biotherapeutics with dual-targeting of receptors/ligands and simultaneous blockade of multiple signaling pathways, increasing tumor-specific targeting and efficacy while reducing toxicities and the potential for drug-resistance. In preclinical studies, the dual-targeting of Azymetric antibodies has demonstrated synergistic activity relative to the application of an equivalent dose of the corresponding monospecific antibodies. Azymetric bispecifics can also be engineered to enhance internalization of the antibody into the tumor cell and consequently increase the delivery of cytotoxic payloads.

First-generation bispecific platforms significantly alter the structure of monoclonal antibodies or rely upon complex and proprietary manufacturing processes. Azymetric bispecifics, in contrast, retain the desirable drug-like qualities of monoclonal antibodies, including long half-life, stability and low immunogenic potential, which increases their probability of success. Azymetric bispecifics are also compatible with standard manufacturing processes with high production yields and purity, which accelerates manufacturing timelines and reduces costs.

**ZymeLink Conjugation Platform and Cytotoxins.** The ZymeLink conjugation platform is a suite of novel site-specific protein coupling technologies and customizable cleavable linkers that allow for the delivery of our proprietary cytotoxic payloads, which can be applied to all of our antibody and albumin-based therapeutic platforms. We believe that ZymeLink provides multiple competitive advantages over existing approaches, including optimized activity and tolerability profiles through increased drug delivery to target cells with reduced off-target effects, product homogeneity, preservation of immune cell interaction and stable pharmacokinetics.

**EFECT Antibody Effector Function Modulation Platform.** The EFECT platform comprises sets of modifications to the crystallizable fragment, or Fc, region of antibodies that enable the selective modulation of recruited cytotoxic immune cells for diverse therapeutic applications. This allows us to rationally tailor the selective enhancement or elimination of immune effector function to optimize product candidates.

**AlbuCORE Multispecific Antibody-Alternative Platform.** The AlbuCORE platform is a novel and proprietary suite of multivalent scaffolds engineered from the HSA backbone from which therapeutics can be developed. This platform is highly flexible and enables the addition of up to four customized targeting domains, which allows for additional tumor specificity and synergistic activity as well as an increase in the affinity and

selectivity for a desired target. The resulting superstructure naturally accumulates in tumor microenvironments or areas of inflammation, and benefits from several attractive attributes of HSA, including superior pharmacokinetics and stability. Additionally, these AlbuCORE constructs possess standard manufacturing and purification protocols compatible with industry standard conjugation technologies, which accelerate the manufacturing process, while reducing costs.

**Our Pipeline of Product Candidates and Discovery Programs**

We currently have one wholly-owned product candidate in clinical development and several wholly-owned product candidates in preclinical development that leverage our multiple therapeutic platforms to address areas of significant unmet medical need. The table below summarizes the status of our product candidates and the focus areas of the most advanced discovery efforts in our pipeline.

Programs			Status			WORLDWIDE COMMERCIAL RIGHTS
Program	Enabling Platform(s)	Indications	DISCOVERY	PRECLINICAL	PHASE 1	
<b>LEAD PRODUCT CANDIDATES</b>						
<b>ZW25</b> HER2 x HER2 Bispecific	Azymetric	Breast Cancer Gastric Cancer Ovarian Cancer				
<b>ZW33</b> HER2 x HER2 Bispecific ADC	Azymetric	Breast Cancer Ovarian Cancer				
<b>ADVANCED DISCOVERY PROGRAMS</b>						
<b>Multiple Programs</b> Bispecific ADC	Azymetric EFFECT ZymeLink	Solid Tumor				
<b>Multiple Programs</b> T Cell Engaging Bispecific	Azymetric EFFECT	Solid Tumor				
<b>Multiple Programs</b> Checkpoint Modulating Bispecific	Azymetric EFFECT	Solid Tumor				

- ZW25 is our lead product candidate currently being evaluated in an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial in the United States, based on our Azymetric platform. It is a bispecific antibody that can simultaneously bind two non-overlapping epitopes, known as biparatopic binding, of HER2 resulting in dual HER2 signal blockade, increased binding and removal of HER2 protein from the cell surface, and enhanced effector function. These combined mechanisms of action have led to significant anti-tumor activity in preclinical models of breast cancer, including trastuzumab (currently branded as Herceptin) resistant high HER2-expressing tumors, as well as in tumors with lower levels of HER2 expression. Approximately 81% of patients with HER2-expressing breast cancer and 57% of the patients with HER2-expressing gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer have tumors that express low to intermediate levels of HER2, making them ineligible for treatment with currently-approved HER2-targeted therapies, such as Herceptin and Perjeta. In the United States and EU5 (France, Germany, Italy, Spain and the United Kingdom) alone, approximately 405,803 and 49,058 patients are diagnosed with HER2-expressing breast and gastroesophageal cancer, respectively, every year. In addition, multiple other cancers, including ovarian, bladder, colorectal and non-small cell lung cancers, or NSCLC, also express HER2 at varying levels. Therefore, there is a significant unmet need for HER2-targeted agents that can effectively treat these patients.

We are developing ZW25 as a best-in-class HER2-targeting antibody intended as a treatment option for patients with any solid tumor that expresses HER2. Our initial focus is on the treatment of patients with breast or gastric cancers who have progressed after treatment with HER2-targeted therapies or who are not eligible for approved HER2-targeted therapies based on low to intermediate levels of HER2 expression. We then intend to develop ZW25 for other HER2-expressing cancers, including ovarian cancer. ZW25 has been granted Orphan Drug Designation for the treatment of both gastric and ovarian cancer by the FDA. In our Phase 1 clinical trial, ZW25 has demonstrated preliminary anti-tumor activity across multiple cancer types in patients who have progressed after several lines of treatment with HER2-targeted therapies.

- ZW33 is a bispecific anti-HER2 ADC that is based on the same antibody framework as ZW25 but armed with a cytotoxic payload. ZW33 retains the mechanisms of action of ZW25 but takes advantage of high levels of antibody-target internalization to deliver a potent cytotoxin. We are developing ZW33 as a best-in-class HER2-targeting ADC for several indications characterized by HER2 expression including breast and ovarian cancer, especially those that have progressed or are refractory to HER2-targeted agents, including Kadcyła. The FDA has granted Orphan Drug Designation for ZW33 for the treatment of ovarian cancer. We plan on initiating a Phase 1 clinical trial for ZW33 in the second half of 2017.

### **Our Strategy**

Our goal is to leverage our next-generation therapeutic platforms and proprietary protein engineering capabilities to become a domain dominator in the discovery, development and commercialization of best-in-class multifunctional biotherapeutics for the treatment of cancer and other diseases with high unmet medical need.

Our key strategies to achieve this goal are to:

- aggressively advance our lead product candidate, ZW25, through the clinic in multiple HER2-expressing tumor types;
- pursue a rapid and multi-faceted development strategy for our novel and highly differentiated pipeline into clinical trials across many oncology indications with a critically high unmet medical need;
- leverage our therapeutic platforms and proprietary protein engineering capabilities to continue to discover and develop additional novel product candidates;
- leverage our strategic partnerships, while pursuing additional collaborations that can augment the power of our platforms and value of our pipeline; and
- continue to develop innovative therapeutic platforms and expand our therapeutic focus into logical areas such as autoimmunity and inflammatory diseases.

### **Risk Factors**

Investing in our common shares is speculative and involves substantial risk. You should carefully consider all of the information in this prospectus prior to investing in our common shares. There are numerous risk factors related to our business that are described under “Risk Factors” and elsewhere in this prospectus. These risks could materially and adversely impact our business, results of operations, financial condition and future prospects, which could cause the trading price of our common shares to decline and could result in a loss of your investment. Among these important risks are the following:

- we have a limited number of product candidates, all of which are still in preclinical or early clinical development, and we may fail to obtain, or experience significant delays in obtaining, regulatory approval for one or more of our product candidates;
- our product candidates may have undesirable side effects that may delay or prevent marketing approval or, if approval is received, require them to be taken off the market, require them to include safety warnings or otherwise limit their sales; no regulatory agency has made any determination that any of our product candidates are safe or effective for use by the general public for any indication;

- we have incurred significant losses since our inception and anticipate that we will continue to incur significant losses for the foreseeable future; our accumulated deficit was \$86.5 million as of September 30, 2016, representing our cumulative losses since our inception in 2003;
- we have no products approved for commercial sale; to date we have not generated any revenue or profit from product sales and we may never achieve or sustain profitability;
- we will require substantial additional funding, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all, and, if available, may require us to delay, scale back, or cease our product development programs or operations;
- our existing strategic partnerships are important to our business, and future strategic partnerships may also be important to us; if we are unable to maintain any of these strategic partnerships, or if these strategic partnerships are not successful, we may not realize the anticipated benefits of our strategic partnerships and our business could be adversely affected;
- our commercial success depends significantly on our ability to operate without infringing the patents or proprietary rights of third parties; and
- we may not be able to obtain adequate protection for the intellectual property covering our product candidates or related technology.

As a result of these risks and other risks described under “Risk Factors” there is no guarantee that we will experience growth or profitability in the future.

### **Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company**

We qualify as an “emerging growth company” pursuant to the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act, or the JOBS Act. An emerging growth company may take advantage of specified exemptions from various requirements that are otherwise applicable generally to public companies in the United States. These provisions include:

- an exemption to include in an initial public offering registration statement less than five years of selected financial data; and
- an exemption from the auditor attestation requirement in the assessment of the emerging growth company’s internal control over financial reporting.

The JOBS Act also permits an emerging growth company such as us to take advantage of an extended transition period to comply with new or revised accounting standards applicable to public companies. We have not elected to avail ourselves of the exemption that allows emerging growth companies to extend the transition period for complying with new or revised financial accounting standards. This election is irrevocable.

We will remain an emerging growth company until the earliest of:

- the last day of our fiscal year during which we have total annual gross revenues of at least \$1.0 billion;
- the last day of our fiscal year following the fifth anniversary of the completion of this offering;
- the date on which we have, during the previous three-year period, issued more than \$1.0 billion in non-convertible debt securities; or
- the date on which we are deemed to be a “large accelerated filer” under the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, which would occur if the market value of our common shares that are held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of the last business day of our most recently completed second fiscal quarter.

We have availed ourselves in this prospectus of the reduced reporting requirements described above with respect to selected financial data. As a result, the information that we are providing to you may be less comprehensive than what you might receive from other public companies. When we are no longer deemed to be an emerging growth company, we will not be entitled to the exemptions provided in the JOBS Act discussed above.

### **Our Corporate Information**

We were incorporated on September 8, 2003 under the Canada Business Corporations Act, or CBCA, under the name Zymeworks Inc. On October 22, 2003, we were registered as an extra-provincial company under the Company Act (British Columbia), the predecessor to the Business Corporations Act (British Columbia). Effective as of January 1, 2017, we completed a short-form amalgamation with a former wholly-owned subsidiary, Zymeworks Biochemistry Inc. Immediately prior to the consummation of this offering, we will file a continuation application to continue the Company to British Columbia and to amend and redesignate our authorized and issued share capital. See “Description of Share Capital.” Our principal executive offices are located at 540-1385 West 8th Avenue, Vancouver, British Columbia V6H 3V9 and our telephone number is (604) 678-1388. Our website address is [www.zymeworks.com](http://www.zymeworks.com). The information contained on, or that can be accessed through, our website is not a part of this prospectus. We have included our website address in this prospectus solely as an inactive textual reference.

## The Offering

Common shares offered by us	shares
Over-allotment option	We have granted the underwriters an option, exercisable within 30 days of the date of this prospectus, to purchase up to an additional common shares to cover over-allotments, if any, in connection with this offering.
Common shares to be outstanding after this offering	shares ( shares if the over-allotment option is exercised in full).
Use of proceeds	We estimate that we will receive net proceeds from this offering of approximately \$ million, or approximately \$ million if the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional shares from us in full, based on an assumed initial public offering price of \$ per common share, the midpoint of the estimated price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. We intend to use the net proceeds of this offering to fund approximately \$ million to \$ million of clinical development expenses for ZW25 through our ongoing adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial and additional product candidate manufacturing, approximately \$ million to \$ million of clinical development expenses for ZW33 through our planned Phase 1 clinical trial and additional product candidate manufacturing, approximately \$ million to \$ million to fund the development of additional product candidates in our pipeline and the remainder for working capital and general corporate purposes, which may include other research and development programs, such as our proprietary therapeutic platforms. See “Use of Proceeds.”
Proposed NYSE and TSX trading symbol	“ZYME”
Risk factors	See “Risk Factors” and the other information included in this prospectus for a discussion of factors you should consider carefully before investing in our common shares.

The number of common shares to be outstanding after this offering is based on 43,882,226 of our common shares after giving effect to the conversion of all outstanding Class A convertible preferred shares as of December 31, 2016, which will occur immediately prior to the consummation of this offering, into an aggregate of 12,554,665 common shares and excludes:

- 2,184,871 common shares issuable upon the exercise of fully-vested outstanding options to issue common shares, as of December 31, 2016, at a weighted-average exercise price of C\$3.61 per share (or \$2.69 per share, as converted);
- 2,387,304 common shares issuable upon the exercise of unvested outstanding options to issue common shares, as of December 31, 2016, at a weighted-average exercise price of C\$6.08 per share (or \$4.53 per share, as converted);
- 1,693,337 common shares reserved for future issuance under our stock option plan;

- 280,000 common shares issuable upon the exercise of outstanding common share warrants, at a weighted-average exercise price of C\$4.86 per share (or \$3.62 per share, as converted); and
- 704,081 common shares issuable upon the exercise of an outstanding Class A preferred share warrant, at an exercise price of \$4.90 per share.

Unless otherwise indicated, all information in this prospectus reflects and assumes:

- no exercise by the underwriters of their option to purchase up to an additional        common shares from us to cover over-allotments, if any, in connection with this offering;
- the conversion of all of our outstanding Class A preferred shares into an aggregate of 12,554,665 common shares, which will occur immediately prior to the consummation of this offering;
- the conversion of an outstanding Class A preferred share warrant to purchase 704,081 shares of our Class A preferred shares into a common share warrant to purchase 704,081 common shares, which will occur immediately prior to the consummation of the offering; and
- the filing of a continuation application, which will occur immediately prior to the consummation of this offering to, among other things, continue our company to British Columbia and to amend and redesignate our share capital.

### Summary Historical Consolidated Financial Data

The following tables summarize our historical consolidated financial data for the periods presented and should be read together with “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations”, “Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements” and our consolidated financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. The summary historical consolidated statements of operations data for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015 have been derived from our audited consolidated financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus. The summary historical consolidated statements of operations data for the nine months ended September 30, 2015 and 2016 and the balance sheet data as of September 30, 2016 have been derived from our unaudited consolidated financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus. Our consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States, or U.S. GAAP, and are presented in U.S. dollars except where otherwise indicated. We have prepared the unaudited consolidated financial statements on the same basis as the audited consolidated financial statements and have included all adjustments, consisting solely of normal recurring adjustments, which in our opinion are necessary to state fairly the financial information set forth in those statements. Our historical results are not necessarily indicative of the results we expect in the future, and our interim results should not necessarily be considered indicative of results we expect for the full year.

	Year Ended December 31,		Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2014	2015	2015	2016
	(dollars in thousands except share and per share amounts) (unaudited)			
<b>Consolidated Statements of Operations Data:</b>				
Revenue	\$ 1,670	\$ 9,660	\$ 8,221	\$ 8,777
Operating expenses:				
Research and development(1)	12,622	24,654	16,417	27,898
Government grants and credits	(2,149)	(251)	—	—
	10,473	24,403	16,417	27,898
General and administrative(1)	3,945	5,217	3,846	7,437
Total operating expenses	14,418	29,620	20,263	35,335
Loss from operations	(12,748)	(19,960)	(12,042)	(26,558)
Change in fair value of warrant liabilities	—	—	—	(747)
Other income (expense)	(194)	824	797	(307)
Loss before income taxes	(12,942)	(19,136)	(11,245)	(27,612)
Income tax expense	—	(34)	—	(327)
Deferred income tax benefit	—	—	—	5,407
Net loss	\$ (12,942)	\$ (19,170)	\$ (11,245)	\$ (22,532)
Net loss per common share (basic and diluted)	\$ (0.74)	\$ (0.71)	\$ (0.42)	\$ (0.75)
Weighted-average number of common shares (basic and diluted)	17,479,680	26,888,906	26,863,879	30,085,263
Pro forma basic net loss per common share(2)		\$ (0.71)		\$ (0.53)
Pro forma diluted net loss per common share(2)		\$ (0.71)		\$ (0.53)
Pro forma basic weighted-average number of common shares(2)		26,888,906		42,365,008
Pro forma diluted weighted-average number of common shares(2)		26,888,906		42,365,008

- (1) For each period presented the Company has reclassified certain legal costs, which were previously included in research and development in error, to general administrative expenses. There was no impact on total operating expenses, net loss, or net loss per common share for any period presented.
- (2) The pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share reflects the conversion of all outstanding Class A preferred shares immediately prior to the consummation of this offering, assuming all such Class A preferred shares had been converted to common shares for all periods in which such Class A preferred shares were outstanding.

	As of September 30, 2016		
	Actual	Pro Forma(3) (dollars in thousands) (unaudited)	Pro Forma As Adjusted(3)(4)
<b>Consolidated Balance Sheet Data:</b>			
Cash and cash equivalents	\$27,944	\$	\$
Short-term investments	23,872		
Working capital (deficit)	45,207		
Total assets	98,489		
Total liabilities	20,104		
Total shareholders' equity	19,525		

- (3) The pro forma consolidated balance sheet data reflect the conversion of all outstanding Class A preferred shares immediately prior to the consummation of this offering; the conversion of a warrant to purchase 704,081 of our Class A preferred shares into a warrant to purchase 704,081 of our common shares immediately prior to the consummation of this offering, and the resultant reclassification of our common share warrant liability to additional paid-in capital, a component of total shareholders' equity and preferred shares, in connection with such conversion. The pro forma as adjusted consolidated balance sheet data give additional effect to the issuance of common shares at an assumed initial public offering price of \$ per share, the midpoint of the estimated price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, after deducting the underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.
- (4) A \$1.00 increase or decrease in the assumed initial public offering price of \$ per share, the midpoint of the estimated price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase or decrease, as applicable, pro forma as adjusted cash and cash equivalents, working capital (deficit), total assets and total shareholders' equity and preferred shares by \$ , assuming the number of shares offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same and after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. An increase or decrease of 1,000,000 common shares in the number of shares offered by us would increase or decrease, as applicable, the pro forma as adjusted cash and cash equivalents, working capital (deficit), total assets and total shareholders' equity and preferred shares by approximately \$ , assuming that the assumed initial public offering price remains the same, and after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

## RISK FACTORS

*Investing in our common shares is speculative and involves a high degree of risk. You should consider carefully the following risk factors, as well as the other information in this prospectus, including our consolidated financial statements and notes thereto, before you decide to purchase our common shares. If any of the following risks actually occur, our business, financial conditions, results of operations and prospects could be materially adversely affected, the value of our common shares could decline and you may lose all or part of your investment. This prospectus also contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in the forward-looking statements as a result of a number of factors, including the risks described below. See “Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements.”*

### **Risks Related to Our Business and the Development and Commercialization of Our Product Candidates**

***We have a limited number of product candidates, all which are still in preclinical or early clinical development. If we do not obtain regulatory approval of one or more of our product candidates, or experience significant delays in doing so, our business will be materially adversely affected.***

We currently have no products approved for sale or marketing in any country, and may never be able to obtain regulatory approval for any of our product candidates. As a result, we are not currently permitted to market any of our product candidates in the United States or in any other country until we obtain regulatory approval from the FDA or regulatory authorities outside the United States. Our product candidates are in early stages of development and we have not submitted an application, or received marketing approval, for any of our product candidates. Furthermore, the fact that our core competencies have been validated through strategic partnerships does not improve our product candidates’ outlook for regulatory approval. We have limited experience in conducting and managing the clinical trials necessary to obtain regulatory approvals, including approval by the FDA. Obtaining regulatory approval of our product candidates will depend on many factors, including, but not limited to, the following:

- successfully completing formulation and process development activities;
- completing clinical trials that demonstrate the efficacy and safety of our product candidates;
- receiving marketing approval from applicable regulatory authorities;
- establishing commercial manufacturing capabilities; and
- launching commercial sales, marketing and distribution operations.

Many of these factors are wholly or partially beyond our control, including clinical advancement, the regulatory submission process and changes in the competitive landscape. If we do not achieve one or more of these factors in a timely manner, we could experience significant delays or an inability to develop our product candidates at all.

***Clinical trials are very expensive, time consuming and difficult to design and implement and involve uncertain outcomes. Furthermore, the results of previous preclinical studies and clinical trials may not be predictive of future results, and the results of our current and planned clinical trials may not satisfy the requirements of the FDA or non-U.S. regulatory authorities.***

Positive or timely results from preclinical or early-stage trials do not ensure positive or timely results in late-stage clinical trials or product approval by the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities. We will be required to demonstrate with substantial evidence through well-controlled clinical trials that our product candidates are safe and effective for use in a diverse population before we can seek regulatory approvals for their commercial sale. Our planned clinical trials may produce negative or inconclusive results, and we or any of our current and future strategic partners may decide, or regulators may require us, to conduct additional clinical or preclinical testing. Success in preclinical studies or early-stage clinical trials does not mean that future clinical

## [Table of Contents](#)

trials or registration clinical trials will be successful because product candidates in later-stage clinical trials may fail to demonstrate sufficient safety and efficacy to the satisfaction of the FDA and non-U.S. regulatory authorities, despite having progressed through preclinical studies and initial clinical trials. Product candidates that have shown promising results in early clinical trials may still suffer significant setbacks in subsequent clinical trials or registration clinical trials. For example, a number of companies in the pharmaceutical industry, including those with greater resources and experience than us, have suffered significant setbacks in advanced clinical trials, even after obtaining promising results in earlier clinical trials. Similarly, preclinical interim results of a clinical trial do not necessarily predict final results.

***If clinical trials for our product candidates are prolonged, delayed or stopped, we may be unable to obtain regulatory approval and commercialize our product candidates on a timely basis, or at all, which would require us to incur additional costs and delay our receipt of any product revenue.***

We are currently enrolling an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial of ZW25 in patients with recurrent or metastatic HER2-expressing solid tumors, and expect to commence an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial of ZW33 in the second half of 2017. We may experience delays in our ongoing or future preclinical studies or clinical trials, and we do not know whether future preclinical studies or clinical trials will begin on time, need to be redesigned, enroll an adequate number of patients on time or be completed on schedule, if at all. The commencement or completion of these planned clinical trials could be substantially delayed or prevented by many factors, including:

- further discussions with the FDA or other regulatory agencies regarding the scope or design of our clinical trials;
- the limited number of, and competition for, suitable sites to conduct our clinical trials, many of which may already be engaged in other clinical trial programs, including some that may be for the same indication as our product candidates;
- any delay or failure to obtain approval or agreement to commence a clinical trial in any of the countries where enrollment is planned;
- inability to obtain sufficient funds required for a clinical trial;
- clinical holds on, or other regulatory objections to, a new or ongoing clinical trial;
- delay or failure to manufacture sufficient supplies of the product candidate for our clinical trials;
- delay or failure to reach agreement on acceptable clinical trial agreement terms or clinical trial protocols with prospective sites or clinical research organizations, or CROs, the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different sites or CROs; and
- delay or failure to obtain institutional review board, or IRB, approval to conduct a clinical trial at a prospective site;
- slower than expected rates of patient recruitment and enrollment;
- failure of patients to complete the clinical trial;
- the inability to enroll a sufficient number of patients in studies to ensure adequate statistical power to detect statistically significant treatment effects;
- unforeseen safety issues, including severe or unexpected drug-related adverse effects experienced by patients, including possible deaths;
- lack of efficacy during clinical trials;
- termination of our clinical trials by one or more clinical trial sites;
- inability or unwillingness of patients or clinical investigators to follow our clinical trial protocols;
- inability to monitor patients adequately during or after treatment by us or our CROs;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- our CROs or clinical study sites failing to comply with regulatory requirements or meet their contractual obligations to us in a timely manner, or at all, deviating from the protocol or dropping out of a study;
- the inability to produce or obtain sufficient quantities of a product candidate to complete clinical studies;
- in ability to address any noncompliance with regulatory requirements or safety concerns that arise during the course of a clinical trial;
- the need to repeat or terminate clinical trials as a result of inconclusive or negative results or unforeseen complications in testing; and
- our clinical trials may be suspended or terminated upon a breach or pursuant to the terms of any agreement with, or for any other reason by, current or future strategic partners that have responsibility for the clinical development of any of our product candidates.

Changes in regulatory requirements, policies and guidelines may also occur and we may need to significantly amend clinical trial protocols to reflect these changes with appropriate regulatory authorities. These changes may require us to renegotiate terms with CROs or resubmit clinical trial protocols to IRBs for re-examination, which may impact the costs, timing or successful completion of a clinical trial. Our clinical trials may be suspended or terminated at any time by the FDA, other regulatory authorities, the IRB overseeing the clinical trial at issue, any of our clinical trial sites with respect to that site, or us.

Any failure or significant delay in commencing or completing clinical trials for our product candidates would adversely affect our ability to obtain regulatory approval and our commercial prospects and ability to generate product revenue will be diminished.

### ***If we are unable to enroll patients in clinical trials, we will be unable to complete these trials on a timely basis.***

Patient enrollment, a significant factor in the timing of clinical trials, is affected by many factors including the size and nature of the patient population, the proximity of subjects to clinical sites, the eligibility criteria for the trial, the design of the clinical trial, ability to obtain and maintain patient consents, risk that enrolled subjects will drop out before completion, competing clinical trials and clinicians' and patients' perceptions as to the potential advantages of the drug being studied in relation to other available therapies, including any new drugs that may be approved for the indications we are investigating. In particular, we are developing certain of our products for the treatment of rare diseases, which have limited pools of patients from which to draw for clinical testing. If we are unable to enroll a sufficient number of patients to complete clinical testing, we will be unable to gain marketing approval for such product candidates and our business will be harmed.

### ***The design or our execution of clinical trials may not support regulatory approval.***

The design or execution of a clinical trial can determine whether its results will support regulatory approval and flaws in the design or execution of a clinical trial may not become apparent until the clinical trial is well advanced. In some instances, there can be significant variability in safety or efficacy results between different trials of the same product candidate due to numerous factors, including changes in trial protocols, differences in size and type of the patient populations, adherence to the dosing regimen and other trial protocols and the rate of dropout among clinical trial participants. We do not know whether any Phase 2, Phase 3 or other clinical trials we or any of our strategic partners may conduct will demonstrate consistent or adequate efficacy and safety to obtain regulatory approval to market our product candidates.

Further, the FDA and comparable foreign regulatory authorities have substantial discretion in the approval process and in determining when or whether regulatory approval will be obtained for any of our product candidates. Our product candidates may not be approved even if they achieve their primary endpoints in future Phase 3 clinical trials or registration trials. The FDA or other non-U.S. regulatory authorities may disagree with

## [Table of Contents](#)

our trial design and our interpretation of data from preclinical studies and clinical trials. In addition, any of these regulatory authorities may change requirements for the approval of a product candidate even after reviewing and providing comments or advice on a protocol for a pivotal Phase 3 clinical trial that has the potential to result in FDA or other agencies' approval. In addition, any of these regulatory authorities may also approve a product candidate for fewer or more limited indications than we request or may grant approval contingent on the performance of costly post-marketing clinical trials. The FDA or other non-U.S. regulatory authorities may not approve the labeling claims that we believe would be necessary or desirable for the successful commercialization of our product candidates.

***Our product candidates may have undesirable side effects that may delay or prevent marketing approval or, if approval is received, require them to be taken off the market, require them to include safety warnings or otherwise limit their sales; no regulatory agency has made any such determination that any of our product candidates are safe or effective for use by the general public for any indication.***

All of our product candidates are still in preclinical or early clinical development. Additionally, all of our product candidates are required to undergo ongoing safety testing in humans as part of clinical trials. Consequently, not all adverse effects of drugs can be predicted or anticipated. Unforeseen side effects from any of our product candidates could arise either during clinical development or, if approved by regulatory authorities, after the approved product has been marketed. While we believe our lead product candidates have demonstrated a favorable safety profile in animals, ZW25 has recently commenced dosing in an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial and ZW33 has never been tested in humans. Therefore, the results from clinical trials may not demonstrate a favorable safety profile in humans. The results of future clinical trials may show that ZW25 or our other product candidates cause undesirable or unacceptable side effects, which could interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials, and result in delay of, or failure to obtain, marketing approval from the FDA and other regulatory authorities, or result in marketing approval from the FDA and other regulatory authorities with restrictive label warnings, limited patient populations or potential product liability claims. Even if we believe that our Phase 1 clinical trial and preclinical studies demonstrate the safety and efficacy of our product candidates, only the FDA and other comparable regulatory agencies may ultimately make such determination. No regulatory agency has made any such determination that any of our product candidates are safe or effective for use by the general public for any indication.

If any of our product candidates receive marketing approval and we or others later identify undesirable or unacceptable side effects caused by such products:

- regulatory authorities may require us to take our approved product off the market;
- regulatory authorities may require the addition of labeling statements, specific warnings, a contraindication or field alerts to physicians and pharmacies;
- we may be required to change the way the product is administered, conduct additional clinical trials or change the labeling of the product;
- we may be subject to limitations on how we may promote the product;
- sales of the product may decrease significantly;
- we may be subject to litigation or product liability claims; and
- our reputation may suffer.

Any of these events could prevent us or our current or future strategic partners from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the affected product or could substantially increase commercialization costs and expenses, which in turn could delay or prevent us from generating revenue from the sale of any future products.

***We face significant competition and if our competitors develop and market products that are more effective, safer or less expensive than our product candidates, our commercial opportunities will be negatively impacted.***

The life sciences industry is highly competitive and subject to rapid and significant technological change. We are currently developing biotherapeutics that will compete with other drugs and therapies that currently exist or are being developed. Products we may develop in the future are also likely to face competition from other drugs and therapies, some of which we may not currently be aware. We have competitors both in the United States and internationally, including major multinational pharmaceutical companies, established biotechnology companies, specialty pharmaceutical companies, universities and other research institutions. Many of our competitors have significantly greater financial, manufacturing, marketing, drug development, technical and human resources than we do. Large pharmaceutical companies, in particular, have extensive experience in clinical testing, obtaining regulatory approvals, recruiting patients and in manufacturing pharmaceutical products. These companies also have significantly greater research and marketing capabilities than we do and may also have products that have been approved or are in late stages of development and collaborative arrangements in our target markets with leading companies and research institutions. Established pharmaceutical companies may also invest heavily to accelerate discovery and development of novel compounds or to in-license novel compounds that could make the product candidates that we develop obsolete. As a result of all of these factors, our competitors may succeed in obtaining patent protection or FDA approval or discovering, developing and commercializing products in our field before we do.

Specifically, there are a large number of companies developing or marketing treatments for cancer and autoimmune disorders, including many major pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies. These treatments consist both of small molecule drug products, as well as biologics that work by using next-generation antibody therapeutic platforms to address specific cancer targets. In addition, several companies are also developing bispecific antibodies. Other companies are developing new treatments for cancer that enhance the Fc regions of antibodies to create more potent antibodies, including MacroGenics, Inc., Xencor, Inc. and F. Hoffmann-La Roche AG.

Our commercial opportunity could be reduced or eliminated if our competitors develop and commercialize products that are safer, more effective, have fewer or less severe effects, are more convenient or are less expensive than any products that we may develop. Our competitors also may obtain FDA or other regulatory approval for their products more rapidly than we may obtain approval for our product candidates, which could result in our competitors establishing a strong market position before we are able to enter the market.

Smaller and other early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large and established companies. These third-parties compete with us in recruiting and retaining qualified scientific and management personnel, establishing clinical trial sites and patient registration for clinical trials, as well as in acquiring technologies complementary to, or necessary for, our programs. In addition, the biopharmaceutical industry is characterized by rapid technological change. If we fail to stay at the forefront of technological change, we may be unable to compete effectively. Technological advances or products developed by our competitors may render our technologies or product candidates obsolete, less competitive or not economical.

***Our product candidates, for which we intend to seek approval, may face competition sooner than anticipated.***

Our ability to compete may be affected in many cases by insurers or other third-party payors seeking to encourage the use of biosimilar products. Biosimilar products are expected to become available over the coming years. Even if our product candidates achieve marketing approval, they may be priced at a significant premium over competitive biosimilar products, if any have been approved by then. The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010, or collectively the PPACA,

## [Table of Contents](#)

created a new regulatory scheme authorizing the FDA to approve biosimilars. Under the PPACA, a manufacturer may submit an application for licensure of a biologic product that is “biosimilar to” or “interchangeable with” a previously approved biological product or “reference product.” Under this new statutory scheme, an application for a biosimilar product may not be submitted to the FDA until four years following approval of the reference product. The FDA may not approve a biosimilar product until 12 years from the date on which the reference product was approved. Even if a product is considered to be a reference product eligible for exclusivity, another company could market a competing version of that product if the FDA approves a full Biologics License Application, or BLA, for such product containing the sponsor’s own preclinical data and data from adequate and well-controlled clinical trials to demonstrate the safety, purity and potency of their product. Furthermore, recent legislation has proposed that the 12-year exclusivity period for each a reference product may be reduced to seven years.

***If any of our product candidates receive regulatory approval, the approved products may not achieve broad market acceptance among physicians, patients, the medical community and third-party payors, in which case revenue generated from their sales would be limited.***

The commercial success of our product candidates will depend upon their acceptance among physicians, patients and the medical community. The degree of market acceptance of our product candidates will depend on a number of factors, including:

- limitations or warnings contained in the approved labeling for a product candidate;
- changes in the standard of care for the targeted indications for any of our product candidates;
- limitations in the approved clinical indications for our product candidates;
- demonstrated clinical safety and efficacy compared to other products;
- lack of significant adverse side effects;
- sales, marketing and distribution support;
- availability of coverage and extent of reimbursement from managed care plans and other third-party payors;
- timing of market introduction and perceived effectiveness of competitive products;
- the degree of cost-effectiveness of our product candidates;
- availability of alternative therapies at similar or lower cost, including generic and over-the-counter products;
- the extent to which the product candidate is approved for inclusion on formularies of hospitals and managed care organizations;
- whether the product is designated under physician treatment guidelines as a first-line therapy or as a second or third-line therapy for particular diseases;
- whether the product can be used effectively with other therapies to achieve higher response rates;
- adverse publicity about our product candidates or favorable publicity about competitive products;
- convenience and ease of administration of our products; and
- potential product liability claims.

If any of our product candidates are approved, but do not achieve an adequate level of acceptance by physicians, patients and the medical community, we may not generate sufficient revenue from these products, and we may not become or remain profitable. In addition, efforts to educate the medical community and third-party payors on the benefits of our product candidates may require significant resources and may never be successful.

***We may be unable to obtain orphan drug exclusivity in specific indications for ZW25 or ZW33 or in future product candidates that we may develop. If our competitors are able to obtain orphan product exclusivity for their products in specific indications, we may not be able to have competing products approved in those indications by the applicable regulatory authority for a significant period of time.***

Regulatory authorities in some jurisdictions, including the United States and Europe, may designate drugs for relatively small patient populations as orphan drugs. Under the Orphan Drug Act, the FDA may designate a product candidate as an orphan drug if it is a drug intended to treat a rare disease or condition, which is generally defined as a patient population of fewer than 200,000 individuals annually in the United States. The FDA has granted Orphan Drug Designation to both ZW25 and ZW33 for the treatment of ovarian cancer and to ZW25 for the treatment of gastric cancer and we may seek Orphan Drug Designation for additional indications in the future. Orphan Drug Designation neither shortens the development time or regulatory review time of a drug nor gives the drug any advantage in the regulatory review or approval process.

Generally, if a product candidate with an Orphan Drug Designation subsequently receives the first marketing approval for the indication for which it has such designation, the product is entitled to a period of marketing exclusivity, which precludes the European Medicines Agency, or EMA, or the FDA from approving another marketing application for the same drug for the same indication for that time period. The applicable period is seven years in the United States and 10 years in Europe. The European exclusivity period can be reduced to six years if a product no longer meets the criteria for Orphan Drug Designation or if the product is sufficiently profitable so that market exclusivity is no longer justified. Orphan drug exclusivity may be lost if the FDA or EMA determines that the request for designation was materially defective or if the manufacturer is unable to assure sufficient quantity of the product to meet the needs of patients with the rare disease or condition.

Even if we obtain orphan drug exclusivity for ZW25 or ZW33, or for any other product candidates that receive an Orphan Drug Designation in the future, that exclusivity may not effectively protect the product from competition because different drugs with different active moieties can be approved for the same condition. Further, in the United States, even after an orphan drug is approved, the FDA can subsequently approve the same drug for the same condition submitted by a competitor if the FDA concludes that the later drug is clinically superior in that it is shown to be safer, more effective or makes a major contribution to patient care. If we fail to maintain our current Orphan Drug Designations for our product candidates, ZW25 and ZW33, or for any other product candidates that receive an Orphan Drug Designation in the future, or if the FDA approves Orphan Drug Designation for similar product candidates of other pharmaceutical companies, our competitive position would be harmed.

***Even if we obtain FDA approval of any of our product candidates, we may never obtain approval or commercialize such products outside of the United States, which would limit our ability to realize their full market potential.***

In order to market any products outside of the United States, we must establish and comply with numerous and varying regulatory requirements of other countries regarding safety and efficacy. Clinical trials conducted in one country may not be accepted by regulatory authorities in other countries, and regulatory approval in one country does not mean that regulatory approval will be obtained in any other country. Approval procedures vary among countries and can involve additional product testing and validation and additional administrative review periods. Seeking foreign regulatory approvals could result in significant delays, difficulties and costs for us and may require additional preclinical studies or clinical trials which would be costly and time consuming. Regulatory requirements can vary widely from country to country and could delay or prevent the introduction of our products in those countries. Satisfying these and other regulatory requirements is costly, time consuming, uncertain and subject to unanticipated delays. In addition, our failure to obtain regulatory approval in any country may delay or have negative effects on the process for regulatory approval in other countries. We do not have any product candidates approved for sale in any jurisdiction, including international markets, and we do not have experience in obtaining regulatory approval in international markets. If we fail to comply with regulatory requirements in international markets or to obtain and maintain required approvals, our target market will be reduced and our ability to realize the full market potential of our products will be harmed.

***Reimbursement decisions by third-party payors may have an adverse effect on pricing and market acceptance. If there is not sufficient reimbursement for our products, it is less likely that our products will be widely used.***

Even if our product candidates are approved for sale by the appropriate regulatory authorities, market acceptance and sales of these products will depend on reimbursement policies and may be affected by future healthcare reform measures. Government authorities and third-party payors, such as private health insurers and health maintenance organizations, decide which drugs they will reimburse and establish payment levels. We cannot be certain that reimbursement will be available for any products that we develop. If reimbursement is not available or is available on a limited basis, we may not be able to successfully commercialize any of our approved products.

In the United States, the Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement, and Modernization Act of 2003, also called the Medicare Modernization Act, or the MMA, changed the way Medicare covers and pays for pharmaceutical products. The legislation established Medicare Part D, which expanded Medicare coverage for outpatient prescription drug purchases by the elderly but provided authority for limiting the number of drugs that will be covered in any therapeutic class. The MMA also introduced a new reimbursement methodology based on average sales prices for physician-administered drugs. We expect to experience pricing pressures in connection with the sale of any products that we develop, due to the trend toward managed healthcare, the increasing influence of health maintenance organizations and additional legislative proposals.

There may be significant delays in obtaining coverage and reimbursement for newly approved drugs, and coverage may be more limited than the purposes for which the drug is approved by the FDA, EMA or other regulatory authorities. Moreover, eligibility for coverage and reimbursement does not imply that a drug will be paid for in all cases or at a rate that covers our costs, including research, development, manufacture, sale and distribution expenses. Interim reimbursement levels for new drugs, if applicable, may also be insufficient to cover our and any collaborator's costs and may not be made permanent. Reimbursement rates may vary according to the use of the drug and the clinical setting in which it is used, may be based on reimbursement levels already set for lower cost drugs and may be incorporated into existing payments for other services. Net prices for drugs may be reduced by mandatory discounts or rebates required by government healthcare programs or private payors and by any future relaxation of laws that presently restrict imports of drugs from countries where they may be sold at lower prices than in the United States. Our or any collaborator's inability to promptly obtain coverage and profitable payment rates from both government-funded and private payors for any approved products that we or our strategic partners develop could have a material adverse effect on our operating results, our ability to raise capital needed to commercialize product candidates and our overall financial condition.

***If the market opportunities for any product that we or our strategic partners develop are smaller than we believe they are, our revenue may be adversely affected and our business may suffer.***

We intend to initially focus our independent product candidate development on treatments for oncology. Our projections of addressable patient populations that have the potential to benefit from treatment with our product candidates are based on estimates. If any of the foregoing estimates are inaccurate, the market opportunities for any of our product candidates could be significantly diminished and have an adverse material impact on our business.

***We may expend our limited resources to pursue a particular product candidate or indication and fail to capitalize on product candidates or indications that may be more profitable or for which there is a greater likelihood of success.***

Because we have limited financial and managerial resources, we focus on research programs, therapeutic platforms and product candidates that we identify for specific indications. As a result, we may forego or delay pursuit of opportunities with other therapeutic platforms or product candidates or for other indications that later prove to have greater commercial potential. Our resource allocation decisions may cause us to fail to capitalize

## [Table of Contents](#)

on viable commercial products or profitable market opportunities. Our spending on current and future research and development programs, therapeutic platforms and product candidates for specific indications may not yield any commercially viable products. If we do not accurately evaluate the commercial potential or target market for a particular product candidate, we may relinquish valuable rights to that product candidate through collaboration, licensing or other royalty arrangements in cases in which it would have been more advantageous for us to retain sole development and commercialization rights.

### ***We may not be successful in our efforts to use and expand our therapeutic platforms to build a pipeline of product candidates.***

A key element of our strategy is to use and expand our therapeutic platforms to build a pipeline of product candidates and progress these product candidates through clinical development for the treatment of a variety of diseases. Although our research and development efforts to date have resulted in a pipeline of product candidates directed at various cancers, we may not be able to develop product candidates that are safe and effective. In addition, although we expect that our therapeutic platforms will allow us to develop a steady stream of product candidates, they may not prove to be successful at doing so. Even if we are successful in continuing to build our pipeline, the potential product candidates that we identify may not be suitable for clinical development, including as a result of being shown to have harmful side effects or other characteristics that indicate that they are unlikely to be products that will receive marketing approval and achieve market acceptance. If we do not continue to successfully develop and begin to commercialize product candidates, we will face difficulty in obtaining product revenue in future periods, which could result in significant harm to our financial position and adversely affect our share price.

### ***Even if we receive regulatory approval to commercialize any of the product candidates that we develop, we will be subject to ongoing regulatory obligations and continued regulatory review, which may result in significant additional expense.***

Any regulatory approvals that we receive for our product candidates may be subject to limitations on the approved indicated uses for which the product may be marketed or subject to certain conditions of approval, and may contain requirements for potentially costly post-approval trials, including Phase 4 clinical trials, and surveillance to monitor the safety and efficacy of the marketed product.

For any approved product, we will be subject to ongoing regulatory obligations and extensive oversight by regulatory authorities, including with respect to manufacturing processes, labeling, packaging, distribution, adverse event reporting, storage, advertising, promotion and recordkeeping for the product. These requirements include submissions of safety and other post-approval information and reports, as well as continued compliance with current good manufacturing practices, or cGMP, and current good clinical practices, or cGCP, for any clinical trials that we or our strategic partners conduct post-approval. Later discovery of previously unknown problems with a product, including adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or with third-party manufacturers or manufacturing processes, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements, may result in, among other things:

- restrictions on the marketing or manufacturing of the product;
- withdrawal of the product from the market or voluntary or mandatory product recalls;
- fines, warning letters or holds on clinical trials;
- refusal by the FDA, EMA or another applicable regulatory authority to approve pending applications or supplements to approved applications filed by us or our strategic partners, or suspension or revocation of product license approvals;
- product seizure or detention, or refusal to permit the import or export of products; and
- injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Occurrence of any of the foregoing could have a material and adverse effect on our business and results of operations. Further, the FDA's or other ex-U.S. regulator's policies may change and additional government regulations may be enacted that could prevent, limit or delay regulatory approval of our product candidates. If we are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, we may lose any marketing approval that we may have obtained, which would adversely affect our business, prospects and ability to achieve or sustain profitability.

***If any product liability lawsuits are successfully brought against us or any of our strategic partners, we may incur substantial liabilities and may be required to limit commercialization of our product candidates.***

We face an inherent risk of product liability lawsuits related to the testing of our product candidates in seriously ill patients, and will face an even greater risk if product candidates are approved by regulatory authorities and introduced commercially. Product liability claims may be brought against us or our strategic partners by participants enrolled in our clinical trials, patients, health care providers or others using, administering or selling any of our future approved products. If we cannot successfully defend ourselves against any such claims, we may incur substantial liabilities. Regardless of their merit or eventual outcome, liability claims may result in:

- decreased demand for any future approved products;
- injury to our reputation;
- withdrawal of clinical trial participants;
- termination of clinical trial sites or entire trial programs;
- increased regulatory scrutiny;
- significant litigation costs;
- substantial monetary awards to or costly settlement with patients or other claimants;
- product recalls or a change in the indications for which they may be used;
- loss of revenue;
- diversion of management and scientific resources from our business operations; and
- the inability to commercialize our product candidates.

If any of our product candidates are approved for commercial sale, we will be highly dependent upon consumer perceptions of us and the safety and quality of our products. We could be adversely affected if we are subject to negative publicity. We could also be adversely affected if any of our products or any similar products distributed by other companies prove to be, or are asserted to be, harmful to patients. Because of our dependence upon consumer perceptions, any adverse publicity associated with illness or other adverse effects resulting from patients' use or misuse of our products or any similar products distributed by other companies could have a material adverse impact on our financial condition or results of operations.

We may need to have in place increased product liability coverage when we begin the commercialization of our product candidates. Insurance coverage is becoming increasingly expensive. As a result, we may be unable to maintain or obtain sufficient insurance at a reasonable cost to protect us against losses that could have a material adverse effect on our business. A successful product liability claim or series of claims brought against us, particularly if judgments exceed any insurance coverage we may have, could decrease our cash resources and adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operation.

***Changes in methods of product candidate manufacturing or formulation may result in additional costs or delay.***

As product candidates are developed through preclinical to late-stage clinical trials towards approval and commercialization, it is common that various aspects of the development program, such as manufacturing

## [Table of Contents](#)

methods and formulation, are altered along the way in an effort to optimize processes and results. Such changes carry the risk that they will not achieve these intended objectives. Any of these changes could cause our product candidates to perform differently and affect the results of planned clinical trials or other future clinical trials conducted with the altered materials. This could delay completion of clinical trials, require the conduct of bridging clinical trials or the repetition of one or more clinical trials, increase clinical trial costs, delay approval of our product candidates and jeopardize our ability, or our strategic partners' ability, to commence product sales and generate revenue.

### ***Acquisitions or joint ventures could disrupt our business, cause dilution to our shareholders and otherwise harm our business.***

We actively evaluate various strategic transactions on an ongoing basis and recently acquired Kairos Therapeutics Inc., or Kairos. See "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations—Acquisition of Kairos" and "Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements." We may acquire other businesses, products or technologies as well as pursue strategic alliances, joint ventures or investments in complementary businesses. Any of these transactions could be material to our financial condition and operating results and expose us to many risks, including:

- disruption in our relationships with existing strategic partners or suppliers as a result of such a transaction;
- unanticipated liabilities related to acquired companies;
- difficulties integrating acquired personnel, technologies and operations into our existing business;
- retention of key employees;
- diversion of management time and focus from operating our business to management of strategic alliances or joint ventures or acquisition integration challenges;
- increases in our expenses and reductions in our cash available for operations and other uses; and
- possible write-offs or impairment charges relating to acquired businesses.

Foreign acquisitions involve unique risks in addition to those mentioned above, including those related to integration of operations across different cultures and languages, currency risks and the particular economic, political and regulatory risks associated with specific countries.

Also, the anticipated benefit of any strategic alliance, joint venture or acquisition may not materialize or such strategic alliance, joint venture or acquisition may be prohibited. In June 2016, we entered into a credit facility, or the Perceptive Facility, with Perceptive Credit Opportunities Fund, L.P., or Perceptive, and PCOF Phoenix II Fund, L.P., or, together with Perceptive, the Perceptive Facility Lenders. The Credit Agreement and Guaranty which we entered into in connection with the Perceptive Facility, or the Credit Agreement, restricts our ability to pursue certain mergers, acquisitions, amalgamations or consolidations that we may believe to be in our best interest. Additionally, future acquisitions or dispositions could result in potentially dilutive issuances of our equity securities, the incurrence of debt, contingent liabilities or amortization expenses or write-offs of goodwill, any of which could harm our financial condition. We cannot predict the number, timing or size of future joint ventures or acquisitions, or the effect that any such transactions might have on our operating results.

### ***Foreign governments tend to impose strict price controls, which may adversely affect our future profitability.***

In most foreign countries, particularly in those in the European Union, prescription drug pricing and reimbursement is subject to governmental control. In those countries that impose price controls, pricing negotiations with governmental authorities can take considerable time after the receipt of marketing approval for a product. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval in some countries, we or our strategic partners may be required to conduct a clinical trial that compares the cost-effectiveness of our product candidates to other available therapies.

Some countries require approval of the sale price of a drug before it can be marketed. In many countries, the pricing review period begins after marketing or product licensing approval is granted. In some foreign markets, prescription pharmaceutical pricing remains subject to continuing governmental control even after initial approval is granted. As a result, we or our strategic partners might obtain marketing approval for a product candidate in a particular country, but then be subject to price regulations that delay commercial launch of the product candidate, possibly for lengthy time periods, and negatively impact the revenue that are generated from the sale of the product in that country. If reimbursement of such product candidates is unavailable or limited in scope or amount, or if pricing is set at unsatisfactory levels, or if there is competition from lower priced cross-border sales, our profitability will be negatively affected.

***Security breaches, loss of data and other disruptions could compromise sensitive information related to our business or protected health information or prevent us from accessing critical information and expose us to liability, which could adversely affect our business and our reputation.***

In the ordinary course of our business, we collect and store petabytes of sensitive data, including legally protected health information, personally identifiable information, intellectual property and proprietary business information owned or controlled by ourselves or our strategic partners. We manage and maintain our applications and data by utilizing a combination of on-site systems, managed data center systems and cloud-based data center systems. These applications and data encompass a wide variety of business-critical information, including research and development information, commercial information and business and financial information. We face four primary risks relative to protecting this critical information, including loss of access risk, inappropriate disclosure risk, inappropriate modification risk and the risk of being unable to adequately monitor our controls over the first three risks.

The secure processing, storage, maintenance and transmission of this critical information are vital to our operations and business strategy, and we devote significant resources to protecting such information. Although we take measures to protect sensitive information from unauthorized access or disclosure, our information technology and infrastructure and that of any third-party billing and collections provider we may utilize, may be vulnerable to attacks by hackers or viruses or breached due to employee error, malfeasance or other disruptions. Any such breach or interruption could compromise our networks and the information stored there could be accessed by unauthorized parties, publicly disclosed, lost or stolen. Any such access, disclosure or other loss of information could result in legal claims or proceedings, liability under laws that protect the privacy of personal information, such as HIPAA and regulatory penalties. Although we have implemented security measures and a formal enterprise security program to prevent unauthorized access to patient data, there is no guarantee that we can continue to protect our systems from breach. Unauthorized access, loss or dissemination could also disrupt our operations, including our ability to conduct our analyses, provide test results, bill payors or providers, process claims and appeals, conduct research and development activities, collect, process and prepare company financial information, provide information about any future products, manage the administrative aspects of our business and damage our reputation, any of which could adversely affect our business.

The U.S. Office of Civil Rights may impose penalties on us or our CROs if we, or our CROs, do not fully comply with requirements of HIPAA. Penalties will vary significantly depending on factors such as whether we, or our CROs, knew or should have known of the failure to comply, or whether our failure, or that of our CROs, to comply was due to willful neglect. These penalties include civil monetary penalties of \$100 to \$50,000 per violation, up to an annual cap of \$1,500,000 for identical violations. A person who knowingly obtains or discloses individually identifiable health information in violation of HIPAA may face a criminal penalty of up to \$50,000 per violation and up to one-year imprisonment. The criminal penalties increase to \$100,000 per violation and up to five-years imprisonment if the wrongful conduct involves false pretenses, and to \$250,000 per violation and up to 10-years imprisonment if the wrongful conduct involves the intent to sell, transfer, or use identifiable health information for commercial advantage, personal gain, or malicious harm. The U.S. Department of Justice is responsible for criminal prosecutions under HIPAA. Furthermore, in the event of a breach as defined by HIPAA, we have specific reporting requirements to the Office of Civil Rights under the HIPAA regulations as

## [Table of Contents](#)

well as to affected individuals, and we may also have additional reporting requirements to other state and federal regulators, including the Federal Trade Commission, and to the media. Issuing such notifications can be costly, time and resource intensive, and can generate significant negative publicity. Breaches of HIPAA may also constitute contractual violations that could lead to contractual damages or terminations.

In addition, the interpretation and application of consumer, health-related and data protection laws in the United States, the European Union, or EU, and elsewhere are often uncertain, contradictory and in flux. It is possible that these laws may be interpreted and applied in a manner that is inconsistent with our practices. If so, this could result in government-imposed fines or orders requiring that we change our practices, which could adversely affect our business. In addition, these privacy regulations vary between states, may differ from country to country, and may vary based on whether testing is performed in the United States or in the local country. Complying with these various laws could cause us to incur substantial costs or require us to change our business practices and compliance procedures in a manner adverse to our business.

Furthermore, the loss of clinical trial data from completed or future clinical trials could result in delays in our regulatory approval efforts and significantly increase our costs to recover or reproduce the data. Likewise, we rely on other third parties for the manufacture of our product candidates and to conduct clinical trials, and similar events relating to their computer systems could also have a material adverse effect on our business.

### ***Current and future legislation may increase the difficulty and cost for us to commercialize any products that we or our strategic partners develop and affect the prices we may obtain.***

The United States and some foreign jurisdictions are considering or have enacted a number of legislative and regulatory proposals to change healthcare systems in ways that could affect our ability to sell any of our product candidates profitably, if such product candidates are approved for sale. Among policy makers and payors in the United States and elsewhere, there is significant interest in promoting changes in healthcare systems with the stated goals of containing healthcare costs, improving quality and expanding access. In the United States, the pharmaceutical industry has been a particular focus of these efforts and has been significantly affected by major legislative initiatives.

In March 2010, the PPACA was enacted, which includes measures that have significantly changed, or will significantly change, the way healthcare is financed by both governmental and private insurers. Among the provisions of the PPACA of importance to the pharmaceutical industry are the following:

- an annual, non-deductible fee on any entity that manufactures or imports certain branded prescription drugs and biologic agents, apportioned among these entities according to their market share in certain government healthcare programs;
- an increase in the rebates a manufacturer must pay under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program to 23.1% of the average manufacturer price, or AMP, for branded drugs or the difference between AMP and best price, whichever is greater. For generic drugs the rebate is 13%;
- Medicare Part D coverage gap discount program, in which manufacturers must agree to offer 50% point-of-sale discounts to negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period;
- extension of manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability to covered drugs dispensed to individuals who are enrolled in Medicaid managed care organizations;
- expansion of eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs by, among other things, allowing states to offer Medicaid coverage to additional individuals and by adding new mandatory eligibility categories for certain individuals with income at or below 133% of the Federal Poverty Level, thereby potentially increasing manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- requirement that applicable manufacturers and group purchasing organizations report annually to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or HHS, information certain payments and other transfers of value given to physicians and teaching hospitals, and any ownership or investment interest physicians, or their immediate family members, have in their company;
- a requirement to annually report drug samples that manufacturers and distributors provide to physicians;
- expansion of healthcare fraud and abuse laws, including the False Claims Act and the Anti-Kickback Statute, new government investigative powers, and enhanced penalties for noncompliance;
- a licensure framework for follow-on biologic products;
- a new Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute to oversee, identify priorities in, and conduct comparative clinical effectiveness research, along with funding for such research;
- creation of the Independent Payment Advisory Board which, when and if empaneled, will have authority to recommend certain changes to the Medicare program that could result in reduced payments for prescription drugs and those recommendations could have the effect of law even if Congress does not act on the recommendations; and
- establishment of a Center for Medicare & Medicaid Innovation at CMS to test innovative payment and service delivery models to lower Medicare and Medicaid spending, potentially including prescription drug spending.

Since its enactment, there have been judicial and Congressional challenges to certain aspects of the PPACA. In January, Congress voted to adopt a budget resolution for fiscal year 2017, or the Budget Resolution, that authorizes the implementation of legislation that would repeal portions of the PPACA. The Budget Resolution is not a law, however, it is widely viewed as the first step toward the passage of legislation that would repeal certain aspects of the PPACA. Further, on January 20, 2017, President Trump signed an Executive Order directing federal agencies with authorities and responsibilities under the PPACA to waive, defer, grant exemptions from, or delay the implementation of any provision of the PPACA that would impose a fiscal or regulatory burden on states, individuals, healthcare providers, health insurers, or manufacturers of pharmaceuticals or medical devices. Congress also could consider subsequent legislation to replace elements of the PPACA that are repealed.

In addition, other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted since the PPACA was enacted. These changes include aggregate reductions to Medicare payments to providers of up to 2% per fiscal year pursuant to the Budget Control Act of 2011, which began in 2013 and will remain in effect through 2025 unless additional Congressional action is taken. The American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several providers, including hospitals and cancer treatment centers, increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. These new laws may result in additional reductions in Medicare and other healthcare funding, which could have a material adverse effect on customers for our product candidates, if approved, and, accordingly, our financial operations. Also, there has been heightened governmental scrutiny recently over the manner in which drug manufacturers set prices for their marketed products, which have resulted in several Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drug products.

In the EU similar political, economic and regulatory developments may affect our ability to profitably commercialize our current or any future products. In addition to continuing pressure on prices and cost containment measures, legislative developments at the EU or member state level may result in significant additional requirements or obstacles that may increase our operating costs. In international markets, reimbursement and healthcare payment systems vary significantly by country, and many countries have instituted price ceilings on specific products and therapies. Our future products, if any, might not be considered medically reasonable and necessary for a specific indication or cost-effective by third-party payors, an adequate level of reimbursement might not be available for such products and third-party payors' reimbursement policies might adversely affect our or our strategic partners' ability to sell any future products profitably.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Legislative and regulatory proposals have been made to expand post-approval requirements and restrict sales and promotional activities for pharmaceutical products. We cannot be sure whether additional legislative changes will be enacted, or whether the FDA regulations, guidance or interpretations will be changed, or what the impact of such changes on the marketing approvals of our product candidates, if any, may be. In addition, increased scrutiny by the U.S. Congress of the FDA's approval process may significantly delay or prevent marketing approval, as well as subject us to more stringent product labeling and post-approval testing and other requirements.

We cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of government regulation that may arise from future legislation or administrative action, either in the United States or abroad. If we or our strategic partners are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we or our strategic partners are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, our product candidates may lose any marketing approval that may have been obtained and we may not achieve or sustain profitability, which would adversely affect our business.

### ***Our business may become subject to economic, political, regulatory and other risks associated with international operations.***

Our business is subject to risks associated with conducting business internationally. Some of our suppliers and collaborative and clinical trial relationships are located outside the United States. Accordingly, our future results could be harmed by a variety of factors, including:

- economic weakness, including inflation, or political instability in particular foreign economies and markets;
- differing regulatory requirements for drug approvals in foreign countries;
- potentially reduced protection for intellectual property rights;
- difficulties in compliance with non-U.S. laws and regulations;
- changes in non-U.S. regulations and customs, tariffs and trade barriers;
- changes in non-U.S. currency exchange rates and currency controls;
- changes in a specific country's or region's political or economic environment;
- trade protection measures, import or export licensing requirements or other restrictive actions by U.S. or non-U.S. governments;
- differing reimbursement regimes, including price controls;
- negative consequences from changes in tax laws;
- compliance with tax, employment, immigration and labor laws for employees living or traveling abroad;
- workforce uncertainty in countries where labor unrest is more common than in the United States;
- difficulties associated with staffing and managing foreign operations, including differing labor relations;
- production shortages resulting from any events affecting raw material supply or manufacturing capabilities abroad; and
- business interruptions resulting from geo-political actions, including war and terrorism, or natural disasters including earthquakes, typhoons, floods and fires.

### ***Our business and current and future relationships with customers and third-party payors in the United States and elsewhere will be subject, directly or indirectly, to applicable federal and state anti-kickback, fraud and abuse, false claims, transparency, health information privacy and security and other healthcare laws and regulations, which could expose us to criminal sanctions, civil penalties, contractual damages, reputational harm, administrative burdens, and diminished profits and future earnings.***

Healthcare providers, physicians and third-party payors in the United States and elsewhere play a primary role in the recommendation and prescription of any product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Our current and future arrangements with healthcare professionals, principal investigators, consultants, customers, and third-party payors and other entities may expose us to broadly applicable fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws and regulations, including, without limitation, the federal Anti-Kickback Statute and the federal False Claims Act, that may constrain the business or financial arrangements and relationships through which we conduct clinical research on product candidates and market, sell and distribute any products for which we obtain marketing approval. In addition, we may be subject to transparency laws and patient privacy regulation by the federal government and by the U.S. states and foreign jurisdictions in which we conduct our business. The applicable federal, state and foreign healthcare laws and regulations that may affect our ability to operate include, but are not limited to, the following:

- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, persons from knowingly and willfully soliciting, offering, receiving or providing remuneration (including any kickback, bribe or rebate), directly or indirectly, in cash or in kind, to induce or reward either the referral of an individual for, or the purchase, order or recommendation of, any good or service for which payment may be made under federal and state healthcare programs such as Medicare and Medicaid;
- federal civil and criminal false claims laws and civil monetary penalty laws, including the federal False Claims Act, which impose criminal and civil penalties, including civil whistleblower or qui tam actions, against individuals or entities for knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, to the federal government, including the Medicare and Medicaid programs, or other third party payor claims for payment that are false or fraudulent or making a false statement to avoid, decrease or conceal an obligation to pay money to the federal government;
- the U.S. Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, which among other things, imposes criminal liability for knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or to obtain, by means of false or fraudulent pretenses, representations, or promises, any of the money or property owned by, or under the custody or control of, any healthcare benefit program, regardless of the payor (e.g. public or private) and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up by any trick or device a material fact or making any materially false statements in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services relating to healthcare matters;
- HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act of 2009, or HITECH, and its implementing regulations, which imposes certain obligations, including mandatory contractual terms, with respect to safeguarding the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information without the appropriate authorization by entities subject to the law, such as health plans, healthcare clearinghouses and healthcare providers and their respective business associates;
- the federal Open Payments program under the Physician Payments Sunshine Act, created under Section 6002 of the PPACA and its implementing regulations requires certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children’s Health Insurance Program (with certain exceptions) to report annually to HHS information related to “payments or other transfers of value” made to physicians (defined to include doctors, dentists, optometrists, podiatrists and chiropractors) and teaching hospitals, and applicable manufacturers and applicable group purchasing organizations to report annually to HHS ownership and investment interests held by physicians (as defined above) and their immediate family members; and
- analogous state and foreign laws and regulations, including: state anti-kickback and false claims laws which may apply to our business practices, including, but not limited to, research, distribution, sales and marketing arrangements and claims involving healthcare items or services reimbursed by state governmental and non-governmental third-party payors, including private insurers; state laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry’s voluntary compliance guidelines and the applicable compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government; state laws that require drug manufacturers to track gifts and other remuneration and items of value provided to healthcare professionals and entities and file reports relating to pricing and marketing information; and state and

## [Table of Contents](#)

foreign laws that govern the privacy and security of health information in specified circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and often are not pre-empted by HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Because of the breadth of these laws and the narrowness of the statutory exceptions and safe harbors available under the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute and analogous state laws, it is possible that some of our current and future business activities could be subject to challenge under one or more of such laws. In addition, recent healthcare reform legislation has strengthened these laws. For example, the PPACA, among other things, amends the intent requirement of the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute and criminal healthcare fraud statutes. A person or entity no longer needs to have actual knowledge of these statutes or specific intent to violate them in order to be in violation. Moreover, the PPACA provides that the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the federal False Claims Act.

Efforts to ensure that our business arrangements with third parties will comply with applicable healthcare laws and regulations may involve substantial costs. It is possible that governmental authorities will conclude that our business practices may not comply with current or future statutes, regulations or case law involving applicable fraud and abuse or other healthcare laws and regulations. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of these laws or any other governmental regulations that may apply to us, we may be subject to significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, including, without limitation, damages, fines, imprisonment, exclusion from participation in government healthcare programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, additional reporting requirements and oversight if we become subject to a corporate integrity agreement or similar agreement to resolve allegations of non-compliance with these laws and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations, which could have a material adverse effect on our business. If any of the physicians or other providers or entities with whom we expect to do business, including our strategic partners, is found not to be in compliance with applicable laws, it may be subject to criminal, civil or administrative sanctions, including exclusions from participation in government healthcare programs, which could also materially affect our business.

***We are subject to U.S. and certain foreign export and import controls, sanctions, embargoes, anti-corruption laws, and anti-money laundering laws and regulations. Compliance with these legal standards could impair our ability to compete in domestic and international markets. We can face criminal liability and other serious consequences for violations which can harm our business.***

We are subject to export control and import laws and regulations, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, U.S. Customs regulations, various economic and trade sanctions regulations administered by the U.S. Treasury Department's Office of Foreign Assets Controls, the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, the U.S. domestic bribery statute contained in 18 U.S.C. § 201, the U.S. Travel Act, the USA PATRIOT Act, the United Kingdom Bribery Act 2010, the Proceeds of Crime Act 2002, and other state and national anti-bribery and anti-money laundering laws in the countries in which we conduct activities. Anti-corruption laws are interpreted broadly and prohibit companies and their employees, agents, contractors, and other partners from authorizing, promising, offering, or providing, directly or indirectly, improper payments or anything else of value to recipients in the public or private sector. We may engage third parties for clinical trials outside of the United States, to sell our products abroad once we enter a commercialization phase, or to obtain necessary permits, licenses, patent registrations, and other regulatory approvals. We may have direct or indirect interactions with officials and employees of government agencies or government-affiliated hospitals, universities, and other organizations. We can be held liable for the corrupt or other illegal activities of our employees, agents, contractors, and other partners, even if we do not explicitly authorize or have actual knowledge of such activities. Any violation of the laws and regulations described above may result in substantial civil and criminal fines and penalties, imprisonment, the loss of export or import privileges, debarment, tax reassessments, breach of contract and fraud litigation, reputational harm, and other consequences.

## Risks Related to Our Financial Position and Need for Additional Capital

***We have incurred significant losses since inception and anticipate that we will continue to incur losses for the foreseeable future. We have no products approved for commercial sale, and to date we have not generated any revenue or profit from product sales. We may never achieve or sustain profitability.***

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company. We have incurred significant losses since our inception. Our net loss for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 was \$22.5 million and for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015 was \$15.1 million and \$19.2 million, respectively. As of September 30, 2016, our accumulated deficit was approximately \$86.5 million. We expect to continue to incur losses for the foreseeable future, and we expect these losses to increase as we continue our research and development of, and seek regulatory approvals for, our product candidates, prepare for and begin to commercialize any approved product candidates and add infrastructure and personnel to support our product development efforts and operations as a public company. The net losses and negative cash flows incurred to date, together with expected future losses, have had, and likely will continue to have, an adverse effect on our shareholders' deficit and working capital. The amount of future net losses will depend, in part, on the rate of future growth of our expenses and our ability to generate revenue.

Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with pharmaceutical product development, we are unable to accurately predict the timing or amount of increased expenses or when, or if, we will be able to achieve profitability. For example, our expenses could increase if we are required by the FDA to perform trials in addition to those that we currently expect to perform, or if there are any delays in completing our currently planned clinical trials or in the development of any of our product candidates.

To become and remain profitable, we must succeed in developing and commercializing product candidates with significant market potential. This will require us to be successful in a range of challenging activities for which we are only in the preliminary stages, including developing product candidates, obtaining regulatory approval for such product candidates, and manufacturing, marketing and selling those product candidates for which we may obtain regulatory approval. We may never succeed in these activities and may never generate revenue from product sales that is significant enough to achieve profitability. Even if we achieve profitability in the future, we may not be able to sustain profitability in subsequent periods. Our failure to become or remain profitable would depress our market value and could impair our ability to raise capital, expand our business, develop other product candidates, or continue our operations. A decline in the value of our company could also cause you to lose all or part of your investment.

***Biopharmaceutical product development is a highly speculative undertaking and involves a substantial degree of uncertainty. We have never generated any revenue from product sales and may never be profitable.***

We have devoted substantially all of our financial resources and efforts to developing our proprietary therapeutic platforms, identifying potential product candidates and conducting preclinical studies and a clinical trial. We and our partners are still in the early stages of developing our product candidates, and we have not completed development of any products. Our revenue to date has been primarily revenue from the license of our proprietary therapeutic platforms for the development of product candidates by others or revenue from our strategic partners. Our ability to generate revenue and achieve profitability depends in large part on our ability, alone or with our strategic partners, to achieve milestones and to successfully complete the development of, obtain the necessary regulatory approvals for, and commercialize, product candidates. We do not anticipate generating revenue from sales of products for the foreseeable future.

***We will require substantial additional funding, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all, and, if not available, may require us to delay, scale back, or cease our product development programs or operations.***

We are currently advancing two of our product candidates through preclinical and clinical development as well as other potential product candidates through discovery. Developing pharmaceutical products, including conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials, is expensive. In order to obtain such regulatory approval, we will be required to conduct clinical trials for each indication for each of our product candidates. We will continue to require additional funding beyond this contemplated offering to complete the development and commercialization of our product candidates and to continue to advance the development of our other product candidates and such funding may not be available on acceptable terms or at all. In addition, in June 2016, we entered into the Credit Agreement with the Perceptive Facility Lenders pursuant to which we are able to borrow up to an aggregate of \$15 million, consisting of Tranche A and Tranche B term loans for \$7.5 million each. The Credit Agreement requires us to pay monthly interest payments up until June 2, 2018, after which monthly principal payments of \$225,000 will also commence. The remaining outstanding principal balance under the Credit Agreement will need to be paid on June 2, 2020. Furthermore, in August 2016 we entered into a license agreement with Innovative Targeting Solutions Inc., or ITS, which requires licensing payments to ITS totaling \$12.0 million over the following five year period.

Although it is difficult to predict our liquidity requirements, based upon our current operating plan, we believe that the net proceeds from this offering, together with our existing cash and cash equivalents will enable us to advance the clinical development of ZW25 and ZW33 product candidates. We may also be eligible to receive certain research, development and commercial milestone payments in the future, as described under “Business – Strategic Partnerships and Collaborations.” However, because successful development of our product candidates and the achievement of milestones by our strategic partners is uncertain, we are unable to estimate the actual funds we will require to complete research and development and to commercialize our product candidates.

Our future funding requirements will depend on many factors, including but not limited to:

- the number and characteristics of other product candidates that we pursue;
- the scope, progress, timing, cost and results of research, preclinical development, and clinical trials;
- the costs, timing and outcome of seeking and obtaining FDA and non-U.S. regulatory approvals;
- the costs associated with manufacturing our product candidates and establishing sales, marketing and distribution capabilities;
- our ability to maintain, expand and defend the scope of our intellectual property portfolio, including the amount and timing of any payments we may be required to make in connection with the licensing, filing, defense and enforcement of any patents or other intellectual property rights;
- our need and ability to hire additional management, scientific and medical personnel;
- the effect of competing products that may limit market penetration of our product candidates;
- our need to implement additional internal systems and infrastructure, including financial and reporting systems; and
- the economic and other terms, timing of and success of our existing strategic partnerships, and any collaboration, licensing, or other arrangements into which we may enter in the future, including the timing of receipt of any milestone or royalty payments under these agreements.

Until we can generate a sufficient amount of product revenue to finance our cash requirements, which we may never do, we expect to finance future cash needs primarily through a combination of public and private equity offerings, debt financings, strategic partnerships and grant funding. However, subject to limited

## [Table of Contents](#)

exceptions, the Credit Agreement prohibits us from incurring indebtedness without the prior written consent of the Perceptive Facility Lenders. If sufficient funds on acceptable terms are not available when needed, or at all, we could be forced to significantly reduce operating expenses and delay, scale back or eliminate one or more of our development programs or our business operations.

***Raising additional capital may cause dilution to our shareholders, including purchasers of common shares in this offering, restrict our operations or require us to relinquish substantial rights.***

To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, your ownership interest will be diluted, and the terms of these new securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect your rights as a common shareholder. Debt financing, if available at all, may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures, or declaring dividends. If we raise additional funds through partnerships, collaborations, strategic alliances, or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, product candidates, or future revenue streams, or grant licenses on terms that are not favorable to us. We cannot assure you that we will be able to obtain additional funding if and when necessary. If we are unable to obtain adequate financing on a timely basis, we could be required to delay, scale back or eliminate one or more of our development programs or grant rights to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves.

***Unstable market and economic conditions may have serious adverse consequences on our business and financial condition.***

Global credit and financial markets experienced extreme disruptions at various points over the last decade, characterized by diminished liquidity and credit availability, declines in consumer confidence, declines in economic growth, increases in unemployment rates and uncertainty about economic stability. If another such disruption in credit and financial markets and deterioration of confidence in economic conditions occurs, our business may be adversely affected. If the equity and credit markets were to deteriorate significantly in the future, it may make any necessary debt or equity financing more difficult to complete, more costly, and more dilutive. Failure to secure any necessary financing in a timely manner and on favorable terms could have a material adverse effect on our growth strategy, financial performance and share price and could require us to delay or abandon development or commercialization plans. In addition, there is a risk that one or more of our current strategic partners, service providers, manufacturers and other partners would not survive or be able to meet their commitments to us under such circumstances, which could directly affect our ability to attain our operating goals on schedule and on budget.

***We are subject to risks associated with currency fluctuations, and changes in foreign currency exchange rates could impact our results of operations.***

Management assesses its functional currency to be the U.S. dollar based on management's analysis of the changes in the primary economic environment in which we operate.

As of September 30, 2016, approximately 59% of our cash and cash equivalents was denominated in Canadian dollars. Fluctuations in U.S. dollar and Canadian dollar exchange rates could result in a material increase in reported expenses relative to revenue, and therefore could cause our operating income (expense) to appear to decline materially. Fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates also impact the reporting of our receivables and payables in non-Canadian currencies. As a result of such foreign currency fluctuations, it could be more difficult to detect underlying trends in our business and results of operations. In addition, to the extent that fluctuations in currency exchange rates cause our results of operations to differ from our expectations or the expectations of our investors, the trading price of our common shares could be adversely affected.

## [Table of Contents](#)

From time to time, we may engage in exchange rate hedging activities in an effort to mitigate the impact of exchange rate fluctuations. For example, we maintain a natural currency hedge against fluctuations in the U.S./Canadian foreign exchange rate by matching the amount of U.S. dollar and Canadian dollar investments to the expected amount of future U.S. dollar and Canadian dollar obligations, respectively. Any hedging technique we implement may fail to be effective. If our hedging activities are not effective, changes in currency exchange rates may have a more significant impact on the trading price of our common shares.

***The terms of our credit facility require us to meet certain operating and financial covenants and place restrictions on our operating and financial flexibility. If we raise additional capital through debt financing, the terms of any new debt could further restrict our ability to operate our business.***

The Perceptive Facility is secured by a lien covering substantially all of our assets, including our intellectual property. Subject to the terms of the Credit Agreement, amounts borrowed under the facility can be repaid at any time, subject to certain penalty payments, prior to the June 2, 2020 maturity date, at which time all amounts borrowed will be due and payable. In connection with the Perceptive Facility, Perceptive was concurrently issued a warrant that entitles Perceptive to purchase up to 704,081 of our Class A preferred shares at an exercise price of \$4.90 per share, with a term of five years.

The Credit Agreement contains customary affirmative and negative covenants, indemnification provisions and events of default. The affirmative covenants include, among others, covenants requiring us to maintain our legal existence and governmental approvals, deliver certain financial reports and maintain certain intellectual property rights. The negative covenants include, among others, restrictions on transferring or licensing our assets, changing our business, incurring additional indebtedness, engaging in mergers or acquisitions, paying dividends or making other distributions, and creating other liens on our assets, in each case subject to customary exceptions. If we default under the Credit Agreement, the Perceptive Facility Lenders will be able to declare all obligations immediately due and payable and take control of our pledged assets, potentially requiring us to renegotiate our agreement on terms less favorable to us or to immediately cease operations. Further, if we are liquidated, the Perceptive Facility Lenders' rights to repayment would be senior to the rights of the holders of our common shares to receive any proceeds from the liquidation. The Perceptive Facility Lenders could declare a default under the Credit Agreement upon the occurrence of any event that the Perceptive Facility Lenders interpret as a material adverse change as defined under the credit agreement, thereby requiring us to repay the loan immediately or to attempt to reverse the declaration of default through negotiation or litigation. Any declaration by the Perceptive Facility Lenders of an event of default could significantly harm our business and prospects and could cause the price of our common shares to decline. If we raise any additional debt financing, the terms of such additional debt could further restrict our operating and financial flexibility.

### **Risks Related to Our Dependence on Third Parties**

***Our existing strategic partnerships are important to our business, and future strategic partnerships will likely also be important to us. If we are unable to maintain our strategic partnerships, or if these strategic partnerships are not successful, our business could be adversely affected.***

We have limited capabilities for drug development and do not yet have any capability for sales, marketing or distribution. Accordingly, we have entered into strategic partnerships with other companies that we believe can provide such capabilities, including our collaboration and license agreements with Merck, Lilly, Celgene, GSK and Daiichi. These relationships also have provided us with non-dilutive funding for our wholly-owned pipeline and therapeutic platforms and we expect to receive additional funding under these strategic partnerships in the future. Our existing strategic partnerships, and any future strategic partnerships we enter into, may pose a number of risks, including the following:

- strategic partners have significant discretion in determining the efforts and resources that they will apply to these partnerships;
- strategic partners may not perform their obligations as expected;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- strategic partners may not pursue development and commercialization of any product candidates that achieve regulatory approval or may elect not to continue or renew development or commercialization programs based on clinical trial results, changes in the partners' strategic focus or available funding, or external factors, such as an acquisition, that divert resources or create competing priorities;
- strategic partners may delay clinical trials, provide insufficient funding for a clinical trial program, stop a clinical trial or abandon a product candidate, repeat or conduct new clinical trials or require a new formulation of a product candidate for clinical testing;
- strategic partners could independently develop, or develop with third parties, products that compete directly or indirectly with our product candidates if the strategic partners believe that competitive products are more likely to be successfully developed or can be commercialized under terms that are more economically attractive than our product candidates;
- product candidates discovered in collaboration with us may be viewed by our strategic partners as competitive with their own product candidates or products, which may cause strategic partners to cease to devote resources to the commercialization of our product candidates;
- a strategic partner with marketing and distribution rights to one or more of our product candidates that achieve regulatory approval may not commit sufficient resources to the marketing and distribution of such product candidates;
- disagreements with strategic partners, including disagreements over proprietary rights, contract interpretation or the preferred course of development, might cause delays or termination of the research, development or commercialization of product candidates, might lead to additional responsibilities for us with respect to product candidates, or might result in litigation or arbitration, any of which would be time-consuming and expensive;
- strategic partners may not properly maintain or defend our intellectual property rights or may use our proprietary information in such a way as to invite litigation that could jeopardize or invalidate our intellectual property or proprietary information or expose us to potential litigation;
- strategic partners may infringe the intellectual property rights of third parties, which may expose us to litigation and potential liability; and
- strategic partnerships may be terminated for the convenience of the partner and, if terminated, we could be required to raise additional capital to pursue further development or commercialization of the applicable product candidates. For example, each of our collaboration and license agreements with Merck, Lilly, Celgene, GSK and Daiichi may be terminated for convenience upon the completion of a specified notice period.

### ***We may not realize the anticipated benefits of our strategic partnerships.***

If our strategic partnerships do not result in the successful development and commercialization of product candidates or if one of our partners terminates its agreement with us, we may not receive any future research funding or milestone or royalty payments under the collaboration. Moreover, our estimates of the potential revenue we are eligible to receive under our strategic partnerships may include potential payments in respect of therapeutic programs for which our partners have discontinued development or may discontinue development in the future. Furthermore, our strategic partners may not keep us informed as to the status of their in-house research activities and they may fail to exercise options embedded within certain agreements. Any discontinuation of product development by our strategic partners could reduce the amounts receivable under our strategic partnerships below the stated amounts we are eligible to receive under those agreements. If we do not receive the funding we expect under these agreements, our development of our therapeutic platforms and product candidates could be delayed and we may need additional resources to develop product candidates and our therapeutic platforms. All of the risks relating to product development, regulatory approval and commercialization described in this prospectus also apply to the activities of our program strategic partners.

Additionally, subject to its contractual obligations to us, if one of our strategic partners is involved in a business combination, the partner might deemphasize or terminate the development or commercialization of any product candidate licensed to it by us. If one of our strategic partners terminates its agreement with us, we may find it more difficult to attract new partners.

***We face significant competition in seeking new strategic partners.***

For some of our product candidates, we may in the future determine to collaborate with additional pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies for development and potential commercialization of therapeutic products. Our ability to reach a definitive agreement for a collaboration will depend, among other things, upon our assessment of the strategic partner's resources and expertise, the terms and conditions of the proposed collaboration and the proposed strategic partner's evaluation of a number of factors. These factors may include the design or results of clinical trials, the likelihood of approval by the FDA or similar regulatory authorities outside the United States, the potential market for the subject product candidate, the costs and complexities of manufacturing and delivering such product candidate to patients, the potential of competing products, the existence of uncertainty with respect to our ownership of technology, which can exist if there is a challenge to such ownership without regard to the merits of the challenge and industry and market conditions generally. The strategic partner may also consider alternative product candidates or technologies for similar indications that may be available to collaborate on and whether such a collaboration could be more attractive than the one with us for our product candidate.

Strategic partnerships are complex and time-consuming to negotiate and document. In addition, there have been a significant number of recent business combinations among large pharmaceutical companies that have resulted in a reduced number of potential future strategic partners. If we are unable to reach agreements with suitable strategic partners on a timely basis, on acceptable terms, or at all, we may have to curtail the development of a product candidate, reduce or delay one or more of our other development programs, delay its potential commercialization or reduce the scope of any sales or marketing activities, or increase our expenditures and undertake development or commercialization activities at our own expense. If we elect to fund and undertake development or commercialization activities on our own, we may need to obtain additional expertise and additional capital, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms or at all. If we fail to enter into strategic partnerships and do not have sufficient funds or expertise to undertake the necessary development and commercialization activities, we may not be able to further develop our product candidates or bring them to market or continue to develop our therapeutic platforms and our business may be materially and adversely affected.

***We rely on third-party manufacturers to produce our clinical product candidates. Any failure by a third-party manufacturer to produce acceptable product candidate for us may delay or impair our ability to initiate or complete our clinical trials or commercialize approved products.***

We do not currently own or operate any manufacturing facilities nor do we have any in-house manufacturing experience or personnel. We rely on our strategic partners to manufacture product candidates licensed to them or work with multiple third-party contract manufacturers to produce sufficient quantities of materials required for the manufacture of our product candidates for preclinical testing and clinical trials, in compliance with applicable regulatory and quality standards, and intend to do so for the commercial manufacture of our products. If we are unable to arrange for such third-party manufacturing sources, or fail to do so on commercially reasonable terms, we may not be able to successfully produce sufficient supply of product candidate or we may be delayed in doing so. Such failure or substantial delay could materially harm our business.

Reliance on third-party manufacturers entails risks to which we would not be subject if we manufactured product candidates ourselves, including reliance on the third party for regulatory compliance and quality control and assurance, volume production, the possibility of breach of the manufacturing agreement by the third party because of factors beyond our control (including a failure to synthesize and manufacture our product candidates

## [Table of Contents](#)

in accordance with our product specifications) and the possibility of termination or nonrenewal of the agreement by the third-party at a time that is costly or damaging to us. In addition, the FDA, EMA and other regulatory authorities require that our product candidates be manufactured according to current cGMPs and similar foreign standards. Pharmaceutical manufacturers and their subcontractors are required to register their facilities or products manufactured at the time of submission of the marketing application and then annually thereafter with the FDA and certain state and foreign agencies. They are also subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA, state and other foreign authorities. Any subsequent discovery of problems with a product, or a manufacturing or laboratory facility used by us or our strategic partners, may result in restrictions on the product or on the manufacturing or laboratory facility, including marketed product recall, suspension of manufacturing, product seizure, or a voluntary withdrawal of the drug from the market. We may have little to no control regarding the occurrence of third-party manufacturer incidents. Any failure by our third-party manufacturers to comply with cGMP or failure to scale up manufacturing processes, including any failure to deliver sufficient quantities of product candidates in a timely manner, could lead to a delay in, or failure to obtain, regulatory approval of any of our product candidates.

***The manufacture of our product candidates is complex. We and our third-party manufacturers may encounter difficulties in production. If we encounter any such difficulties, our ability to supply our product candidates for clinical trials or, if approved, for commercial sale could be delayed or halted entirely.***

The manufacture of biopharmaceutical products is complex and requires significant expertise and capital investment, including the development of advanced manufacturing techniques and process controls. The process of manufacturing our product candidates is extremely susceptible to product loss due to contamination, equipment failure or improper installation or operation of equipment, vendor or operator error, contamination and inconsistency in yields, variability in product characteristics and difficulties in scaling the production process. Even minor deviations from normal manufacturing processes could result in reduced production yields, product defects and other supply disruptions. If microbial, viral or other contaminations are discovered in our product candidates or in the manufacturing facilities in which our product candidates are made, such manufacturing facilities may need to be closed for an extended period of time to investigate and remedy the contamination. All of our engineered antibodies are manufactured by starting cells that are stored in a cell bank. We have one master cell bank for each antibody manufactured in accordance with cGMP and multiple working cell banks. While we believe we would have adequate back up should any cell bank be lost in a catastrophic event, it is possible that we could lose multiple cell banks and have our manufacturing severely impacted by the need to replace the cell banks. Any adverse developments affecting manufacturing operations for our product candidates, if any are approved, may result in shipment delays, inventory shortages, lot failures, product withdrawals or recalls, or other interruptions in the supply of our products. We may also have to take inventory write-offs and incur other charges and expenses for products that fail to meet specifications, undertake costly remediation efforts or seek more costly manufacturing alternatives.

***We rely on third parties to monitor, support, conduct and oversee clinical trials of the product candidates that we are developing and, in some cases, to maintain regulatory files for those product candidates. We may not be able to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates or commercialize any products that may result from our development efforts, if we are not able to maintain or secure agreements with such third parties on acceptable terms, if these third parties do not perform their services as required, or if these third parties fail to timely transfer any regulatory information held by them to us.***

We rely on entities outside of our control, which may include academic institutions, CROs, hospitals, clinics and other third-party strategic partners, to monitor, support, conduct and oversee preclinical studies and clinical trials of our current and future product candidates. We also rely on third parties to perform clinical trials on our current and future product candidates when they reach that stage. As a result, we have less control over the timing and cost of these studies and the ability to recruit trial subjects than if we conducted these trials with our own personnel.

## [Table of Contents](#)

If we are unable to maintain or enter into agreements with these third parties on acceptable terms, or if any such engagement is terminated prematurely, we may be unable to enroll patients on a timely basis or otherwise conduct our trials in the manner we anticipate. In addition, there is no guarantee that these third parties will devote adequate time and resources to our studies or perform as required by our contract or in accordance with regulatory requirements, including maintenance of clinical trial information regarding our product candidates. If these third parties fail to meet expected deadlines, fail to transfer to us any regulatory information in a timely manner, fail to adhere to protocols or fail to act in accordance with regulatory requirements or our agreements with them, or if they otherwise perform in a substandard manner or in a way that compromises the quality or accuracy of their activities or the data they obtain, then clinical trials of our product candidates may be extended or delayed with additional costs incurred, or our data may be rejected by the FDA, EMA or other regulatory agencies.

Ultimately, we are responsible for ensuring that each of our clinical trials is conducted in accordance with the applicable protocol, legal, regulatory and scientific standards, and our reliance on third parties does not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities.

We and our CROs are required to comply with cGCP regulations and guidelines enforced by the FDA, the competent authorities of the member states of the EU and comparable foreign regulatory authorities for products in clinical development. Regulatory authorities enforce these cGCP regulations through periodic inspections of clinical trial sponsors, principal investigators and clinical trial sites. If we or any of our CROs fail to comply with applicable cGCP regulations, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and our submission of marketing applications may be delayed or the FDA may require us to perform additional clinical trials before approving our marketing applications. Upon inspection, the FDA could determine that any of our clinical trials fail or have failed to comply with applicable cGCP regulations. In addition, our clinical trials must be conducted with product produced under the cGMP regulations enforced by the FDA, and our clinical trials may require a large number of test subjects. Our failure to comply with these regulations may require us to repeat clinical trials, which would delay the regulatory approval process and increase our costs. Moreover, our business may be implicated if any of our CROs violates federal or state fraud and abuse or false claims laws and regulations or healthcare privacy and security laws.

If any of our clinical trial sites terminate for any reason, we may experience the loss of follow-up information on patients enrolled in our ongoing clinical trials unless we are able to transfer the care of those patients to another qualified clinical trial site. Further, if our relationship with any of our CROs is terminated, we may be unable to enter into arrangements with alternative CROs on commercially reasonable terms, or at all.

Switching or adding CROs or other suppliers can involve substantial cost and require extensive management time and focus. In addition, there is a natural transition period when a new CRO or supplier commences work. As a result, delays may occur, which can materially impact our ability to meet our desired clinical development timelines. If we are required to seek alternative supply arrangements, the resulting delays and potential inability to find a suitable replacement could materially and adversely impact our business.

***We rely on third parties for various operational and administrative aspects of our business, including for certain cloud-based software platforms, which impact our financial, operational and research activities. If any of these third parties fail to provide timely, accurate and ongoing service or if the cloud-based platforms suffer outages that we are unable to mitigate, our business may be adversely affected.***

We currently rely upon third party consultants and contractors to provide certain operational and administrative services. These services include external tax advice and clinical and research consultation. The failure of any of these third parties to provide accurate and timely service may adversely impact our business operations. In addition, if such third-party service providers were to cease operations, temporarily or permanently, face financial distress or other business disruption, increase their fees or if our relationships with these providers deteriorate, we could suffer increased costs until an equivalent provider could be found, if at all,

## [Table of Contents](#)

or we could develop internal capabilities, if ever. In addition, if we are unsuccessful in choosing or finding high-quality partners, if we fail to negotiate cost-effective relationships with them, or if we ineffectively manage these relationships, it could have an adverse impact on our business and financial performance.

Further, our operations depend on the continuing and efficient operation of our information technology and communications systems and infrastructure, and specifically on the “cloud-based” platforms. These platforms are vulnerable to damage or interruption from earthquakes, vandalism, sabotage, terrorist attacks, floods, fires, power outages, telecommunications failures, and computer viruses or other deliberate attempts to harm the systems. The occurrence of a natural or intentional disaster, any decision to close a facility we are using without adequate notice, or particularly an unanticipated problem at our cloud-based virtual server facility, could result in harmful interruptions in our service, resulting in adverse effects to our business.

### **Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property**

#### ***Our commercial success depends significantly on our ability to operate without infringing the patents and other proprietary rights of third parties.***

Our success will depend in part on our ability to operate without infringing the proprietary rights of third parties. Other entities may have or obtain patents or proprietary rights that could limit our ability to make, use, sell, offer for sale or import our future approved products or impair our competitive position. For example, certain patent applications held by third parties cover Fab region engineering methods for bispecific antibodies and mutations in Fab heavy and light chains regions to generate correctly paired bispecific antibodies. Although we believe that these applications will not be granted with the currently pending claims, if any patent applications are eventually granted with claims that cover any Fab region heavy and light chains used in our products or our strategic partners’ products and we are unable to invalidate those patents, or if licenses for them are not available on commercially reasonable terms or at all, our business could be materially harmed.

We are also aware of third party patents and patent applications containing claims directed to compositions and methods for treating various forms of cancer with antibodies targeting HER2, alone or in combination with other anti-cancer agents, as well as compositions and methods for making and using anti-HER2 antibody conjugates comprising certain toxins, which patents and applications could potentially be construed to cover our product candidates and the use thereof to treat cancer. If our products or our strategic partners’ products were to be found to infringe any such patents, and we were unable to invalidate those patents, or if licenses for them are not available on commercially reasonable terms, or at all, our business could be materially harmed. These patents may not expire before we receive marketing authorization for our product candidates, and could delay the commercial launch or one or more future products. There is also no assurance that there are not third-party patents or patent applications of which we are aware, but which we do not believe are relevant to our business, which may, nonetheless, ultimately be found to limit our ability to make, use, sell, offer for sale or import our future approved products or impair our competitive position.

Patents that we may ultimately be found to infringe could be issued to third parties. Third parties may have or obtain valid and enforceable patents or proprietary rights that could block us from developing product candidates using our technology. Our failure to obtain a license to any technology that we require may materially harm our business, financial condition and results of operations. Moreover, our failure to maintain a license to any technology that we require may also materially harm our business, financial condition and results of operations. Furthermore, we would be exposed to a threat of litigation.

In the pharmaceutical industry, significant litigation and other proceedings regarding patents, patent applications, trademarks and other intellectual property rights have become commonplace. The types of situations in which we may become a party to such litigation or proceedings include:

- we or our strategic partners may initiate litigation or other proceedings against third parties seeking to invalidate the patents held by those third parties, to obtain a judgment that our products or processes do not infringe those third parties’ patents or to obtain a judgement that those parties’ patents are unenforceable;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- if our competitors file patent applications that claim technology also claimed by us or our licensors, we or our licensors may be required to participate in interference, derivation or opposition proceedings to determine the priority of invention, which could jeopardize our patent rights and potentially provide a third-party with a dominant patent position;
- if third parties initiate litigation claiming that our processes or products infringe their patent or other intellectual property rights or initiating other proceedings, including post-grant proceedings and *inter partes* reviews, we and our strategic partners will need to defend against such proceedings; and
- if a license to necessary technology is terminated, the licensor may initiate litigation claiming that our processes or products infringe or misappropriate their patent or other intellectual property rights and/or that we breached our obligations under the license agreement, and we and our strategic partners would need to defend against such proceedings.

These lawsuits would be costly and could affect our results of operations and divert the attention of our management and scientific personnel. Some of our competitors may be able to sustain the cost of such litigation and proceedings more effectively than we can because of their substantially greater resources. There is a risk that a court would decide that we or our strategic partners are infringing the third party's patents and would order us or our strategic partners to stop the activities covered by the patents. In that event, we or our strategic partners may not have a viable alternative to the technology protected by the patent and may need to halt work on the affected product candidate or cease commercialization of an approved product. In addition, there is a risk that a court will order us or our strategic partners to pay third party damages or some other monetary award, depending upon the jurisdiction. An adverse outcome in any litigation or other proceeding could subject us to significant liabilities to third parties, potentially including treble damages and attorneys' fees if we are found to have willfully infringed, and we may be required to cease using the technology that is at issue or to license the technology from third parties. We may not be able to obtain any required licenses on commercially acceptable terms or at all. Any of these outcomes could have a material adverse effect on our business.

***If we are unable to obtain, maintain and enforce patent and trade secret protection for our product candidates and related technology, our business could be materially harmed.***

Our strategy depends on our ability to identify and seek patent protection for our discoveries. This process is expensive and time consuming, and we may not be able to file and prosecute all necessary or desirable patent applications at a reasonable cost or in a timely manner or in all jurisdictions where protection may be commercially advantageous. It is also possible that we will fail to identify patentable aspects of our research and development output before it is too late to obtain patent protection. Moreover, in some circumstances, we may not have the right to control the preparation, filing and prosecution of patent applications, or to maintain the patents, covering technology that we have licensed from third parties. Therefore, our owned or in-licensed patents and patent applications may not be prosecuted and enforced in a manner consistent with the best interests of our business. Our patent applications cannot be enforced against third parties practicing the technology claimed in such applications unless, and until, patents issues from such applications, and then only to the extent the issued claims cover the technology. The patent applications that we own or in-license may fail to result in issued patents with claims that cover our current and future product candidates in the United States or in other foreign countries.

Moreover, the patent position of biopharmaceutical companies generally is highly uncertain, involves complex legal and factual questions and has in recent years been the subject of much litigation. The issuance of a patent does not ensure that it is valid or enforceable. Third parties may challenge the validity, enforceability or scope of our issued patents, and such patents may be narrowed, invalidated, circumvented, or deemed unenforceable. In addition, changes in law may introduce uncertainty in the enforceability or scope of patents owned by biotechnology companies. If, our patents are narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable, third parties may be able to commercialize our technology or products and compete directly with us without payment to us. There is no assurance that all potentially relevant prior art relating to our patents and patent applications has been

found, and such prior art could potentially invalidate one or more of our patents or prevent a patent from issuing from one or more of our pending patent applications. There is also no assurance that there is not prior art of which we are aware, but which we do not believe affects the validity or enforceability of a claim in our patents and patent applications, which may, nonetheless, ultimately be found to affect the validity or enforceability of a claim. Furthermore, even if our patents are unchallenged, they may not adequately protect our intellectual property, provide exclusivity for our product candidates, prevent others from designing around our claims or provide us with a competitive advantage. The legal systems of certain countries do not favor the aggressive enforcement of patents, and the laws of foreign countries may not allow us to protect our inventions with patents to the same extent as the laws of the United States. Because patent applications in the United States and many foreign jurisdictions are typically not published until 18 months after filing, or in some cases not at all, and because publications of discoveries in scientific literature lag behind actual discoveries, we cannot be certain that we were the first to make the inventions claimed in our issued patents or pending patent applications, or that we were the first to file for protection of the inventions set forth in our patents or patent applications. As a result, we may not be able to obtain or maintain protection for certain inventions. Therefore, the issuance, validity, enforceability, scope and commercial value of our patents in the United States and in foreign countries cannot be predicted with certainty and, as a result, any patents that we own or license may not provide sufficient protection against competitors. We may not be able to obtain or maintain patent protection from our pending patent applications, from those we may file in the future, or from those we may license from third parties. Moreover, even if we are able to obtain patent protection, such patent protection may be of insufficient scope to achieve our business objectives. In addition, the issuance of a patent does not give us the right to practice the patented invention. Third parties may have blocking patents that could prevent us from marketing our own patented product and practicing our own patented technology.

***Our patents covering one or more of our products or product candidates could be found invalid or unenforceable if challenged.***

Any of our intellectual property rights could be challenged or invalidated despite measures we take to obtain patent and other intellectual property protection with respect to our product candidates and proprietary technology. For example, if we were to initiate legal proceedings against a third party to enforce a patent covering one of our product candidates, the defendant could counterclaim that our patent is invalid and/or unenforceable. In patent litigation in the United States and in some other jurisdictions, defendant counterclaims alleging invalidity and/or unenforceability are commonplace. Grounds for a validity challenge could be an alleged failure to meet any of several statutory requirements, for example, lack of novelty, obviousness or non-enablement. Grounds for an unenforceability assertion could be an allegation that someone connected with prosecution of the patent withheld material information from the United States Patent and Trademark Office, or USPTO, or the applicable foreign counterpart, or made a misleading statement, during prosecution. A litigant or the USPTO itself could challenge our patents on this basis even if we believe that we have conducted our patent prosecution in accordance with the duty of candor and in good faith. The outcome following such a challenge is unpredictable.

With respect to challenges to the validity of our patents, for example, there might be invalidating prior art, of which we and the patent examiner were unaware during prosecution. If a defendant were to prevail on a legal assertion of invalidity and/or unenforceability, we would lose at least part, and perhaps all, of the patent protection on a product candidate. Even if a defendant does not prevail on a legal assertion of invalidity and/or unenforceability, our patent claims may be construed in a manner that would limit our ability to enforce such claims against the defendant and others. The cost of defending such a challenge, particularly in a foreign jurisdiction, and any resulting loss of patent protection could have a material adverse impact on one or more of our product candidates and our business.

Enforcing our intellectual property rights against third parties may also cause such third parties to file other counterclaims against us, which could be costly to defend, particularly in a foreign jurisdiction, and could require us to pay substantial damages, cease the sale of certain products or enter into a license agreement and pay

royalties (which may not be possible on commercially reasonable terms or at all). Any efforts to enforce our intellectual property rights are also likely to be costly and may divert the efforts of our scientific and management personnel.

***Our intellectual property rights will not necessarily provide us with competitive advantages.***

The degree of future protection afforded by our intellectual property rights is uncertain because intellectual property rights have limitations, and may not adequately protect our business, or permit us to maintain our competitive advantage. The following examples are illustrative:

- others may be able to make compounds that are similar to our product candidates but that are not covered by the claims of the patents that we or our strategic partners own or have exclusively licensed;
- others may independently develop similar or alternative technologies without infringing our intellectual property rights;
- issued patents that we own or have exclusively licensed may not provide us with any competitive advantages, or may be held invalid or unenforceable, as a result of legal challenges by our competitors;
- we may obtain patents for certain compounds many years before we obtain marketing approval for products containing such compounds, and because patents have a limited life, which may begin to run prior to the commercial sale of the related product, the commercial value of our patents may be limited;
- our competitors might conduct research and development activities in countries where we do not have patent rights and then use the information learned from such activities to develop competitive products for sale in our major commercial markets;
- we may fail to develop additional proprietary technologies that are patentable;
- the laws of certain foreign countries may not protect our intellectual property rights to the same extent as the laws of the United States, or we may fail to apply for or obtain adequate intellectual property protection in all the jurisdictions in which we operate; and
- the patents of others may have an adverse effect on our business, for example by preventing us from marketing one or more of our product candidates for one or more indications.

Any of the aforementioned threats to our competitive advantage could have a material adverse effect on our business.

***We may become involved in lawsuits to protect or enforce our patents and trade secrets, which could be expensive, time consuming and unsuccessful.***

Third parties may seek to market biosimilar versions of any approved products. Alternatively, third parties may seek approval to market their own products similar to or otherwise competitive with our product candidates. In these circumstances, we may need to defend or assert our patents, including by filing lawsuits alleging patent infringement. The outcome following legal assertions of invalidity and unenforceability is unpredictable. In any of these types of proceedings, a court or agency with jurisdiction may find our patents invalid or unenforceable. Even if we have valid and enforceable patents, these patents still may not provide protection against competing products or processes sufficient to achieve our business objectives.

Even after they have issued, our patents and any patents that we license may be challenged, narrowed, invalidated or circumvented. If our patents are invalidated or otherwise limited or will expire prior to the commercialization of our product candidates, other companies may be better able to develop products that compete with ours, which could adversely affect our competitive business position, business prospects and financial condition. In addition, if the breadth or strength of protection provided by our patents and patent applications is threatened, it could dissuade companies from collaborating with us to license, develop or commercialize current or future product candidates.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The following are examples of litigation and other adversarial proceedings or disputes that we could become a party to involving our patents or patents licensed to us:

- we or our strategic partners may initiate litigation or other proceedings against third parties to enforce our patent and trade secret rights;
- third parties may initiate litigation or other proceedings seeking to invalidate patents owned by or licensed to us or to obtain a declaratory judgment that their product or technology does not infringe our patents or patents licensed to us;
- third parties may initiate opposition or reexamination proceedings challenging the validity or scope of our patent rights, requiring us or our strategic partners and/or licensors to participate in such proceedings to defend the validity and scope of our patents;
- there may be a challenge or dispute regarding inventorship or ownership of patents or trade secrets currently identified as being owned by or licensed to us;
- the USPTO may initiate an interference between patents or patent applications owned by or licensed to us and those of our competitors, requiring us or our strategic partners and/or licensors to participate in an interference proceeding to determine the priority of invention, which could jeopardize our patent rights; or
- third parties may seek approval to market biosimilar versions of our future approved products prior to expiration of relevant patents owned by or licensed to us, requiring us to defend our patents, including by filing lawsuits alleging patent infringement.

These lawsuits and proceedings would be costly and could affect our results of operations and divert the attention of our managerial and scientific personnel. Adversaries in these proceedings may have the ability to dedicate substantially greater resources to prosecuting these legal actions than we or our licensors can. There is a risk that a court or administrative body would decide that our patents are invalid or not infringed or trade secrets not misappropriated by a third party's activities, or that the scope of certain issued claims must be further limited. An adverse outcome in a litigation or proceeding involving our own patents or trade secrets could limit our ability to assert our patents or trade secrets against these or other competitors, affect our ability to receive royalties or other licensing consideration from our licensees, and may curtail or preclude our ability to exclude third parties from making, using and selling similar or competitive products. Any of these occurrences could adversely affect our competitive business position, business prospects and financial condition.

We may not be able to prevent, alone or with our licensors, infringement or misappropriation of our intellectual property rights, particularly in countries where the laws may not protect those rights as fully as in the United States. Any litigation or other proceedings to enforce our intellectual property rights may fail, and even if successful, may result in substantial costs and distract our management and other employees.

Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation, there is a risk that some of our confidential information could be compromised by disclosure during this type of litigation. There could also be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments. If securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could have an adverse effect on the price of our common shares.

The degree of future protection for our proprietary rights is uncertain because legal means afford only limited protection and may not adequately protect our rights or permit us to gain or keep our competitive advantage. For example:

- others may be able to develop a platform that is similar to, or better than, ours in a way that is not covered by the claims of our patents;
- others may be able to make compounds that are similar to our product candidates but that are not covered by the claims of our patents;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- we might not have been the first to make the inventions covered by patents or pending patent applications;
- we might not have been the first to file patent applications for these inventions;
- any patents that we obtain may not provide us with any competitive advantages or may ultimately be found invalid or unenforceable; or
- we may not develop additional proprietary technologies that are patentable or that afford meaningful trade secret protection.

### ***Patent terms may be inadequate to protect our competitive position on our product candidates for an adequate amount of time.***

Patents have a limited lifespan. In the United States, if all maintenance fees are timely paid, the natural expiration of a patent is generally 20 years from its earliest U.S. non-provisional filing date. Various extensions may be available, but the life of a patent, and the protection it affords, is limited. Even if patents covering our product candidates are obtained, once the patent life has expired, we may be open to competition from competitive products, including biosimilars. Given the amount of time required for the development, testing and regulatory review of new product candidates, patents protecting such candidates might expire before or shortly after such candidates are commercialized. As a result, our owned and licensed patent portfolio may not provide us with sufficient rights to exclude others from commercializing products similar or identical to ours.

### ***If we do not obtain protection under the Hatch-Waxman amendments and similar foreign legislation for extending the term of patents covering each of our product candidates, our business may be materially harmed.***

Depending upon the timing, duration and conditions of FDA marketing approval of our product candidates, one or more of our U.S. patents may be eligible for limited patent term extension under the Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Act of 1984, referred to as the Hatch-Waxman Amendments. The Hatch-Waxman Amendments permit a patent term extension of up to five years for a patent covering an approved product as compensation for effective patent term lost during product development and the FDA regulatory review process. However, we may not receive an extension if we fail to apply within applicable deadlines, fail to apply prior to expiration of relevant patents or otherwise fail to satisfy applicable requirements. Moreover, the length of the extension could be less than we request. If we are unable to obtain patent term extension or the term of any such extension is less than we request, the period during which we can enforce our patent rights for that product will be shortened and our competitors may obtain approval to market competing products sooner. As a result, our revenue from applicable products could be reduced, possibly materially. Further, if this occurs, our competitors may take advantage of our investment in development and trials by referencing our clinical and preclinical data and launch their product earlier than might otherwise be the case.

### ***If we are unable to protect the confidentiality of our proprietary information, the value of our technology and products could be adversely affected.***

In addition to patent protection, we also rely on other proprietary rights, including protection of trade secrets, and other proprietary information. For example, we treat our proprietary computational technologies, including unpatented know-how and other proprietary information, as trade secrets. To maintain the confidentiality of trade secrets and proprietary information, we enter into confidentiality agreements with our employees, consultants, strategic partners and others upon the commencement of their relationships with us. These agreements require that all confidential information developed by the individual or made known to the individual by us during the course of the individual's relationship with us be kept confidential and not disclosed to third parties. Our agreements with employees and our personnel policies also provide that any inventions conceived by the individual in the course of rendering services to us shall be our exclusive property. However, we may not obtain these agreements in all circumstances, and individuals with whom we have these agreements may not comply with their terms. Thus, despite such agreement, such inventions may become assigned to third

parties. In the event of unauthorized use or disclosure of our trade secrets or proprietary information, these agreements, even if obtained, may not provide meaningful protection, particularly for our trade secrets or other confidential information. To the extent that our employees, consultants or contractors use technology or know-how owned by third parties in their work for us, disputes may arise between us and those third parties as to the rights in related inventions. To the extent that an individual who is not obligated to assign rights in intellectual property to us is rightfully an inventor of intellectual property, we may need to obtain an assignment or a license to that intellectual property from that individual, or a third party or from that individual's assignee. Such assignment or license may not be available on commercially reasonable terms or at all.

Enforcing a claim that a party illegally disclosed or misappropriated a trade secret is difficult, expensive and time-consuming and the outcome is unpredictable. The disclosure of our trade secrets would impair our competitive position and may materially harm our business, financial condition and results of operations. Costly and time consuming litigation could be necessary to enforce and determine the scope of our proprietary rights, and failure to maintain trade secret protection could adversely affect our competitive business position. In addition, if any of our trade secrets were to be lawfully obtained or independently developed by a competitor, we would have no right to prevent such third party, or those to whom they communicate such technology or information, from using that technology or information to compete with us. If any of our trade secrets were to be disclosed to or independently developed by a competitor, or if we otherwise lose protection for our trade secrets or proprietary know-how, the value of this information may be greatly reduced and our business and competitive position could be harmed. Adequate remedies may not exist in the event of unauthorized use or disclosure of our proprietary information.

As is common in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries, we employ individuals who were previously or concurrently employed at research institutions and/or other biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies, including our competitors or potential competitors. We may be subject to claims that these employees, or we, have inadvertently or otherwise used or disclosed trade secrets or other proprietary information of their former employers, or that patents and applications we have filed to protect inventions of these employees, even those related to one or more of our product candidates, are rightfully owned by their former or concurrent employer. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these claims. Such trade secrets or other proprietary information could be awarded to a third party, and we could be required to obtain a license from such third party to commercialize our technology or products. Such license may not be available on commercially reasonable terms or at all. Even if we are successful in defending against these claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management.

***Obtaining and maintaining our patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, documentary, fee payment and other requirements imposed by regulations and governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for non-compliance with these requirements.***

Periodic maintenance fees, renewal fees, annuity fees and various other governmental fees on patents or applications will be due to the USPTO and various foreign patent offices at various points over the lifetime of our patents or applications. We have systems in place to remind us to pay these fees, and we rely on our outside patent annuity service to pay these fees when due. Additionally, the USPTO and various foreign patent offices require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other similar provisions during the patent application process. We employ reputable law firms and other professionals to help us comply, and in many cases, an inadvertent lapse can be cured by payment of a late fee or by other means in accordance with rules applicable to the particular jurisdiction. However, there are situations in which noncompliance can result in abandonment or lapse of the patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. If such an event were to occur, it could have a material adverse effect on our business.

***We may be subject to claims challenging the inventorship of our patents and other intellectual property.***

Although we are not currently experiencing any claims challenging the inventorship or ownership of our patents, we may in the future be subject to claims that former employees, strategic partners or other third parties have an interest in our patents or other intellectual property as an inventor or co-inventor. While it is our policy to require our employees and contractors who may be involved in the conception or development of intellectual property to execute agreements assigning such intellectual property to us, we may be unsuccessful in executing such an agreement with each party who, in fact, conceives or develops intellectual property that we regard as our own. For example, the assignment of intellectual property rights may not be self-executing or the assignment agreements may be breached, or we may have inventorship disputes arise from conflicting obligations of consultants or others who are involved in developing our product candidates. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these and other claims challenging inventorship. If we fail in defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights, such as exclusive ownership of, or right to use, valuable intellectual property. Even if we are successful in defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management and other employees.

***Patent protection and patent prosecution for some of our product candidates may be dependent on, and the ability to assert patents and defend them against claims of invalidity may be maintained by, third parties.***

There may be times in the future when certain patents that relate to our product candidates or any approved products are controlled by our licensees or licensors. Although we may, under such arrangements, have rights to consult with our strategic partners on actions taken as well as back-up rights of prosecution and enforcement, we have in the past and may in the future relinquish rights to prosecute and maintain patents and patent applications within our portfolio as well as the ability to assert such patents against infringers.

If any current or future licensee or licensor with rights to prosecute, assert or defend patents related to our product candidates fails to appropriately prosecute and maintain patent protection for patents covering any of our product candidates, or if patents covering any of our product candidates are asserted against infringers or defended against claims of invalidity or unenforceability in a manner which adversely affects such coverage, our ability to develop and commercialize any such product candidate may be adversely affected and we may not be able to prevent competitors from making, using and selling competing products.

***Changes in patent laws or patent jurisprudence could diminish the value of patents in general, thereby impairing our ability to protect our products.***

The patent positions of pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies can be highly uncertain and involve complex legal and factual questions for which important legal principles remain unresolved. Changes in either the patent laws or in the interpretations of patent laws in the United States and other countries may diminish the value of our intellectual property. We cannot predict the breadth of claims that may be allowed or found to be enforceable in our patents, in our strategic partners' patents or in third-party patents. The United States has enacted and is currently implementing wide-ranging patent reform legislation. Further, recent U.S. Supreme Court rulings have either narrowed the scope of patent protection available in certain circumstances or weakened the rights of patent owners in certain situations. In addition to increasing uncertainty with regard to our ability to obtain patents in the future, this combination of events has created uncertainty with respect to the validity, scope and value of patents, once obtained.

For our U.S. patent applications containing a priority claim after March 16, 2013, there is a greater level of uncertainty in the patent law. In September 2011, the Leahy-Smith America Invents Act, also known as the America Invents Act, or AIA, was signed into law. The AIA includes a number of significant changes to U.S. patent law, including provisions that affect the way patent applications will be prosecuted and may also affect patent litigation.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The AIA and its implementation could increase the uncertainties and costs surrounding the prosecution of our patent applications and the enforcement or defense of our issued patents, all of which could have an adverse effect on our business. An important change introduced by the AIA is that, as of March 16, 2013, the United States transitioned to a “first-to-file” system for deciding which party should be granted a patent when two or more patent applications are filed by different parties disclosing or claiming the same invention. A third party that has filed, or does file a patent application in the USPTO after March 16, 2013 but before us, could be awarded a patent covering a given invention, even if we had made the invention before it was made by the third party. This requires us to be cognizant going forward of the time from invention to filing of a patent application.

Among some of the other changes introduced by the AIA are changes that limit where a patentee may file a patent infringement suit and providing opportunities for third parties to challenge any issued patent in the USPTO. This applies to all of our U.S. patents, even those issued before March 16, 2013. Because of a lower evidentiary standard in USPTO proceedings compared to the evidentiary standard in United States federal court necessary to invalidate a patent claim, a third party could potentially provide evidence in a USPTO proceeding sufficient for the USPTO to hold a claim invalid even though the same evidence would be insufficient to invalidate the claim if first presented in a district court action. Accordingly, a third party may attempt to use the USPTO procedures to invalidate our patent claims that would not have been invalidated if first challenged by the third party as a defendant in a district court action.

Depending on decisions by the U.S. Congress, the U.S. federal courts, the USPTO or similar authorities in foreign jurisdictions, the laws and regulations governing patents could change in unpredictable ways that may weaken our and our licensors’ ability to obtain new patents or to enforce existing patents we and our licensors or partners may obtain in the future.

### ***We may not be able to protect our intellectual property rights throughout the world.***

Filing, prosecuting and defending patents on product candidates in all countries throughout the world would be prohibitively expensive, and our intellectual property rights in some countries outside the United States can be less extensive than those in the United States. In addition, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect intellectual property rights to the same extent as federal and state laws in the United States. Consequently, we may not be able to prevent third parties from practicing our inventions in all countries outside the United States, or from selling or importing products made using our inventions in and into the United States or other jurisdictions. Competitors may use our technologies in jurisdictions where we have not obtained patent protection to develop their own products and further, may export otherwise infringing products to territories where we have patent protection, but enforcement is not as strong as that in the United States. These products may compete with our current or future products, if any, and our patents or other intellectual property rights may not be effective or sufficient to prevent them from competing. Recent United States Supreme Court cases have narrowed the scope of what is considered patentable subject matter, for example, in the areas of software and diagnostic methods involving the association between treatment outcome and biomarkers. This could impact our ability to patent certain aspects of our technology in the United States.

Many companies have encountered significant problems in protecting and defending intellectual property rights in foreign jurisdictions. The legal systems of certain countries, particularly certain developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patents, trade secrets and other intellectual property protection, particularly those relating to biotechnology products, which could make it difficult for us to stop the infringement of our patents or marketing of competing products in violation of our proprietary rights generally. Proceedings to enforce our patent rights in foreign jurisdictions could result in substantial costs and divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business, could put our patents at risk of being invalidated or interpreted narrowly and our patent applications at risk of not issuing and could provoke third parties to assert claims against us. We may not prevail in any lawsuits that we initiate and the damages or other remedies awarded, if any, may not be commercially meaningful. Accordingly, our efforts to enforce our intellectual property rights around the world may be inadequate to obtain a significant commercial advantage from the intellectual property that we develop or license.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Additionally, the requirements for patentability may differ in certain countries, particularly developing countries. For example, unlike other countries, China has a heightened requirement for patentability, and specifically requires a detailed description of medical uses of a claimed drug. In India, unlike the United States, there is no link between regulatory approval of a drug and its patent status. In addition to India, certain countries in Europe and developing countries, including China, have compulsory licensing laws under which a patent owner may be compelled to grant licenses to third parties. In those countries, we and our licensors may have limited remedies if patents are infringed or if we or our licensors are compelled to grant a license to a third party, which could materially diminish the value of those patents. This could limit our potential revenue opportunities. Accordingly, our efforts to enforce intellectual property rights around the world may be inadequate to obtain a significant commercial advantage from the intellectual property that we own or license.

***We will need to obtain FDA approval for any proposed product candidate names, and any failure or delay associated with such approval may adversely affect our business.***

Any proprietary name or trademark we intend to use for our product candidates will require approval from the FDA regardless of whether we have secured a formal trademark registration from the USPTO. The FDA typically conducts a review of proposed product candidate names, including an evaluation of the potential for confusion with other product names. The FDA may also object to a product name if it believes the name inappropriately implies certain medical claims or contributes to an overstatement of efficacy. If the FDA objects to any product candidate names we propose, we may be required to adopt an alternative name for our product candidates. If we adopt an alternative name, we would lose the benefit of any existing trademark applications for such product candidate and may be required to expend significant additional resources in an effort to identify a suitable product name that would qualify under applicable trademark laws, not infringe the existing rights of third parties and be acceptable to the FDA. We may be unable to build a successful brand identity for a new trademark in a timely manner or at all, which would limit our ability to commercialize our product candidates.

### **Risks Related to Additional Legal and Compliance Matters**

***Our employees may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with regulatory standards and requirements and insider trading.***

We are exposed to the risk of employee fraud or other misconduct. Misconduct by employees could include intentional failures to comply with FDA regulations, to provide accurate information to the FDA, to comply with federal and state health care fraud and abuse laws and regulations, to report financial information or data accurately or to disclose unauthorized activities to us. In particular, sales, marketing and business arrangements in the health care industry are subject to extensive laws and regulations intended to prevent fraud, misconduct, kickbacks, self-dealing and other abusive practices. These laws and regulations may restrict or prohibit a wide range of pricing, discounting, marketing and promotion, sales commission, customer incentive programs and other business arrangements. Employee misconduct could also involve the improper use of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, which could result in regulatory sanctions and serious harm to our reputation. We have adopted a code of conduct, but it is not always possible to identify and deter employee misconduct, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to comply with these laws or regulations. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business, including the imposition of significant fines or other sanctions.

***If we market products in a manner that violates healthcare fraud and abuse laws, or if we violate government price reporting laws, we may be subject to civil or criminal penalties.***

In addition to FDA restrictions on the marketing of pharmaceutical products, federal and state healthcare laws restrict certain business practices in the biopharmaceutical industry. Although we currently do not have any

## [Table of Contents](#)

products on the market, we may be subject, and once our product candidates are approved and we begin commercialization will be subject, to additional healthcare laws and regulations enforced by the federal government and by authorities in the states and foreign jurisdictions in which we conduct our business. These state and federal healthcare laws, commonly referred to as “fraud and abuse” laws, have been applied in recent years to restrict certain marketing practices in the pharmaceutical industry, and include, but are not limited to, anti-kickback, false claims, data privacy and security and transparency statutes and regulations.

Federal false claims laws prohibit any person from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, a false claim for payment to the federal government or knowingly making, or causing to be made, a false statement to get a false claim paid. The federal healthcare program anti-kickback statute prohibits, among other things, knowingly and willfully offering, paying, soliciting or receiving remuneration to induce, or in return for, purchasing, leasing, ordering or arranging for the purchase, lease or order of any healthcare item or service reimbursable under Medicare, Medicaid or other federally financed healthcare programs. This statute has been interpreted to apply to arrangements between pharmaceutical manufacturers on the one hand and prescribers, purchasers and formulary managers on the other. Although there are several statutory exemptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting certain common activities from prosecution, the exemptions and safe harbors are drawn narrowly, and practices that involve remuneration intended to induce prescribing, purchasing or recommending may be subject to scrutiny if they do not qualify for an exemption or safe harbor. Most states also have statutes or regulations similar to the federal anti-kickback law and federal false claims laws, which may apply to items such as pharmaceutical products and services reimbursed by private insurers. Administrative, civil and criminal sanctions may be imposed under these federal and state laws.

Over the past few years, a number of pharmaceutical and other healthcare companies have been prosecuted under these laws for a variety of promotional and marketing activities, such as:

- providing free trips, free goods, sham consulting fees and grants and other monetary benefits to prescribers;
- reporting to pricing services inflated average wholesale prices that were then used by federal programs to set reimbursement rates;
- engaging in off-label promotion; and
- submitting inflated best price information to the Medicaid Rebate Program to reduce liability for Medicaid rebates.

The civil monetary penalties statute imposes penalties against any person or entity who, among other things, is determined to have presented or caused to be presented a claim to a federal health program that the person knows or should know is for an item or service that was not provided as claimed or is false or fraudulent.

HIPAA created new federal criminal statutes that prohibit knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud or obtain, by means of false or fraudulent pretenses, representations, or promises, any of the money or property owned by, or under the custody or control of, any healthcare benefit program, including private third-party payors, and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false, fictitious or fraudulent statement in connection with the delivery of, or payment for, healthcare benefits, items or services.

In addition, we may be subject to data privacy and security regulation by both the federal government and the states in which we conduct our business. HIPAA, as amended by HITECH, and its implementing regulations, imposes certain requirements relating to the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information. Among other things, HITECH makes HIPAA’s security standards directly applicable to business associates— independent contractors or agents of covered entities that receive or obtain protected health information in connection with providing a service on behalf of a covered entity. HITECH also created four new tiers of civil monetary penalties, and newly empowered state attorneys general with the authority to enforce

## [Table of Contents](#)

HIPAA. In January 2013, the Office for Civil Rights of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services issued the Final Omnibus Rule under HIPAA pursuant to HITECH that makes significant changes to the privacy, security and breach notification requirements and penalties. The Final Omnibus Rule generally took effect in September 2013 and enhances certain privacy and security protections, and strengthens the government's ability to enforce HIPAA. The Final Omnibus Rule also enhanced requirements for both covered entities and business associates regarding notification of breaches of unsecured protected health information. In addition, state laws govern the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways. These state laws may not have the same effect and often are not pre-empted by HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Additionally, the PPACA also included the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act, which requires certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologicals and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children's Health Insurance Program (with certain exceptions) to report annually information related to certain payments or other transfers of value made or distributed to physicians and teaching hospitals, or to entities or individuals at the request of, or designated on behalf of, the physicians and teaching hospitals and to report annually certain ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members. Failure to comply with required reporting requirements could subject applicable manufacturers and others to substantial civil money penalties.

Also, many states have similar healthcare statutes or regulations that apply to items and services reimbursed under Medicaid and other state programs, or, in several states, apply regardless of the payor. Certain states require pharmaceutical companies to implement a comprehensive compliance program that includes a limit or outright ban on expenditures for, or payments to, individual medical or health professionals and/or require pharmaceutical companies to track and report gifts and other payments made to physicians and other healthcare providers.

If our operations are found to be in violation of any of the healthcare laws or regulations described above or any other laws that apply to us, we may be subject to penalties, including potentially significant criminal, civil or administrative penalties, damages, fines, disgorgement, individual imprisonment, exclusion of products from reimbursement under government programs, contractual damages, reputational harm, administrative burdens, diminished profits and future earnings or the curtailment or restructuring of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations. To the extent that any of our products will be sold in a foreign country, we may be subject to similar foreign laws and regulations, which may include, for instance, applicable post-marketing requirements, including safety surveillance, fraud and abuse laws, and implementation of corporate compliance programs and reporting of payments or transfers of value to healthcare professionals.

***If we do not comply with laws regulating the protection of the environment and health and human safety, our business could be adversely affected.***

Our research and development involves, and may in the future involve, the use of potentially hazardous materials and chemicals. Our operations may produce hazardous waste products. Although we believe that our safety procedures for handling and disposing of these materials comply with the standards mandated by local, state and federal laws and regulations, the risk of accidental contamination or injury from these materials cannot be eliminated. If an accident occurs, we could be held liable for resulting damages, which could be substantial. We are also subject to numerous environmental, health and workplace safety laws and regulations and fire and building codes, including those governing laboratory procedures, exposure to blood-borne pathogens, use and storage of flammable agents and the handling of biohazardous materials. Although we maintain workers' compensation insurance as prescribed by the Washington State and the Province of British Columbia to cover us for costs and expenses we may incur due to injuries to our employees resulting from the use of these materials, this insurance may not provide adequate coverage against potential liabilities. We do not maintain insurance for environmental liability or toxic tort claims that may be asserted against us. Additional federal, state and local

## [Table of Contents](#)

laws and regulations affecting our operations may be adopted in the future. We may incur substantial costs to comply with, and substantial fines or penalties if we violate, any of these laws or regulations.

### ***We may lose our “foreign private issuer” status in the future, which could result in additional costs and expenses to us.***

We are a “foreign private issuer,” as such term is defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act and are not subject to the same requirements that are imposed upon U.S. domestic issuers by the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC. We may in the future lose foreign private issuer status if a majority of our common shares are held in the United States and we fail to meet the additional requirements necessary to avoid loss of foreign private issuer status, such as if: (i) a majority of our directors or executive officers are U.S. citizens or residents; (ii) a majority of our assets are located in the United States; or (iii) our business is administered principally in the United States. The regulatory and compliance costs to us under U.S. securities laws as a U.S. domestic issuer will be significantly more than the costs incurred as a Canadian foreign private issuer. If we are not a foreign private issuer, we would be required to file periodic and current reports and registration statements on U.S. domestic issuer forms with the SEC, which are generally more detailed and extensive than the forms available to a foreign private issuer. In addition, we may lose the ability to rely upon exemptions from corporate governance requirements that are available to foreign private issuers. Further, if we engage in capital raising activities after losing foreign private issuer status, there is a higher likelihood that investors may require us to file resale registration statements with the SEC as a condition to any such financing.

### **Risks Related to Employee Matters and Managing Growth**

#### ***Our future success depends on our ability to retain key executives and to attract, retain and motivate qualified personnel.***

We are highly dependent on the research and development, clinical and business expertise of Dr. Ali Tehrani, Ph.D., our President and Chief Executive Officer, Mr. Neil Klompas, our Chief Financial Officer, as well as other members of our senior management, scientific and clinical team. Although we have entered into employment agreements with our executive officers, each of them may terminate their employment with us at any time. We currently maintain “key person” insurance coverage for Dr. Tehrani (C\$5.0 million) and Mr. Neil Klompas (C\$2.0 million). The loss of the services of our executive officers or other key employees could impede the achievement of our research, development and commercialization objectives and seriously harm our ability to successfully implement our business strategy.

Recruiting and retaining qualified scientific, clinical, manufacturing and sales and marketing personnel will also be critical to our success. In addition, we will need to expand and effectively manage our managerial, operational, financial, development and other resources in order to successfully pursue our research, development and commercialization efforts for our existing and future product candidates. Furthermore, replacing executive officers and key employees may be difficult and may take an extended period of time because of the limited talent pool in our industry due to the breadth of skills and experience required to successfully develop, gain regulatory approval of and commercialize products. Intense competition for attracting key skill-sets may limit our ability to retain and motivate these key personnel on acceptable terms. We also experience competition for the hiring of scientific and clinical personnel from universities and research institutions. In addition, we rely on consultants and advisors, including scientific and clinical advisors, to assist us in formulating our research and development and commercialization strategy. Our consultants and advisors may be employed by employers other than us and may have commitments under consulting or advisory contracts with other entities that may limit their availability. If we are unable to continue to attract and retain high quality personnel, our ability to pursue our growth strategy will be limited.

***We will need to grow our organization, and we may experience difficulty in managing this growth, which could disrupt our operations.***

As of December 31, 2016, we had 115 full-time employees. As our development and commercialization plans and strategies develop, and as we transition into operating as a public company, we expect to expand our employee base for managerial, operational, financial and other resources. Additionally, as our product candidates enter and advance through preclinical studies and any clinical trials, we will need to expand our development, manufacturing, regulatory sales and marketing capabilities or contract with other organizations to provide these capabilities for us. Future growth would impose significant added responsibilities on members of management, including the need to identify, recruit, maintain, motivate and integrate additional employees. Also, our management may need to divert a disproportionate amount of their attention away from our day-to-day activities and devote a substantial amount of time to managing these growth activities. We may not be able to effectively manage the expansion of our operations, which may result in weaknesses in our infrastructure, give rise to operational errors, loss of business opportunities, loss of employees and reduced productivity amongst remaining employees. Our expected growth could require significant capital expenditures and may divert financial resources from other projects, such as the development of existing and additional product candidates. If our management is unable to effectively manage our expected growth, our expenses may increase more than expected, our ability to generate or grow revenue could be reduced and we may not be able to implement our business strategy. Our future financial performance and our ability to commercialize our product candidates and compete effectively with others in our industry will depend on our ability to effectively manage any future growth.

**Risks Related to Our Common Shares and this Offering**

***Our share price is likely to be volatile and the market price of our common shares after this offering may drop below the price you pay.***

You should consider an investment in our common shares as risky and invest only if you can withstand a significant loss and wide fluctuations in the market value of your investment. You may be unable to sell your common shares at or above the initial public offering price due to fluctuations in the market price of our common shares arising from changes in our operating performance or prospects. In addition, the stock market has recently experienced significant volatility, particularly with respect to pharmaceutical, biotechnology and other life sciences company stocks. The volatility of pharmaceutical, biotechnology and other life sciences company stocks often does not relate to the operating performance of the companies represented by the stock. Some of the factors that may cause the market price of our common shares to fluctuate or decrease below the price paid in this offering include:

- results and timing of our clinical trials and clinical trials of our competitors' products;
- failure or discontinuation of any of our development programs;
- issues in manufacturing our product candidates or future approved products;
- regulatory developments or enforcement in the United States and foreign countries with respect to our product candidates or our competitors' products;
- competition from existing products or new products that may emerge;
- developments or disputes concerning patents or other proprietary rights;
- introduction of technological innovations or new commercial products by us or our competitors;
- announcements by us, our strategic partners or our competitors of significant acquisitions, strategic partnerships, joint ventures, or capital commitments;
- changes in estimates or recommendations by securities analysts, if any cover our common shares;
- fluctuations in the valuation of companies perceived by investors to be comparable to us;

## Table of Contents

- public concern over our product candidates or any future approved products;
- litigation;
- future sales of our common shares;
- share price and volume fluctuations attributable to inconsistent trading volume levels of our shares;
- additions or departures of key personnel;
- changes in the structure of health care payment systems in the United States or overseas;
- failure of any of our product candidates, if approved, to achieve commercial success;
- economic and other external factors or other disasters or crises;
- period-to-period fluctuations in our financial condition and results of operations, including the timing of receipt of any milestone or other payments under commercialization or licensing agreements;
- general market conditions and market conditions for biopharmaceutical stocks;
- overall fluctuations in U.S. equity markets; and
- other factors that may be unanticipated or out of our control.

In addition, in the past, when the market price of a stock has been volatile, holders of that stock have instituted securities class action litigation against the company that issued the stock. If any of our shareholders brought a lawsuit against us, we could incur substantial costs defending the lawsuit and divert the time and attention of our management, which could seriously harm our business.

### ***An active trading market for our common shares may not be sustained.***

There is currently no public market for our common shares. An active trading market for our shares may not develop or be sustained. If an active market for our common shares does not continue, it may be difficult for our shareholders to sell their shares without depressing the market price for the shares or sell their shares at or above the prices at which they acquired their shares or sell their shares at the time they would like to sell. The initial public offering price of our common shares will be determined through negotiations between us and the underwriters. The initial public offering price may not be indicative of the market price of our common shares after the offering. Any inactive trading market for our common shares may also impair our ability to raise capital to continue to fund our operations by selling shares and may impair our ability to acquire other companies or technologies by using our shares as consideration.

### ***A significant portion of our total outstanding common shares are restricted from immediate resale but may be sold into the market in the near future. This could cause the market price of our common shares to drop significantly, even if our business is doing well.***

Sales of a substantial number of our common shares in the public market could occur in the future. These sales, or the perception in the market that the holders of a large number of common shares intend to sell shares, could reduce the market price of our common shares. Immediately after closing this offering, we will have                    outstanding common shares. This figure includes the shares sold in this offering, which are eligible to be resold in the public market immediately and the remaining shares that are currently restricted under securities laws or as a result of lock-up agreements but will be able to be resold as described in the “Shares Eligible for Future Sale” section of this prospectus. Moreover, holders of an aggregate of 31,492,303 common shares have rights, subject to certain conditions, to require us to file registration statements covering their shares or to include their shares in registration statements that we may file for ourselves or other shareholders. Certain of the holders of such registration right may not elect to sell any shares in this offering and therefore those holders could require us to file additional registration statements covering their shares in the future. We also intend to file a registration

## [Table of Contents](#)

statement on Form S-8 to register all common shares that we may issue under our stock option plan, and, they therefore can be freely sold in the public market upon issuance and once vested, subject to the lock-up agreements described in the “Underwriting” section of this prospectus.

***Substantial future sales of our common shares, or the perception that these sales could occur, may cause the price of our common shares to drop significantly, even if our business is performing well.***

A large volume of sales of our common shares could decrease the prevailing market price of our common shares and could impair our ability to raise additional capital through the sale of equity securities in the future. Even if a substantial number of sales of our common shares does not occur, the mere perception of the possibility of these sales could depress the market price of our common shares and have a negative effect on our ability to raise capital in the future.

***We will incur significant increased costs as a result of operating as a public company, and our management will be required to devote substantial time to corporate governance standards.***

As a public company, we will incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses that we did not incur as a private company. In addition, our administrative staff will be required to perform additional tasks. For example, in anticipation of becoming a public company, we will need to adopt additional internal controls and disclosure controls and procedures, retain a transfer agent and adopt an insider trading policy. As a public company, we will bear all of the internal and external costs of preparing and distributing periodic public reports in compliance with our obligations under the securities laws.

In addition, regulations and standards relating to corporate governance and public disclosure, including the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the related rules and regulations implemented by the SEC, the applicable Canadian securities regulators, the New York Stock Exchange, or NYSE, and the Toronto Stock Exchange, or TSX, have increased legal and financial compliance costs and will make some compliance activities more time consuming. We are currently evaluating these rules, and cannot predict or estimate the amount of additional costs we may incur or the timing of such costs. We intend to invest resources to comply with evolving laws, regulations and standards, and this investment will result in increased general and administrative expenses and may divert management’s time and attention from our other business activities. If our efforts to comply with new laws, regulations and standards differ from the activities intended by regulatory or governing bodies due to ambiguities related to practice, regulatory authorities may initiate legal proceedings against us and our business may be harmed. In connection with this offering, we increased our directors’ and officers’ insurance coverage which increased our insurance cost. In the future, it may be more expensive or more difficult for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance, and we may be required to accept reduced coverage or incur substantially higher costs to obtain coverage. These factors could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified members of our board of directors, particularly to serve on our audit committee and compensation committee, and qualified executive officers.

Under the corporate governance standards of the NYSE, a majority of our board of directors and each member of our audit committee must be an independent director no later than the first anniversary of the completion of this offering. The policies of the TSX require our board of directors to consist of at least two independent directors and Canadian securities laws require each member of the audit committee to be independent within the meaning of Canadian securities laws. We may encounter difficulty in attracting qualified persons to serve on our board of directors and the audit committee, and our board of directors and management may be required to divert significant time and attention and resources away from our business to identify qualified directors. If we fail to attract and retain the required number of independent directors, we may be subject to the delisting of our common shares from the NYSE and TSX.

***We are a “foreign private issuer” and may have disclosure obligations that are different from those of U.S. domestic reporting companies. As a foreign private issuer, we are subject to different U.S. securities laws and rules than a domestic U.S. issuer, which could limit the information publicly available to our shareholders.***

As a “foreign private issuer”, we are subject to reporting obligations that, in certain respects, are less detailed and less frequent than those of U.S. domestic reporting companies. We are required to file or furnish to the SEC the continuous disclosure documents that we are required to file in Canada under Canadian securities laws. For example, we are not required to issue quarterly reports, proxy statements that comply with the requirements applicable to U.S. domestic reporting companies, or individual executive compensation information that is as detailed as that required of U.S. domestic reporting companies. We will also have four months after the end of each fiscal year to file our annual reports with the SEC and will not be required to file current reports as frequently or promptly as U.S. domestic reporting companies. Furthermore, our officers, directors and principal shareholders are exempt from the insider reporting and short-swing profit recovery requirements in Section 16 of the Exchange Act. Accordingly, our shareholders may not know on as timely a basis when our officers, directors and principal shareholders purchase or sell their common shares, as the reporting deadlines under the corresponding Canadian insider reporting requirements are longer. As a foreign private issuer, we are also exempt from the requirements of Regulation FD (Fair Disclosure) which, generally, are meant to ensure that select groups of investors are not privy to specific information about an issuer before other investors. As a result of such varied reporting obligations, shareholders should not expect to receive the same information at the same time as information provided by U.S. domestic companies.

In addition, as a foreign private issuer, we have the option to follow certain Canadian corporate governance practices rather than those of the United States, except to the extent that such laws would be contrary to U.S. securities laws, provided that we disclose the requirements we are not following and describe the Canadian practices we follow instead. As a result, our shareholders may not have the same protections afforded to shareholders of companies that are subject to all domestic U.S. corporate governance requirements.

***We are an “emerging growth company,” and any decision on our part to comply only with certain reduced reporting and disclosure requirements applicable to emerging growth companies could make our common shares less attractive to investors.***

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in the JOBS Act. For as long as we continue to be an “emerging growth company,” we may choose to take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements applicable to other public companies that are not “emerging growth companies,” including, but not limited to, not being required to have our independent registered public accounting firm audit our internal control over financial reporting under Section 404, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and shareholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We could be an “emerging growth company” for up to five years following the completion of this offering, although, if we have more than \$1.0 billion in annual revenue, if the market value of our common shares held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of June 30 of any year, or we issue more than \$1.0 billion of non-convertible debt over a three-year period before the end of that five-year period, we would cease to be an “emerging growth company” as of the following December 31. Investors could find our common shares less attractive if we choose to rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our common shares less attractive as a result of any choices to reduce future disclosure, there may be a less active trading market for our common shares and our share price may be more volatile.

## [Table of Contents](#)

***In connection with the audit of our financial statements as of and for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015, material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting were identified and we may identify additional material weaknesses in the future.***

Prior to this offering, we have been a private company with limited accounting personnel and other resources with which to address our internal control over financial reporting.

In connection with the preparation and audits of our financial statements as of and for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015, material weaknesses (as defined under the Exchange Act and by the auditing standards of the U.S. Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, or PCAOB) were identified in our internal control over financial reporting. A material weakness is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over financial reporting, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of our annual financial statements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis. The identified material weaknesses arose from a lack of resources in our finance function that resulted in (a) the incorrect determination that a beneficial conversion feature existed in a 2013 extension to a convertible debenture, which debenture was settled through conversion in 2014, (b) errors in the calculation of Scientific Research and Experimental Development, or SR&ED, credits and SR&ED receivables for the year ended December 31, 2015 and (c) errors in the classification of certain legal expenses related to our intellectual property, for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2014, each of which resulted in post-closing audit adjustments.

In light of the identified material weaknesses, it is possible that, had we performed a formal assessment of our internal control over financial reporting or had our independent registered public accounting firm performed an audit of our internal control over financial reporting in accordance with PCAOB standards, additional control deficiencies may have been identified.

We have begun taking measures, and plan to continue to take measures, to remediate these material weaknesses. However, the implementation of these measures may not fully address these material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting, and, if so, we would not be able to conclude that they have been fully remedied. Our failure to correct these material weaknesses or our failure to discover and address any other control deficiencies could result in inaccuracies in our financial statements and could also impair our ability to comply with applicable financial reporting requirements and make related regulatory filings on a timely basis. As a result, our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects, as well as the trading price of our common shares, may be materially and adversely affected.

***If we fail to maintain an effective system of internal control over financial reporting, we may not be able to accurately report our financial results or prevent fraud. As a result, shareholders could lose confidence in our financial and other public reporting, which would harm our business and the trading price of our common shares.***

Effective internal controls over financial reporting are necessary for us to provide reliable financial reports and, together with adequate disclosure controls and procedures, are designed to prevent fraud. Any failure to implement required new or improved controls, or difficulties encountered in their implementation could cause us to fail to meet our reporting obligations. In addition, any testing by us conducted in connection with Section 404 or any subsequent testing by our independent registered public accounting firm, may reveal deficiencies in our internal controls over financial reporting that are deemed to be material weaknesses or that may require prospective or retroactive changes to our financial statements or identify other areas for further attention or improvement. Inferior internal controls could also cause investors to lose confidence in our reported financial information, which could have a negative effect on the trading price of our common shares.

We will be required to disclose changes made in our internal controls and procedures on a quarterly basis and our management will be required to assess the effectiveness of these controls annually. However, for as long as we are an “emerging growth company” under the JOBS Act, our independent registered public accounting firm will not be required to attest to the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting pursuant to Section 404. We could be an “emerging growth company” for up to five years. An independent assessment of the

## [Table of Contents](#)

effectiveness of our internal controls could detect problems that our management's assessment might not. In addition, our management and independent registered public accounting firm did not perform an evaluation of our internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2014 or December 31, 2015, in accordance with the provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. Had we and our independent registered public accounting firm performed such an evaluation, control deficiencies may have been identified by management or our independent registered public accounting firm, and those control deficiencies could have also represented one or more material weaknesses. Undetected material weaknesses in our internal controls could lead to financial statement restatements and require us to incur the expense of remediation.

***We do not anticipate paying cash dividends, and accordingly, shareholders must rely on share appreciation for any return on their investment.***

We have never paid any dividends on our common shares. We currently intend to retain our future earnings, if any, to fund the development and growth of our businesses and do not anticipate that we will declare or pay any cash dividends on our common shares in the foreseeable future. See "Dividend Policy." The Credit Agreement also contains a negative covenant which prohibits us from paying dividends subject to limited exceptions. As a result, capital appreciation, if any, of our common shares will be your sole source of gain on your investment for the foreseeable future. Investors seeking cash dividends should not invest in our common shares.

***Our management team will have broad discretion to use the net proceeds from this offering and its investment of these proceeds may not yield a favorable return. They may invest the proceeds of this offering in ways with which investors disagree.***

Our management team will have broad discretion in the application of the net proceeds from this offering and could spend or invest the proceeds in ways with which our shareholders disagree. Accordingly, investors will need to rely on our management team's judgment with respect to the use of these proceeds. We intend to use the proceeds from this offering in the manner described under "Use of Proceeds." The failure by management to apply these funds effectively could negatively affect our ability to operate and grow our business.

We cannot specify with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to be received upon the closing of this offering. In addition, the amount, allocation and timing of our actual expenditures will depend upon numerous factors, including milestone payments received from our strategic partnerships and royalties received on sale of our approved product and any future approved product. Accordingly, we will have broad discretion in using these proceeds. Until the net proceeds are used, they may be placed in investments that do not produce significant income or that may lose value.

***We are at risk of securities class action litigation.***

In the past, securities class action litigation has often been brought against a company following a decline in the market price of its securities. This risk is especially relevant for us because biotechnology companies have experienced significant stock price volatility in recent years. If we face such litigation, it could result in substantial costs and a diversion of management's attention and resources, which could materially harm our business.

***Investors in this offering will pay a much higher price than the book value of our common shares and therefore you will incur immediate and substantial dilution of your investment.***

The initial public offering price will be substantially higher than the net tangible book value per common share based on the total value of our tangible assets less our total liabilities immediately following this offering. Therefore, if you purchase common shares in this offering, you will experience immediate and substantial dilution of approximately \$        per share, representing the difference between our pro forma as adjusted net

## [Table of Contents](#)

tangible book value per share after giving effect to this offering at an assumed initial public offering price of \$        per share, the midpoint of the estimated price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus. As at December 31, 2016, we have issued 4,572,175 outstanding stock options and 280,000 outstanding warrants to acquire common shares and an outstanding warrant to acquire 704,081 Class A preferred shares at prices below the assumed initial public offering price. To the extent these outstanding options and warrants are ultimately exercised, you will experience further dilution. See “Dilution.”

### ***The NYSE or TSX may delist our securities from its exchange, which could limit investors’ ability to make transactions in our securities and subject us to additional trading restrictions.***

We have applied to list our common shares on the NYSE and, we intend to apply to list our common shares on the TSX, under the trading symbol “ZYME.” In order to make a final determination of compliance with their listing criteria, the NYSE or TSX may look to the first trading day’s activity and, particularly, the last bid price on such day. In the event the trading price for our common shares drops below NYSE or TSX’s minimum bid requirements, the NYSE or TSX could rescind our initial listing approval. If we failed to list the common shares on NYSE and TSX, the liquidity for our common shares would be significantly impaired, which may substantially decrease the trading price of our common shares.

In addition, in the future, our securities may fail to meet the continued listing requirements to be listed on the NYSE or TSX. If the NYSE or TSX delists our common shares from trading on its exchange, we could face significant material adverse consequences, including:

- a limited availability of market quotations for our securities;
- a determination that our common shares is a “penny stock” which will require brokers trading in our common shares to adhere to more stringent rules and possibly resulting in a reduced level of trading activity in the secondary trading market for our common shares;
- a limited amount of news and analyst coverage for our company; and
- a decreased ability to issue additional securities or obtain additional financing in the future.

### ***We are governed by the corporate laws of Canada which in some cases have a different effect on shareholders than the corporate laws of the United States.***

Immediately prior to the completion of this offering, we will be governed by the Business Corporations Act (British Columbia), or BCBCA, and other relevant laws, which may affect the rights of shareholders differently than those of a company governed by the laws of a U.S. jurisdiction, and may, together with our charter documents, have the effect of delaying, deferring or discouraging another party from acquiring control of our company by means of a tender offer, a proxy contest or otherwise, or may affect the price an acquiring party would be willing to offer in such an instance. The material differences between the BCBCA and Delaware General Corporation Law, or DGCL, that may have the greatest such effect include, but are not limited to, the following: (i) for certain corporate transactions (such as mergers and amalgamations or amendments to our articles) the BCBCA generally requires the voting threshold to be a special resolution or as set out in the articles, as applicable, whereas DGCL generally only requires a majority vote; and (ii) under the BCBCA a holder of 5% or more of our common shares can requisition a special meeting of shareholders, whereas such right does not exist under the DGCL. We cannot predict whether investors will find our company and our common shares less attractive because we are governed by foreign laws.

### ***U.S. civil liabilities may not be enforceable against us, our directors, our officers or certain experts named in this prospectus.***

Immediately prior to the completion of this offering, we will be governed by the BCBCA and our principal place of business is in Canada. Many of our directors and officers, as well as certain experts named herein, reside

## [Table of Contents](#)

outside of the United States, and all or a substantial portion of their assets as well as all or a substantial portion of our assets are located outside the United States. As a result, it may be difficult for investors to effect service of process within the United States upon us and such directors, officers and experts or to enforce judgments obtained against us or such persons, in U.S. courts, in any action, including actions predicated upon the civil liability provisions of U.S. federal securities laws or any other laws of the United States. Additionally, rights predicated solely upon civil liability provisions of U.S. federal securities laws or any other laws of the United States may not be enforceable in original actions, or actions to enforce judgments obtained in U.S. courts, brought in Canadian courts, including courts in the Province of British Columbia.

***If securities or industry analysts do not publish research or publish inaccurate or unfavorable research about our business, our share price and trading volume could decline.***

The trading market for our common shares will depend on the research and reports that securities or industry analysts publish about us or our business. We do not have any control over these analysts. We cannot assure you that analysts will cover us or provide favorable coverage. If one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrade our stock or change their opinion of our common shares, our share price would likely decline. If one or more of these analysts cease coverage of our company or fail to regularly publish reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which could cause our share price or trading volume to decline.

***U.S. holders of the company's shares may suffer adverse tax consequences if we are characterized as a passive foreign investment company.***

We believe that we were not classified as a passive foreign investment company, or PFIC, for the taxable year ending December 31, 2016. However, the determination as to whether we are a PFIC for any taxable year is based on the application of complex U.S. federal income tax rules that are subject to differing interpretations. If we are a PFIC for any taxable year during which a U.S. Holder (as defined under "United States Federal Income Tax Considerations for United States Holders") holds the common shares, it would likely result in adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences for such U.S. Holder. U.S. Holders should carefully read "United States Federal Income Tax Considerations for United States Holders" for more information and consult their own tax advisors regarding the likelihood and consequences if we are treated as a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes, including the advisability of making a "qualified electing fund" election (including a protective election), which may mitigate certain possible adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences but may result in an inclusion in gross income without receipt of such income.

***Insiders have substantial control over us which could delay or prevent a change in corporate control or result in the entrenchment of management or the board of directors.***

After this offering, our directors, executive officers and principal shareholders, together with their affiliates and related persons, will beneficially own, in the aggregate, approximately % of our outstanding common shares. As a result, these shareholders, if acting together, may have the ability to determine the outcome of matters submitted to our shareholders for approval, including the election and removal of directors and any merger, consolidation, or sale of all or substantially all of our assets. In addition, these persons, acting together, may have the ability to control the management and affairs of our company. Accordingly, this concentration of ownership may harm the market price of our common shares by:

- delaying, deferring, or preventing a change in control;
- entrenching our management or the board of directors;
- impeding a merger, consolidation, takeover, or other business combination involving us; or
- discouraging a potential acquirer from making a tender offer or otherwise attempting to obtain control of us.

***Provisions in our corporate charter documents and Canadian law could make an acquisition of us, which may be beneficial to our shareholders, more difficult and may prevent attempts by our shareholders to replace or remove our current management and/or limit the market price of our common shares.***

Provisions in our notice of articles and articles that will become effective immediately prior to consummation of this offering, as well as certain provisions under the BCBCA, and applicable Canadian securities laws, may discourage, delay or prevent a merger, acquisition or other change in control of us that shareholders may consider favorable, including transactions in which they might otherwise receive a premium for their common shares. These provisions could also limit the price that investors might be willing to pay in the future for our common shares, thereby depressing the market price of our common shares. In addition, because our board of directors is responsible for appointing the members of our management team, these provisions may frustrate or prevent any attempts by our shareholders to replace or remove our current management by making it more difficult for shareholders to replace members of our board of directors. Among other things, these provisions include the following:

- shareholders cannot amend our articles unless such amendment is approved by shareholders holding at least \_\_\_\_\_ % of the shares entitled to vote on such approval;
- our board of directors may, without shareholder approval, issue preferred shares having any terms, conditions, rights, preferences and privileges as the board of directors may determine; and
- shareholders must give advance notice to nominate directors or to submit proposals for consideration at shareholders' meetings.

## CAUTIONARY NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus includes “forward-looking statements” within the meaning of U.S. securities laws and “forward-looking information” within the meaning of Canadian securities laws, or collectively, forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements include statements that may relate to our plans, objectives, goals, strategies, future events, future revenue or performance, capital expenditures, financing needs and other information that is not historical information. Many of these statements appear, in particular, under the headings “Prospectus Summary,” “Risk Factors,” “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and “Business.” Forward-looking statements can often be identified by the use of terminology such as “subject to”, “believe,” “anticipate,” “plan,” “expect,” “intend,” “estimate,” “project,” “may,” “will,” “should,” “would,” “could,” “can,” the negatives thereof, variations thereon and similar expressions, or by discussions of strategy. In addition, any statements or information that refer to expectations, beliefs, plans, projections, objectives, performance or other characterizations of future events or circumstances, including any underlying assumptions, are forward-looking. In particular, forward-looking statements in this prospectus include, but are not limited to, statements about:

- the size of our addressable markets and our ability to commercialize product candidates;
- the achievement of advances in and expansion of our therapeutic platforms and antibody engineering expertise;
- the likelihood of product candidate development and clinical trial success;
- our ability to predict and manage government regulation; and
- the proposed use of proceeds of this offering.

All forward-looking statements, including, without limitation, our examination of historical operating trends, are based upon our current expectations and various assumptions. Certain assumptions made in preparing the forward-looking statements include:

- our ability to manage our growth effectively;
- the absence of material adverse changes in our industry or the global economy;
- trends in our industry and markets;
- our ability to maintain good business relationships with our strategic partners and partners;
- our ability to comply with current and future regulatory standards;
- our ability to protect our intellectual property rights;
- our continued compliance with third-party license terms and the non-infringement of third-party intellectual property rights;
- our ability to manage and integrate acquisitions;
- our ability to retain key personnel; and
- our ability to raise sufficient debt or equity financing to support our continued growth.

We believe there is a reasonable basis for our expectations and beliefs, but they are inherently uncertain. We may not realize our expectations, and our beliefs may not prove correct. Actual results could differ materially from those described or implied by such forward-looking statements. The following uncertainties and factors, among others (including those set forth under “Risk Factors”), could affect future performance and cause actual results to differ materially from those matters expressed in or implied by forward-looking statements:

- our ability to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates without significant delays;
- the predictive value of our current or planned clinical trials;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- delays with respect to the development and commercialization of our product candidates, which may cause increased costs or delay receipt of product revenue;
- our ability to enroll subjects in clinical trials and thereby complete trials on a timely basis;
- the design or our execution of clinical trials may not support regulatory approval;
- the potential for our product candidates to have undesirable side effects;
- our ability to face significant competition;
- no regulatory agency has made a determination that any of our product candidates are safe or effective for use by the general public or for any indication;
- the competitive threat of biosimilar products;
- the likelihood of broad market acceptance of our product candidates;
- our ability to obtain Orphan Drug Designation or exclusivity for some or all of our product candidates;
- our ability to commercialize products outside of the United States;
- the outcome of reimbursement decisions by third-party payors relating to our products;
- our expectations with respect to the market opportunities for any product that we or our strategic partners develop;
- our ability to pursue product candidates that may be profitable or have a high likelihood of success;
- our ability to use and expand our therapeutic platforms to build a pipeline of product candidates;
- our ability to meet the requirements of ongoing regulatory review;
- the threat of product liability lawsuits against us or any of our strategic partners;
- changes in product candidate manufacturing or formulation that may result in additional costs or delay;
- the potential disruption of our business and dilution of our shareholdings associated with acquisitions and joint ventures;
- the potential for foreign governments to impose strict price controls;
- the risk of security breaches or data loss, which could compromise sensitive business or health information;
- current and future legislation that may increase the difficulty and cost of commercializing our product candidates;
- economic, political, regulatory and other risks associated with international operations;
- our exposure to legal and reputational penalties as a result of any of our current and future relationships with various third parties;
- our ability to comply with export control and import laws and regulations;
- our history of significant losses since inception;
- our ability to generate revenue from product sales and achieve profitability;
- our requirement for substantial additional funding;
- the potential dilution to our shareholders associated with future financings;
- unstable market and economic conditions;
- currency fluctuations and changes in foreign currency exchange rates;
- restrictions on our ability to seek financing, which are imposed by our current credit agreement and or may be imposed by future debt;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- our ability to maintain existing and future strategic partnerships;
- our ability to realize the anticipated benefits of our strategic partnerships;
- our ability to secure future strategic partners;
- our intention to rely on third-party manufacturers to produce our clinical product candidate supplies;
- our reliance on third parties to oversee clinical trials of our product candidates and, in some cases, maintain regulatory files for those product candidates;
- our reliance on the performance of independent clinical investigators and CROs;
- our reliance on third parties for various operational and administrative aspects of our business including our reliance on third parties' cloud-based software platforms;
- our ability to operate without infringing the patents and other proprietary rights of third parties;
- our ability to obtain and enforce patent protection for our product candidates and related technology;
- our patents could be found invalid or unenforceable if challenged;
- our intellectual property rights may not necessarily provide us with competitive advantages;
- we may become involved in expensive and time consuming patent lawsuits;
- we may be unable to protect the confidentiality of our proprietary information;
- the risk that the duration of our patents will not adequately protect our competitive position;
- our ability to obtain protection under the Hatch-Waxman Amendments and similar foreign legislation;
- our ability to comply with procedural and administrative requirements relating to our patents;
- the risk of claims challenging the inventorship of our patents and other intellectual property;
- our intellectual property rights for some of our product candidates are dependent on the abilities of third parties to assert and defend such rights;
- patent reform legislation and court decisions can diminish the value of patents in general, thereby impairing our ability to protect our products;
- we may not be able to protect our intellectual property rights throughout the world;
- we will require FDA approval for any proposed product candidate names and any failure or delay associated with such approval may adversely affect our business;
- the risk of employee misconduct including noncompliance with regulatory standards and insider trading;
- our ability to market our products in a manner that does not violate the law and subject us to civil or criminal penalties;
- if we do not comply with law regulating the protection of the environment and health and human safety, our business could be adversely affected;
- we risk losing our "foreign private issuer" status;
- our ability to retain key executives and attract and retain qualified personnel; and
- our ability to manage organizational growth.

Consequently, forward-looking statements should be regarded solely as our current plans, estimates and beliefs. You should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. We cannot guarantee future results, events, levels of activity, performance or achievements. We do not undertake and specifically decline any obligation to update, republish or revise forward-looking statements to reflect future events or circumstances or to reflect the occurrences of unanticipated events, except as required by law.

## PRESENTATION OF FINANCIAL INFORMATION

We prepare and report our consolidated financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP. We maintain our books and records in U.S. dollars.

We have made rounding adjustments to some of the figures included in this prospectus. Accordingly, numerical figures shown as totals in some tables may not be an arithmetic aggregation of the figures that precede them.

### EXCHANGE RATE DATA

We express all amounts in this prospectus in U.S. dollars, except where otherwise indicated. References to “\$” and “US\$” are to U.S. dollars and references to “C\$” are to Canadian dollars. The following table sets forth, for the periods indicated, the high, low, average and end of period noon rates of exchange for one U.S. dollar, expressed in Canadian dollars, published by the Bank of Canada during the respective periods.

	Year Ended December 31,			Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2014	2015	2016	2015	2016
Highest rate during the period	1.1643	1.3990	1.4589	1.3413	1.4589
Lowest rate during the period	1.0614	1.1728	1.2544	1.1728	1.2544
Average noon spot rate for the period(1)	1.1084	1.2907	1.3231	1.2737	1.3168
Rate at the end of the period	1.1601	1.3840	1.3427	1.3394	1.3117

(1) Determined by averaging the rates on the last day of each month during the respective period.

On January 31, 2017, the Bank of Canada noon rate of exchange was \$1.00 = C\$1.3030

### MARKET, INDUSTRY AND OTHER DATA

Unless otherwise indicated, information contained in this prospectus concerning our industry and the market in which we operate, including our market position, market opportunity and market size, is based on information from various sources such as industry publications, on assumptions that we have made based on such data and other similar sources and on our knowledge of the markets for our products. These data involve a number of assumptions and limitations. We have not independently verified any third-party information.

In addition, projections, assumptions and estimates of our future performance and the future performance of the industry in which we operate is necessarily subject to a high degree of uncertainty and risk due to a variety of factors, including those described in the section entitled “Risk Factors” and elsewhere in this prospectus. These and other factors could cause results to differ materially from those expressed in the estimates made by the independent parties and by us.

## USE OF PROCEEDS

We estimate that the net proceeds from this offering will be approximately \$ [redacted] million, based upon an assumed initial public offering price of \$ [redacted] per common share, the midpoint of the estimated price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. If the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional shares from us in full, we estimate that the net proceeds will be approximately \$ [redacted] million after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

A \$1.00 increase or decrease in the assumed initial public offering price of \$ [redacted] per share, the midpoint of the estimated price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase or decrease the net proceeds to us from this offering by approximately \$ [redacted] million, assuming the number of shares offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same and after deducting the underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. An increase or decrease of 1,000,000 common shares in the number of common shares offered by us would increase or decrease the net proceeds to us from this offering by approximately \$ [redacted] million, assuming the assumed initial public offering price remains the same and after deducting the underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

We are undertaking this offering in order to increase our liquidity and raise capital to further develop and advance our pipeline of product candidates. We intend to use the net proceeds of this offering as follows:

- approximately \$ [redacted] million to \$ [redacted] million to fund clinical development expenses for ZW25 through our ongoing adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial (approximately \$ [redacted] million to \$ [redacted] million), including monotherapy and combination therapy cohort expansion arms, as well as to potentially commence Phase 2 randomized studies or accelerated registrational studies (approximately \$ [redacted] million to \$ [redacted] million), and additional product candidate manufacturing (approximately \$ [redacted] million to \$ [redacted] million);
- approximately \$ [redacted] million to \$ [redacted] million to fund clinical development expenses for ZW33 through our planned Phase 1 clinical trial and additional product candidate manufacturing;
- approximately \$ [redacted] million to \$ [redacted] million to fund the development of additional product candidates in our pipeline, including our bispecific ADC, T-Cell engaging bispecific and checkpoint modulating bispecific programs (see “Business – Overview – Our Pipeline of Product Candidates and Discovery Programs”); and
- the remainder for working capital and general corporate purposes, which may include other research and development programs, such as our proprietary therapeutic platforms (see “Business – Overview – Overview of our Proprietary Therapeutic Platforms.”)

We may also use a portion of the net proceeds in connection with any exercise of co-development or co-promotion rights under our current or future strategic partnerships; however, no such rights exist or are currently exercisable. In addition, we may also use a portion of the net proceeds to acquire, license and invest in complementary products, technologies or businesses; however, we currently have no agreements or commitments to complete any such transaction.

We currently conduct our research development, or R&D, using a hybrid model approach where both computational and wet-lab methods are employed. All of the computational R&D is performed internally whereas a majority of the wet-lab R&D is subcontracted to third party contract research and manufacturing organizations. For research, a significant portion of the subcontracted work is performed by Canadian companies and institutions (e.g. National Research Council of Canada and universities); however, certain activities may transition internally as our laboratory facility becomes operational. In contrast, the majority of the subcontracted development and manufacturing work is performed by international companies.

We have established cGMP manufacturing processes for the manufacturing of our product candidates, ZW25 and ZW33. We have manufactured sufficient quantities of ZW25 and ZW33 to satisfy our near-term clinical trial requirements. Pending potential future clinical and commercial needs, we will be required to

## [Table of Contents](#)

produce additional quantities of ZW25 and ZW33. Additionally, there may be opportunities to further optimize the manufacturing processes for ZW25 and ZW33 to minimize the cost of goods prior to commercial production of these compounds.

We have funded our operations with proceeds from equity financings and collaboration payments, and expect to seek additional financing through equity financings and strategic collaborations to finance our product development and corporate growth. Although it is difficult to predict future liquidity requirements, based upon our current operating plan, we believe that the net proceeds from this offering, together with our existing cash and cash equivalents will enable us to continue to advance the clinical development of our ZW25 and ZW33 product candidates. We may also be eligible to receive certain research, development and commercial milestone payments in the future, as described under “Business – Strategic Partnerships and Collaborations.” However, because successful development of our product candidates and the achievement of milestones by our strategic partners is uncertain, we are unable to estimate the actual funds we will require to complete the research, development and commercialization of our product candidates. See “Risk Factors – Risk Related to Our Dependence on Third Parties – We may not realize the anticipated benefits of our strategic partnerships.”

This expected use of the net proceeds of this offering represents our intentions based on our current plans and business conditions, which could change in the future as our plans and business conditions evolve. As of the date of this prospectus, we cannot predict with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to be received upon the closing of this offering or the amounts that we will actually spend on the uses set forth above. The amounts, allocation and timing of our actual expenditures will depend upon numerous factors, including:

- the focus, scope and results of our research, drug discovery, preclinical and clinical development activities;
- the type, number, costs and results of clinical trials for our product candidates;
- regulatory actions relating to our product candidates;
- our ability to achieve milestones and obtain royalty payments from our strategic partners;
- whether any co-funding or co-promotion rights under our strategic partnerships are exercised;
- competitive and technological developments; and
- the rate of growth, if any, of our business.

Pending our use of the net proceeds from this offering, we intend to invest the net proceeds in a variety of capital preservation investments, including short-term, interest-bearing, investment-grade securities, certificates of deposit or government securities.

### **Business Objectives and Milestones**

We expect that the net proceeds from the offering will allow us to continue the development of ZW25 through to estimated completion of its ongoing adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial, including dose escalation in the second quarter of 2017, as well as monotherapy and combination therapy cohort expansion arms in the fourth quarter of 2018, and potentially commence Phase 2 randomized clinical trials or accelerated registration clinical trials in either the second half of 2018 or the first quarter of 2019. In addition, the net proceeds will enable us to continue the development of ZW33 through to estimated completion of our planned Phase 1 clinical trial in the second half of 2018. Our product development progress is contingent upon a number of factors, and there can be no assurances that we will complete each stage of development in accordance with the timelines and estimated costs set out above, or at all. See “Risk Factors.”

## **DIVIDEND POLICY**

We have never paid any dividends on our common shares or any of our other securities. We currently intend to retain any future earnings to finance the growth and development of our business, and we do not anticipate that we will declare or pay any cash dividends in the foreseeable future. Any future determination to pay cash dividends will be at the discretion of our board of directors and will be dependent upon our financial condition, results of operations, capital requirements, restrictions under any future indebtedness and other factors the board of directors deems relevant. In addition, the terms of the Credit Agreement restrict our ability to pay dividends to limited circumstances.

## CAPITALIZATION

The following table indicates our capitalization, cash and cash equivalents, short-term investments and long-term debt at September 30, 2016:

- on an actual basis;
- on a pro forma basis to reflect the automatic conversion of our outstanding Class A preferred shares into 12,554,665 common shares and to reflect the conversion of a warrant to purchase 704,081 Class A preferred shares into a warrant to purchase 704,081 of our common shares and the resultant reclassification of our common share warrant liability to additional paid-in capital, a component of total shareholders' equity, in connection with such conversion, each of which will occur immediately prior to the consummation of this offering; and
- on a pro forma as adjusted basis to give further effect to our issuance and sale of                      common shares in this offering at an assumed initial public offering price of \$                      per share, the midpoint of the estimated price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

The pro forma and pro forma as adjusted information below is illustrative only, and our cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments and consolidated capitalization following the completion of this offering will be adjusted based on the actual initial public offering price and other terms of our initial public offering determined at pricing. You should read this table together with "Selected Historical Consolidated Financial Information," "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations," "Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements," and our consolidated financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus.

	As of September 30, 2016		
	Actual	Pro Forma (unaudited)	Pro Forma As Adjusted(1)
	(dollar in thousands, except share data)		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 27,944	\$	\$
Short-term investments	23,872		
Long-term debt	\$ 3,732	\$ —	\$ —
Common share purchase warrant liabilities	817	—	—
Preferred share purchase warrant liabilities	3,968	—	—
Redeemable, convertible preferred shares and shareholders' equity:			
Redeemable, convertible preferred shares, 15,306,123 authorized shares, no par value; 12,554,665 shares issued and outstanding, actual; no shares issued and outstanding, pro forma and pro forma as adjusted.	58,860		
Common shares, unlimited authorized shares, no par value; 31,327,561 shares issued and outstanding, actual; 43,882,226 shares issued and outstanding, pro forma;                      shares issued and outstanding, pro forma as adjusted	106,595		
Additional paid-in capital	6,102		
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(6,659)		
Accumulated deficit	(86,513)		
Total shareholders' equity	\$ 19,525	\$	\$
Consolidated capitalization	<u>\$ 86,902</u>	<u>\$</u>	<u>\$</u>

(1) A \$1.00 increase or decrease in the assumed initial public offering price of \$                      per share, the midpoint of the estimated price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase or decrease, as

## [Table of Contents](#)

applicable, pro forma as adjusted cash and cash equivalents, additional paid-in capital and total shareholders' equity by \$ , assuming the number of shares offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable us. An increase or decrease of 1,000,000 common shares in the number of shares offered by us would increase or decrease, as applicable, the pro forma as adjusted cash and cash equivalents and additional paid-in capital and total preferred shares and shareholders' equity by approximately \$ , assuming that the assumed initial public offering price remains the same, and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable us.

The number of common shares to be outstanding after this offering is based on 43,882,226 of our common shares after giving effect to the conversion of all outstanding Class A convertible preferred shares as of September 30, 2016, which will occur immediately prior to the consummation of this offering, into an aggregate of 12,554,665 common shares and excludes:

- 2,003,574 common shares issuable upon the exercise of fully-vested outstanding options to issue common shares, as of September 30, 2016, at a weighted-average exercise price of C\$3.46 per share (or \$2.64 per share, as converted);
- 2,210,196 common shares issuable upon the exercise of unvested outstanding options to issue common shares, as of September 30, 2016, at a weighted-average exercise price of C\$5.20 per share (or \$3.96 per share, as converted);
- 2,051,742 common shares reserved for future issuance under our stock option plan;
- 280,000 common shares issuable upon the exercise of outstanding common share warrants, at an exercise price of C\$4.86 per share (or \$3.71 per share, as converted); and
- 704,081 common shares issuable upon the exercise of an outstanding Class A preferred share warrant, at an exercise price of \$4.90 per share.

For additional information regarding our capital structure, see "Management — Employee Benefit Plans," "Description of Share Capital" and Note 11 of the Notes to our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus.

## DILUTION

If you invest in our common shares in this offering, your interest will be immediately diluted to the extent of the difference between the initial public offering price per common share and the pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per share immediately after this offering.

Our historical net tangible book value as of September 30, 2016 was \$46.34 million, or \$1.48 per share. The historical net tangible book value (deficit) per share represents the amount of our total tangible assets (total assets less intangible assets) less our total liabilities, divided by the number of common shares outstanding as of September 30, 2016.

Our pro forma net tangible book value as of September 30, 2016 was \$      million, or \$      per share. Pro forma net tangible book value per share represents the amount of our total tangible assets less our total liabilities, divided by the number of common shares after giving effect to (1) the amendment and redesignation of our Class A preferred shares as common shares and (2) the conversion of our outstanding Class A preferred shares into 12,554,665 common shares; and to reflect the conversion of a warrant to purchase 704,081 Class A preferred shares into a warrant to purchase 704,081 common shares and the resultant reclassification of our common share warrant liability to additional paid-in capital, a component of total shareholders' equity, in connection with such conversion, each of which will occur immediately prior to the consummation of this offering.

After giving effect to (1) the conversion of the outstanding Class A preferred shares into common shares immediately prior to the closing of this offering, assuming an initial public offering price of \$      per common share (the midpoint of the estimated price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus); (2) the conversion of a warrant to purchase 704,081 Class A preferred shares into a warrant to purchase 704,081 common shares, which will occur immediately prior to the consummation of this offering; (3) the issuance of common shares in this offering; and (4) receipt of the net proceeds from the sale of common shares in this offering at an assumed initial public offering price of \$      per common share (the midpoint of the estimated price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus), after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us, the pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value as of September 30, 2016 would have been approximately \$      million, or \$      per common share. This represents an immediate increase in pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value of \$      per common share to existing shareholders and an immediate dilution of \$      per common share to new investors purchasing common shares in this offering.

The following table illustrates this dilution on a per common share basis to new investors:

Assumed initial price to public per common share	\$
Historical net tangible book value per common share as of September 30, 2016	\$ 1.48
Decrease per common share attributable to conversion of Class A preferred shares	
Pro forma net tangible book deficit per common share before this offering	
Increase in net tangible book value per common share attributable to investors participating in this offering	
Pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value per common share, as adjusted to give effect to this offering	
Pro forma dilution per common share to investors participating in this offering	\$

Each \$1.00 increase or decrease in the assumed initial public offering price of \$      per common share (the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus) would increase or decrease, as applicable, the pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value by approximately \$      million, or approximately \$      per common share, and increase or decrease the pro forma dilution per share to investors in this offering by approximately \$      per common share, assuming that the number of shares offered by us, as set forth on the

## [Table of Contents](#)

cover page of this prospectus, remains the same and after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. We may also increase or decrease the number of common shares we are offering. An increase or decrease of 1,000,000 common shares in the number of shares offered by us would increase or decrease, as applicable, the pro forma as adjusted net tangible book value by approximately \$ , or \$ per common share, and the pro forma dilution per common share to investors in this offering by \$ per common share, assuming that the assumed initial public offering price remains the same, and after deducting estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. The pro forma as adjusted information discussed above is illustrative only and will adjust based on the actual initial public offering price and other terms of this offering determined at pricing.

The following table summarizes, as of September 30, 2016, on a pro forma as adjusted basis as described above, the aggregate number of common shares, as well as the total consideration and the average price per share paid to us by existing shareholders and to be paid by new investors acquiring shares in this offering.

	Shares Acquired		Total Consideration		Average Price per Share
	Number	Percent	Amount	Percent	
Existing shareholders		%	\$	%	\$
New investors					\$
Totals		100%	\$	100%	

If the underwriters' option to purchase additional common shares to cover over-allotments, if any, in connection with this offering, is exercised in full, the number of shares held by the existing shareholders after this offering would be reduced to % of the total number of shares outstanding after this offering, and the number of shares held by new investors would increase to shares, or % of the total number of shares outstanding after this offering.

The number of common shares to be outstanding after this offering is based on 43,882,226 of our common shares after giving effect to the automatic conversion of all outstanding Class A convertible preferred shares as of December 31, 2016, which will occur immediately prior to the consummation of this offering, into an aggregate of 12,554,665 common shares and excludes:

- 2,184,871 common shares issuable upon the exercise of fully-vested outstanding options to issue common shares, as of December 31, 2016, at a weighted-average exercise price of C\$3.61 per share (or \$2.69 per share, as converted);
- 2,387,304 common shares issuable upon the exercise of unvested outstanding options to issue common shares, as of December 31, 2016, at a weighted-average exercise price of C\$6.08 per share (or \$4.53 per share, as converted);
- 1,693,337 common shares reserved for future issuance under our stock option plan;
- 280,000 common shares issuable upon the exercise of outstanding common share warrants, at a weighted-average exercise price of C\$4.86 per share (or \$3.62 per share, as converted); and
- 704,081 common shares issuable upon the exercise of an outstanding Class A preferred share warrant, at an exercise price of \$4.90 per share.

To the extent that new options are issued under our share-based compensation plans or we issue additional common shares, convertible debt or equity-linked instruments in the future, there will be further dilution to investors participating in this offering.

## SELECTED HISTORICAL CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL DATA

The consolidated statements of operations data for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015 and the consolidated balance sheet data as of December 31, 2014 and 2015 included in this prospectus have been derived from our audited consolidated financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. The following selected historical consolidated statements of operations data for the nine months ended September 30, 2015 and 2016 and the balance sheet data as of September 30, 2016 have been derived from our unaudited consolidated financial statements and notes included elsewhere in this prospectus. Our audited consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP and are presented in U.S. dollars except where otherwise indicated. We have prepared the unaudited consolidated financial statements on the same basis as the audited consolidated financial statements and have included all adjustments, consisting only of normal recurring adjustments, which in our opinion are necessary to state fairly the financial information set forth in those statements. Our historical results are not necessarily indicative of the results we expect in the future, and our interim results should not necessarily be considered indicative of results we expect for the full year. The following data should be read together with “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations”, “Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements” and our consolidated financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus.

	Year Ended December 31,		Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2014	2015	2015	2016
(dollars in thousands except share and per share amounts) (unaudited)				
<b>Consolidated Statements of Operations Data:</b>				
Revenue	\$ 1,670	\$ 9,660	\$ 8,221	\$ 8,777
Operating expenses:				
Research and development(1)	12,622	24,654	16,417	27,898
Government grants and credits	(2,149)	(251)	—	—
	10,473	24,403	16,417	27,898
General and administrative(1)	3,945	5,217	3,846	7,437
Total operating expenses	14,418	29,620	20,263	35,335
Loss from operations	(12,748)	(19,960)	(12,042)	(26,558)
Change in fair value of warrant liabilities	—	—	—	(747)
Other income (expense)	(194)	824	797	(307)
Loss before income taxes	(12,942)	(19,136)	(11,245)	(27,612)
Income tax expense	—	(34)	—	(327)
Deferred income tax benefit	—	—	—	5,407
Net loss	\$ (12,942)	\$ (19,170)	\$ (11,245)	\$ (22,532)
Net loss per common share (basic and diluted)	\$ (0.74)	\$ (0.71)	\$ (0.42)	\$ (0.75)
Weighted-average number of common shares (basic and diluted)	17,479,680	26,888,906	26,863,879	30,085,263
Pro forma basic net loss per common share(2)		\$ (0.71)		\$ (0.53)
Pro forma diluted net loss per common share(2)		\$ (0.71)		\$ (0.53)
Pro forma basic weighted-average number of common shares(2)		26,888,906		42,365,008
Pro forma diluted weighted-average number of common shares(2)		26,888,906		42,365,008

- (1) For each period presented, the Company has reclassified certain legal costs, which were previously included in research and development in error, to general and administrative expenses. There was no impact on total operating expenses, net loss, or net loss per common share for any period presented.
- (2) The pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share reflects the conversion of all outstanding Class A preferred shares immediately prior to the consummation of this offering, assuming all such Class A

[Table of Contents](#)

preferred shares had been converted to common shares for all periods in which such Class A preferred shares were outstanding.

	As of		As of
	December 31,	December 31,	September 30,
	2014	2015	2016
	(dollars in thousands)		
<b>Consolidated Balance Sheet Data:</b>			
Cash and cash equivalents	\$46,835	\$ 11,519	\$ 27,944
Short-term investments	—	3,641	23,872
Working capital (deficit)	39,141	12,828	45,207
Total assets	50,681	23,149	98,489
Deferred revenue	8,002	—	—
Total liabilities	10,918	4,910	20,104
Total shareholders' equity and preferred shares	39,763	18,239	78,385

## UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements reflect the historical financial statements of Zymeworks on a pro forma basis to give effect to our March 18, 2016 acquisition of Kairos. See “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations — Acquisition of Kairos.”

Our (i) unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated statement of loss for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and (ii) unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated statement of loss for the year ended December 31, 2015, have each been prepared giving effect to the acquisition of Kairos as if the acquisition had occurred on January 1, 2015. The unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements should be read in conjunction with our historical financial statements and related notes for the periods presented.

The pro forma adjustments to our unaudited historical condensed consolidated financial statements are based on currently available information and certain estimates and assumptions. The actual effect of the transaction discussed in the accompanying notes may differ from the unaudited pro forma adjustments included herein. However, we believe that the assumptions utilized to prepare the pro forma adjustments provide a reasonable basis for presenting the significant effects of the transaction and that the unaudited pro forma adjustments are factually supportable, give appropriate effect to the impact of the events that are directly attributable to the transaction, and reflect those items expected to have a continuing impact on our financial condition.

The unaudited pro-forma financial statements do not necessarily reflect what the combined company’s results of operations would have been had the acquisition occurred on January 1, 2015. They may also not be useful in predicting future results of operations for the combined company. The actual results from operations may differ significantly from the pro forma results reflected therein. The combined results of operations do not reflect the realization of any expected cost savings or other synergies from the acquisition of Kairos as a result of planned cost savings or other initiatives following the completion of the acquisition.

For further information on the pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements, see our unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated financial statements and related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus.

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

*The following discussion of our financial condition and results of operations contains important information about Zymeworks' business and its performance for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2016 and for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2014 and should be read together with our consolidated financial statements, prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP, and the related notes and the other financial information included elsewhere in this prospectus. Amounts for subtotal, totals and percentage variances included in tables may not sum or calculate using the numbers as they appear in the tables due to rounding. This discussion contains forward-looking statements that involve significant risks and uncertainties. Our actual results, performance and achievements could differ materially from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements as a result of various factors, including those discussed below and elsewhere in this prospectus, particularly under "Risk Factors" and "Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements."*

### Overview

Zymeworks is an innovative, clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company dedicated to the discovery, development and commercialization of next-generation multifunctional biotherapeutics, initially focused on the treatment of cancer. Our suite of complementary therapeutic platforms and our fully-integrated drug development engine provide the flexibility and compatibility to precisely engineer and develop highly-differentiated product candidates. These capabilities have resulted in multiple wholly-owned product candidates with the potential to drive superior outcomes in large underserved and unaddressed patient populations, as further described below.

Our lead product candidate, ZW25, is a novel bispecific antibody currently being evaluated in an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial, targeting two distinct domains of the HER2 receptor. This unique design enables ZW25 to address patient populations with all levels of HER2 expression, including those with low to intermediate HER2-expressing tumors, who are otherwise limited to chemotherapy or hormone therapy. Approximately 81% of patients with HER2-expressing breast cancer and 57% of patients with HER2-expressing gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer have tumors that express low to intermediate levels of HER2, making them ineligible for treatment with currently-approved HER2-targeted therapies, such as Herceptin and Perjeta. In our Phase 1 clinical trial, ZW25 has demonstrated preliminary anti-tumour activity across multiple cancer types in patients who have progressed after second lines of treatment HER2-targeted therapies. Our second product candidate, ZW33, capitalizes on the unique design of ZW25 and is a bispecific ADC based on the same antibody framework as ZW25 but armed with a cytotoxic payload. We designed ZW33 to be a best-in-class HER2-targeting ADC for several indications characterized by HER2 expression for which we expect to initiate a Phase I clinical trial in the first half of 2017. We are also advancing a deep pipeline of preclinical product candidates and discovery-stage programs in immuno-oncology and other therapeutic areas. In addition to our wholly-owned pipeline, two of our therapeutic platforms have been further validated through multiple revenue-generating strategic partnerships with the following global pharmaceutical companies: Merck, Lilly, Celgene, GSK and Daiichi.

Our proprietary capabilities and technologies include four modular, complementary platforms that can be easily used in combination with each other and with existing approaches. This ability to layer technologies without compromising manufacturability enables us to engineer next-generation biotherapeutic product candidates with synergistic activity, which we believe will result in superior patient outcomes. Our core platforms include Azymetric, ZymeLink, EFECT and AlbuCORE. These therapeutic platforms are enabled by our protein engineering expertise and proprietary structure-guided molecular modeling capabilities. Together with our internal antibody discovery and generation technologies, we have established a fully-integrated drug development engine and toolkit that is capable of rapidly delivering a steady pipeline of next-generation product candidates in oncology and potentially other therapeutic areas.

We commenced active operations in 2003, and have since devoted substantially all of our resources to research and development activities including developing our therapeutic platforms, identifying and developing

## [Table of Contents](#)

potential product candidates and undertaking preclinical studies as well as providing general and administrative support, business planning, raising capital and protecting our intellectual property. We have not generated any revenue from product sales to date and do not expect to do so until such time as we obtain regulatory approval of and commercialize one or more of our product candidates. We cannot be certain of the timing or success of approval of our product candidates. We have financed our operations primarily through private equity placements, an issuance of convertible debentures, payments received under license and collaboration agreements, government grants and Scientific Research and Experimental Development, or SR&ED, tax credits. From inception through September 30, 2016, we received \$142.5 million, net of share issue costs, from private equity placements, and the issuance of convertible debt which subsequently converted into equity securities. Payments received from our license and collaboration agreements include upfront fees and milestone payments as well as research support and reimbursement payments through our strategic partnerships and government grants. Although it is difficult to predict our funding requirements, based upon our current operating plan, we anticipate that our existing cash and cash equivalents and short term investments as of September 30, 2016, combined with the collaboration payments we anticipate receiving, together with the estimated net proceeds of this offering, will enable us to fund the clinical and preclinical development of our lead product candidates for at least the next twelve months.

Through September 30, 2016, we had an accumulated deficit of \$86.5 million. We reported a net loss of \$19.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2015 and \$22.5 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2016. We expect that over the next several years we will increase our research and development expenditures in connection with the ongoing development of our product candidates and other clinical, preclinical and regulatory activities.

### **Acquisition of Kairos**

On December, 21 2015, we acquired a 19.99% ownership interest in Kairos, a privately held company specializing in the discovery and development of ADCs, for \$3.6 million (C\$5.0 million), paid in cash, which was accounted for under the equity method. On March 18, 2016, we completed the acquisition of the remaining shares of Kairos for approximately \$24.8 million (C\$32.3 million). The consideration was comprised of \$23.0 million (C\$30.0 million) in common share equity of Zymeworks, and \$1.7 million (C\$2.3 million) in cash, pursuant to a net working capital adjustment determined at closing. At the time of acquisition, we issued 3,628,572 common shares having a fair value of \$19.2 million (C\$25.0 million) as part of the consideration. The remaining 725,714 common shares, having a fair value of \$3.9 million (C\$5.0 million), were held back for a period of six months under the terms of the agreement for the sellers' satisfaction of general representations and warranties and potential working capital adjustments and were issuable in six months, subject to adjustments for any undisclosed matters that may have arisen during that period. On September 18, 2016, 721,445 common shares were issued after accounting for the finalization of adjustments relating to certain additional pre-acquisition invoices. Subsequent to the acquisition, the name of Kairos was changed to Zymeworks Biochemistry Inc. Effective as of January 1, 2017, we completed a short-form amalgamation with Zymeworks Biochemistry Inc.

The acquisition is accounted for in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification, or ASC, 805 Business Combinations. The purchase consideration has been allocated on a preliminary basis based on management's best estimates at the time the unaudited interim consolidated financial statements for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 were prepared. As a result of the allocation of consideration, \$20.7 million has been allocated to the in process research and development intangible asset, or IPR&D, and \$12.0 million has been allocated to goodwill. During the nine months ended September 30, 2016, we recorded a \$0.1 million loss related to the equity in Kairos and a \$0.2 million gain related to increase in fair value of equity investment at the time of the acquisition. For more detail and Kairos' historical financial statements and our unaudited pro forma financial information, see "Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements," our consolidated financial statements and the related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus.

## Strategic Partnerships and Licenses

Our unique combination of proprietary protein engineering capabilities and resulting therapeutic platform technologies was initially validated through strategic partnerships with Merck and Lilly, which focus on our Azymetric and EFECT therapeutic platforms. We subsequently entered into broader strategic partnerships with Celgene and GSK and a collaboration and cross-licensing agreement with Daiichi. Following the completion of the initial agreements with Merck, Lilly and GSK, the relationships were subsequently expanded to include either additional licenses or therapeutic platforms. These strategic partnerships have provided non-dilutive funding as well as access to proprietary therapeutic assets, and increase our ability to rapidly advance our product candidates while maintaining worldwide commercial rights to our wholly-owned therapeutic pipeline. Our strategic partnerships include the following:

- *Research and License Agreement with Merck*

In August 2011, we entered into a research and license agreement with Merck, which was amended and restated in December 2014, to develop and commercialize three bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric and EFECT platforms. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Merck a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody sequence pair exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$190.75 million, including an upfront payment (\$1.25 million received in 2011), research milestone payments totaling \$3.5 million (\$2.0 million and \$1.5 million received in 2012 and 2013, respectively), payments for completion of IND-enabling studies of up to \$6.0 million, development milestone payments of up to \$66.0 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$114.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks patent coverage on products, or (ii) for five years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates will be reduced.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Merck to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric and EFECT platforms. Merck provides funding for a portion of our internal and external research costs in support of the collaboration. After the conclusion of the research program, Merck will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products.

- *Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Lilly*

In December 2013, we entered into a licensing and collaboration agreement with Lilly to research, develop and commercialize one bispecific antibody, with an option for a second antibody, generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Lilly a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody target pair-specific exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$103.0 million, including an upfront payment (\$1.0 million received in 2013) and per product potential milestone payments, comprised of research milestone payments totaling \$1.0 million (\$1.0 million received in 2015), IND submission milestone payments of \$2.0 million, development milestone payments of \$8.0 million and commercial milestone payments of \$40.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for ten years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates may be potentially reduced.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Lilly to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric platform. Lilly provides funding for a portion of our internal and external research costs in support of the collaboration. After the conclusion of the research program, Lilly will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing, and commercialization of the products.

- *Second Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Lilly*

In October 2014, we entered into a second licensing and collaboration agreement with Lilly to research, develop and commercialize three bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. This agreement did not alter or amend the initial agreement entered in 2013. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Lilly a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody target-pair exclusive (for two bispecific antibodies) and an antibody sequence pair-specific (for one bispecific antibody) license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$375.0 million, comprised of research milestone payments of up to \$6.0 million (\$2.0 million earned in 2016), IND submission milestone payments of up to \$24.0 million, development milestone payments of up to \$60.0 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$285.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for ten years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates may be potentially reduced. In conjunction with this collaboration agreement, Lilly purchased approximately \$24.0 million of our common shares.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Lilly to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric platform. We are responsible for our internal and external research costs in support of this collaboration. After the conclusion of the research program, Lilly will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products.

- *Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Celgene*

In December 2014, we entered into a collaboration agreement with Celgene to research, develop and commercialize up to eight bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Celgene a right to exercise options to worldwide, royalty-bearing, antibody sequence pair-specific exclusive licenses to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. Celgene has the right to exercise options on up to eight programs and if Celgene opts in on a program, we are eligible to receive up to \$164.0 million per product candidate (up to \$1.3 billion for all eight programs), comprised of a commercial license option payment of \$7.5 million, development milestone payments of up to \$101.5 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$55.0 million. No development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date.

In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. Celgene also has the right, prior to the first dosing of a patient in a Phase 3 clinical trial for a product, to buy down the royalty to a flat low-single digit rate with a payment of \$10.0 million per percentage point. In addition to this collaboration agreement, the parties also entered into an equity subscription agreement under which Celgene paid \$8.6 million for common shares.

Under the agreement, we are collaborating with Celgene to generate and develop a number of bispecific antibodies during the research program, the term of which expires in April 2018 but can be extended by Celgene by 24 months if Celgene makes an additional payment. After the conclusion of the research program, Celgene will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products.

- *Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with GSK*

In December 2015, we entered into a collaboration and license agreement with GSK to research, develop and commercialize up to 10 new Fc-engineered monoclonal and bispecific antibodies generated through

the use of the EFECT and Azymetric platforms. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted GSK a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody target-exclusive license to new intellectual property generated to the EFECT platform under this collaboration and a non-exclusive license to the Azymetric platform to research, develop and commercialize future licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$1.1 billion, including research, development and commercial milestone payments of up to \$110.0 million for each product. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low-single digits on net sales of products, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks patent coverage on products or certain joint patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage or certain joint patent coverage on products, royalty rates will be reduced. No development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date. We retained the right to develop up to four products, free of royalties, using the new intellectual property generated in this collaboration, and after a period of time, to grant licenses to such intellectual property for development of additional products by third-parties.

Under the collaboration and license agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with GSK to generate new Fc-engineered antibodies. Each party will bear its own costs for the responsibilities assigned to it during the research period. After the conclusion of the research period, each party will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of its own respective products. During the term of the agreement and solely based on the outcome of the research collaboration, we have granted GSK exclusive rights to develop and commercialize monospecific antibodies against targets nominated by GSK. If GSK develops bispecific antibodies using its own platform approaches, we have granted GSK exclusive rights to develop and commercialize such antibodies comprising of specific antibody sequence pairs.

- *Second Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with GSK*

In April 2016, we entered into a licensing agreement with GSK to research, develop and commercialize up to six bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. This may include bispecific antibodies incorporating new engineered Fc regions generated under the 2015 GSK agreement outlined in the preceding section. Under the terms of this agreement, we granted GSK a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody sequence pair-specific exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$908.0 million, including an upfront payment as a technology access fee (\$6.0 million received in 2016), research milestone payments of up to \$30.0 million, development milestone payments of up to \$152.0 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$720.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks patent coverage on products, or (ii) for ten years beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates may be potentially reduced. No research, development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date. GSK has the right, prior to the first dosing of a patient in a Phase 3 clinical trial for a product, to buy down the royalty payable on such product by only 1% with a payment of \$10.0 million.

Under the agreement, GSK will bear all responsibility and all costs associated with research, development and commercialization of products generated using the Azymetric platform.

- *Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Daiichi*

In September 2016, we entered into a collaboration and cross-license agreement with Daiichi to research, develop and commercialize one bispecific antibody generated through the use of the Azymetric and EFECT platforms. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Daiichi a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody sequence pair-specific exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$149.9 million, including an upfront payment as a technology

## [Table of Contents](#)

access fee of \$2.0 million (received in 2016), research and development milestone payments and a commercial option payment totaling up to \$67.9 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$80.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties ranging from the low single digits up to 10% on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for ten years beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. No research, development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date. We also gained non-exclusive rights to develop and commercialize up to three products using Daiichi's proprietary immune-oncology antibodies, with royalties in the low single digits to be paid to Daiichi on sales of such products.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Daiichi to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric platform. Daiichi is responsible for our internal and external research costs in support of this collaboration during the research program term. After the research program term, Daiichi will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products. Under the non-exclusive immuno-oncology antibody license to Zymeworks, we are solely responsible for all research, development and commercialization of the resulting products.

For additional information on our strategic partnerships, see "Business—Strategic Partnerships."

## **Financial Operations Overview**

### ***Revenue***

Our revenue consists of collaboration revenue, including amounts recognized relating to upfront non-refundable payments for licenses or options to obtain future licenses, research and development funding and milestone payments earned under collaboration and license agreements with strategic partners. We expect these and other strategic partnerships to be our primary source of revenue for the foreseeable future.

### ***Research and Development Expense***

Research and development expenses consist of expenses incurred in performing research and development activities. These expenses include conducting research experiments, preclinical studies, and other indirect expenses in support of advancing our product candidates and therapeutic platforms. The following items are included in research and development expenses:

- employee-related expenses such as salaries and benefits;
- employee-related overhead expenses such as facilities and other allocated items;
- share-based compensation expense to employees and consultants engaged in research and development activities;
- depreciation of laboratory equipment, computers and leasehold improvements;
- fees paid to consultants, subcontractors, CROs, and other third party vendors for work performed under our clinical trials and preclinical studies, including but not limited to laboratory work and analysis, database management, statistical analysis, and other items; and
- amounts paid to vendors and suppliers for laboratory supplies.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The following table shows a summary of our research and development expenses for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015 and the nine months ended September 30, 2015 and 2016.

	Year Ended December 31,		Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2014	2015	2015	2016
	(dollars in millions)			
<b>Research and development expense</b>				
ZW25	\$ 2.8	\$ 5.2	\$ 3.3	\$ 5.1
ZW33	1.5	5.3	3.3	8.1
Therapeutic platforms	4.0	5.9	4.2	5.7
Other research activities	4.3	8.3	5.6	9.0
<b>Total research and development expense</b>	<u>\$ 12.6</u>	<u>\$ 24.7</u>	<u>\$ 16.4</u>	<u>\$ 27.9</u>
Less: Government credits	2.1	0.3	—	—
	<u>\$ 10.5</u>	<u>\$ 24.4</u>	<u>\$ 16.4</u>	<u>\$ 27.9</u>

It is difficult to determine with certainty the duration and completion costs of our current or future clinical trials and preclinical programs of our product candidates, or if, when or to what extent we will generate revenue from the commercialization and sale of any of our product candidates that obtain regulatory approval. We may never succeed in achieving regulatory approval for any of our product candidates. The duration, costs and timing of clinical trials and development of our product candidates will depend on a variety of factors, including the uncertainties of clinical trials and preclinical studies, uncertainties in clinical trial enrollment rate and significant and changing government regulation. In addition, the probability of success for each product candidate will depend on numerous factors, including competition, manufacturing capability and commercial viability. We will determine which programs to pursue and how much to fund each program in response to the scientific and clinical success of each product candidate, as well as an assessment of each product candidate's commercial potential.

For the nine months ended September 30, 2016, our research and development expenditures increased by \$11.5 million, compared to the same period in 2015. This was primarily due to increased clinical manufacturing activities and Investigational New Drug Application, or IND-enabling studies associated with ZW25 and ZW33, as well as increased activities associated with our Azymetric platform and early-stage research and discovery programs recorded in other research activities. We expect to incur additional expenses as we advance our product candidates, pursue regulatory approval, identify future product candidates and advance our therapeutic platforms.

### **General and Administrative Expense**

General and administrative expenses consist of salaries and related benefit costs for employees in our executive, finance, intellectual property, business development, human resources and other support functions, legal and professional fees, and travel and general office expenses. We expect to incur additional expenses related to supporting our ongoing research and development activities, operating as a public company and other administrative expenses.

### **Other Income (Expense)**

Other income (expense) consists of interest and accretion expenses, change in fair value of warrant liabilities, foreign exchange gain (loss) and income (expense) from investments.

### **Critical Accounting Policies and Significant Judgments and Estimates**

Our management's discussion and analysis of financial conditions and results of operations is based on our consolidated financial statements, which have been prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP. The preparation of

## [Table of Contents](#)

these consolidated financial statements requires us to make estimates, judgments and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities as of the date of the balance sheets and the reported amount of the revenue and expenses recorded during the reporting period. We base our estimates on historical experience and on various other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable. We review and evaluate these estimates on an ongoing basis. These assumptions and estimates form the basis for making judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities and amounts that have been recorded as revenue and expenses. Actual results and experiences may differ from these estimates. The results of any material revisions would be reflected in the consolidated financial statements prospectively from the date of the change in estimate.

While a summary of significant accounting policies has been included in note 2 of our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus, we believe that the following accounting policies are the most critical to assist you in fully understanding and evaluating our financial results and any affect the estimates and judgments we used in preparing our consolidated financial statements. There have been no material changes to our critical accounting policies during the nine months ended September 30, 2016 with the exception of the change in our functional currency as described below.

### ***Functional Currency***

Prior to January 1, 2016, our functional currency was the Canadian dollar.

We reassessed our functional currency and determined that, as at January 1, 2016, our functional currency changed from the Canadian dollar to the U.S. dollar based on management's analysis of the changes in the primary economic environment in which we operate. The change in functional currency is accounted for prospectively from January 1, 2016 and prior year financial statements have not been restated for the change in functional currency.

For periods prior to January 1, 2016, the effects of exchange rate fluctuations on translating foreign currency monetary assets and liabilities into Canadian dollars were included in the statement of operations and comprehensive loss as foreign exchange gain/loss. Revenue and expense transactions were translated into the U.S. dollar reporting currency at the balance sheet date at average exchange rates during the period, and assets and liabilities were translated at end of period exchange rates, except for equity transactions, which were translated at historical exchange rates. Translation gains and losses from the application of the U.S. dollar as the reporting currency while the Canadian dollar was the functional currency are included as part of the cumulative foreign currency translation adjustment, which is reported as a component of shareholders' equity under accumulated other comprehensive loss.

For periods commencing January 1, 2016, monetary assets and liabilities denominated in foreign currencies are translated into U.S. dollars using exchange rates in effect at the balance sheet date. Opening balances related to non-monetary assets and liabilities are based on prior period translated amounts, and non-monetary assets and non-monetary liabilities incurred after January 1, 2016 are translated at the approximate exchange rate prevailing at the date of the transaction. Revenue and expense transactions are translated at the approximate exchange rate in effect at the time of the transaction. Foreign exchange gains and losses are included in the statement of operations and comprehensive loss as foreign exchange gain (loss).

The functional currency of Zymeworks Biopharmaceuticals Inc. and Zymeworks Biochemistry Inc. is also the U.S. dollar.

### ***Business Combination and Goodwill***

Acquisitions of businesses are accounted for using the acquisition method. The consideration of a business combination is measured, at the date of the exchange, as the aggregate of the fair value of assets given, liabilities

## [Table of Contents](#)

incurred or assumed and equity instruments issued by us to the former owners of the acquiree in exchange for control of the acquiree. Acquisition related costs incurred for the business combination are expensed. The acquiree's identifiable assets, liabilities and contingent liabilities are recognized at their fair value at the acquisition date. We estimate the fair value of acquired IPR&D using the cost approach. The cost approach uses estimated total research costs incurred to date in order to recreate the asset, estimated cost multiples from comparable companies and expected investor return rates.

Goodwill arising on acquisition is recognized as an asset and initially measured at cost, being the excess of the consideration of the acquisition over our interest in the fair value of the net identifiable assets, liabilities and contingent liabilities recognized. If our interest in the fair value of the acquiree's net identifiable assets, liabilities and contingent liabilities exceeds the cost of the acquisition, the excess is recognized in earnings or loss immediately. Goodwill will be evaluated for impairment on an annual basis or more frequently if an indicator of impairment is present. Goodwill is subject to a two-step impairment test on an annual basis. The first step compares the fair value of the reporting unit to its carrying amount, which includes the goodwill. When the fair value of a reporting unit exceeds its carrying amount, goodwill of the reporting unit is considered not to be impaired, and the second step of the impairment test is unnecessary. If the carrying amount exceeds the implied fair value of the reporting unit, the second step measures the amount of the impairment loss. If the carrying amount exceeds the fair value of the reporting unit, an impairment loss is recognized equal to that excess.

### ***In-Process Research and Development Intangible Asset***

The IPR&D arose from the Kairos acquisition on March 18, 2016. The Kairos ADC platform technology (currently known as "ZymeLink") that we acquired as part of Kairos acquisition constitutes the most significant part of the IPR&D. The total amount assigned to Kairos ADC platform technology was \$17,628 in our consolidated financial statements as of September 30, 2016.

ZymeLink comprises multiple potent cancer cell-killing payloads and the linker technology used to couple these payloads to tumor-targeting antibodies or proteins. This platform can be used in conjunction with our other therapeutic platforms to increase safety and efficacy as compared to existing ADC technologies and broaden the therapeutic window. Currently, ZymeLink is being applied to a number of discovery programs at the preclinical stage.

Kairos is at an early stage of development and a detailed and reliable financial forecast is not available, whereas historical costs incurred by Kairos were known and the total platform development costs to date could be reasonably estimated. Furthermore, guideline licensing transactions data for companies with similar technology were available. Accordingly, the fair value of Kairos ADC platform technology has been estimated using the cost approach. The cost approach estimates the total value of the asset by reference to costs that would have been incurred in order to recreate the asset. Within the cost approach, the combination of following valuation methods were used: comparable public company cost multiple approach and expected investor return approach. The primary inputs and assumptions that were used for the calculation were:

- estimated cost multiple, which was determined based on the average cost multiples of entities comparable to Kairos in terms of the therapeutic area that they operate and the status for their lead product candidates;
- estimated non-risk adjusted venture capital returns that were selected from independent resources; and
- estimated in-kind support provided by Kairos' parent company during the period prior to acquisition.

IPR&D is classified as indefinite-lived and is not amortized. IPR&D becomes definite-lived upon the completion or abandonment of the associated research and development efforts. Intangible assets with finite useful lives are amortized on a straight-line basis over their estimated useful lives, which are the respective patent terms. Amortization begins when intangible assets with finite lives are put into use. If there is a major event indicating that the carrying value of intangible assets may be impaired, then management will perform an impairment test and if the carrying value exceeds the recoverable value, based on discounted future cash flows, then such assets are written down to their fair values.

The costs incurred in establishing and maintaining patents for intellectual property developed internally are expensed in the period incurred.

### ***Revenue Recognition***

We enter into collaboration and license agreements with strategic partners for the development of antibody-based therapeutics for cancer, autoimmune and inflammatory indications. The terms of the agreements may include non-refundable signing and licensing fees, milestone payments and royalties on any product sales derived from strategic partnerships. These multiple element arrangements are analyzed to determine whether the deliverables can be separated or whether they must be accounted for as a single unit of accounting. License fees are recognized as revenue when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, the fee is fixed or determinable, delivery or performance has substantially completed and collection is reasonably assured.

We recognize upfront license payments as revenue upon delivery of the license only if the license has stand-alone value to the customer and if the agreement includes a general right of return, the delivery or performance of undelivered items is considered probable and within our control. The payment is generally allocated to the separate units of accounting based on their relative selling prices. The selling price of each deliverable is determined using vendor specific objective evidence of selling prices, if it exists; otherwise, third party evidence of selling prices. If neither vendor specific objective evidence nor third-party evidence exists, we use our best estimate of the selling price for each deliverable. The payment allocated is limited to the amount that is not contingent on the delivery of additional items or fulfillment of other performance conditions.

Whenever we determine that an arrangement should be accounted for as a single unit of accounting, it must determine the period over which the performance obligations will be performed and over which revenue is recognized. If we cannot reasonably estimate the timing and the level of effort to complete its performance obligations under the arrangement, then revenue under the arrangement is recognized on a straight-line basis over the period we are expected to complete its performance obligations.

We recognize research support payments as gross revenue upon the performance of activities, which are eligible for research support payments from its commercial partners, in accordance with the respective licensing and collaboration agreements.

We evaluate milestone payments on an individual basis and recognize revenue from non-refundable milestone payments when the earnings process is complete and the payment is reasonably assured. Non-refundable milestone payments related to arrangements under which we have continuing performance obligations are recognized as revenue upon achievement of the associated milestone, provided that (i) the milestone event is substantive and its achievability was not reasonably assured at the inception of the agreement and (ii) the amount of the milestone payment is reasonable in relation to the effort expended or the risk associated with the milestone event. Any amounts received under agreements in advance of performance, if deemed substantive, are recorded as deferred revenue and recognized as revenue as we complete our performance obligations. A milestone event is considered substantive if (i) the milestone is commensurate with either (a) our performance to achieve the milestone or (b) the enhancement of the value of the delivered item(s) as a result of a specific outcome resulting from our performance to achieve the milestone; (ii) it relates solely to past performance; and (iii) it is reasonable relative to all of the deliverables and payment terms (including other potential milestone consideration) within the arrangement. If any portion of the milestone payment does not relate to our performance, does not relate solely to past performance or is refundable or adjustable based on future performance, the milestone is not considered to be substantive.

Milestone payments are not bifurcated into substantive and non-substantive components. Payments related to the achievement of non-substantive milestones are deferred and recognized over our remaining performance period.

Royalty revenue will be recognized upon the sale of the related products provided we have no remaining performance obligations under the arrangement.

### ***Research and Development Expense and Related Accrued Expenses***

As part of the process of preparing our consolidated financial statements, we may be required to estimate accrued expenses. In order to obtain reasonable estimates, we review open contracts and purchase orders. In addition, we communicate with applicable personnel in order to identify services that have been performed, but for which we have not yet been invoiced. In most cases, our vendors provide us with monthly invoices in arrears for services performed. We confirm our estimates with these vendors and make adjustments as needed. The following are examples of our accrued expenses:

- fees paid to CROs for services performed on preclinical studies; and
- fees paid for professional services.

### ***Income Taxes***

We account for income taxes using ASC 740 Income Taxes, which is an asset and liability approach that requires the recognition of deferred tax assets and liabilities for the expected future tax consequences of events that have been recognized in our financial statements or tax returns. In estimating future tax consequences, ASC 740 generally considers all expected future events other than enactments of and changes in the tax law or rates. The measurement of deferred tax assets is reduced, if necessary, by the extent of the valuation allowance. ASC 740 clarifies the criteria that must be met prior to recognition of the financial statement benefit of a position taken in a tax return. ASC 740 provides a benefit recognition model with a two-step approach consisting of a “more-likely-than-not” recognition criteria, and a measurement attribute that measures a given tax position as the largest amount of tax benefits that are more than 50% likely of being realized upon ultimate settlement. ASC 740 also requires the recognition of liabilities created by differences between tax positions taken in a tax return and amounts recognized in the financial statements.

### ***Share-based Compensation***

We recognize share-based compensation expense on share awards granted to employees and members of the board of directors based on their estimated grant date fair value using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. This Black-Scholes option pricing model uses various inputs to measure fair value, including estimated fair value of our underlying common share at the grant date, expected term, estimated volatility, risk-free interest rate and expected dividend yields of our common shares. We recognize share-based compensation expense, net of estimated forfeitures, in the consolidated statements of loss and comprehensive loss on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period. We apply an estimated forfeiture rate derived from historical employee termination behavior. If the actual number of forfeitures differs from those estimated by management, adjustments to compensation expense may be required in future periods.

Stock options granted to individual service providers who are not employees is measured on the date of performance using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model and the awards are periodically remeasured as the underlying options vest. The fair value of the share-based awards is amortized over the vesting period.

In the absence of a public trading market for our common shares, on each grant date, we develop an estimate of the fair value of our common shares in order to determine an exercise price for the option grants. We engaged an independent third-party valuation firm to assist our board of directors in determining an estimated fair value of the common shares underlying our equity awards in accordance with the guidance provided in the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants Practice Guide, Valuation of Privately-Held-Company Equity Securities Issued as Compensation (“The Practice Guide”). Findings of the independent third-party valuation firm are discussed with management and the audit committee of the board in regards to the operation of the business, key assumptions, risks and other factors. All options to purchase our common shares have been granted with an exercise price per share no less than the estimated fair value per common share underlying those options on the date of grant, based on the information known to us on the date of grant.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Practice Guide identifies various available methods for allocating enterprise value across classes and series of common shares to determine the estimated fair value of common shares at each valuation date. In determining an estimated fair value for our common shares, we used the following methods:

- Probability-Weighted Expected Return Method. The probability-weighted expected return method (“PWERM”) is a scenario-based analysis that estimates value per share based on the probability-weighted present value of expected future investment returns, considering each of the possible outcomes available to us, as well as the economic and control rights of each share class.
- Option Pricing Method. Under the option pricing method (“OPM”) shares are valued by creating a series of call options with exercise prices based on the liquidation preferences and conversion terms of each equity class. The estimated fair values of the preferred shares and common shares are inferred by analyzing these options. Given the absence of a public trading market for our common shares, our board of directors exercised reasonable judgment and considered a number of objective and subjective factors to determine the best estimate of the fair value of our common shares, including:
  - our stage of development;
  - the status of research and development efforts;
  - the status of our strategic and collaboration transactions;
  - the rights, preferences and privileges of our preferred shares relative to those of our common shares;
  - our operating results and financial condition, including our levels of available capital resources;
  - equity market conditions affecting comparable public companies;
  - general U.S. market conditions; and
  - the lack of marketability of our common shares.

For valuations after the completion of our initial public offering, the fair value of each share of underlying common shares will be based on the closing public trading price of our common shares on the date of grant.

The following table illustrates our stock option grant information from January 1, 2014, including the estimated fair value of our common shares on the date of grant.

<u>Grant Date</u>	<u>Number of Options Granted</u>	<u>Option Exercise Price in C\$(1)</u>	<u>Option Exercise Price in \$(2)</u>	<u>Estimated Fair Value of Common Shares in C\$</u>	<u>Estimated Fair Value of Common Shares in \$(2)</u>
January 1, 2014	284,000	4.86	3.62	4.86	3.62
April 1, 2014	30,000	4.86	3.62	4.86	3.62
July 1, 2014	20,000	4.86	3.62	4.86	3.62
October 1, 2014	60,000	4.86	3.62	4.86	3.62
January 1, 2015	742,000	6.05	4.51	6.05	4.51
April 1, 2015	75,000	6.05	4.51	6.05	4.51
July 1, 2015	42,500	6.05	4.51	6.05	4.51
October 1, 2015	50,000	6.05	4.51	6.05	4.51
January 1, 2016	45,000	5.07	3.78	5.07	3.78
January 29, 2016	1,540,000	5.07	3.78	5.07	3.78
February 29, 2016	165,000	5.07	3.78	5.07	3.78
November 9, 2016	595,855	8.69	6.47	8.69	6.47
January 6, 2017	22,000	9.49	7.07	9.49	7.07
February 2, 2017	440,500	9.47	7.05	9.47	7.05
February 3, 2017	598,117	9.47	7.05	9.47	7.05
February 6, 2017	47,500	9.47	7.05	9.47	7.05

## [Table of Contents](#)

- (1) Due to the absence of a public market for our common shares to date, the exercise price per share was the estimated fair value of common shares and represented the determination by our board of directors of the fair value of our common shares as of the date of each grant, taking into consideration various objective and subjective factors, as discussed more fully herein.
- (2) Canadian dollar amounts are converted to U.S. dollars based on the historical Canadian to U.S. noon rate of exchange as at December 31, 2016. For further information, see "Exchange Rate Data."

Based on an assumed offering price of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per share, the midpoint of the estimated initial public offering price set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, the aggregate intrinsic value of options outstanding as of September 30, 2016 was \$ \_\_\_\_\_ million, of which \$ \_\_\_\_\_ million related to vested options and \$ \_\_\_\_\_ million related to unvested options.

In determining the exercise prices of the options set forth in the table above granted from January 1, 2014 through November 9, 2016, our board of directors considered the most recent valuations of our common shares, and based its determination in part on the analyses summarized below. On October 17, 2016, an independent third-party valuation was prepared to calculate the liability for our outstanding vested stock awards as of September 30, 2016. An independent third-party valuation was also prepared as of November 8, 2016 to assist our board of directors in determining the exercise price of options which were issued on November 9, 2016.

The key assumptions from each of our third-party valuations are detailed below:

<u>Third-Party Valuation Date</u>	<u>Per share Estimated Fair Value of Common Shares(C\$)</u>	<u>Per share Estimated Fair Value of Common Shares(\$) (1)</u>	<u>Volatility</u>	<u>Dividend Yield</u>	<u>Risk Free Rate</u>	<u>Discount for lack of marketability</u>
31-Dec-13	4.86	3.62	55%	0%	0.78%	35%
31-Dec-14	6.05	4.51	55%	0%	1.10%	35%
31-Mar-15	6.05	4.51	55%	0%	0.89%	35%
30-Jun-15	6.05	4.51	55%	0%	1.10%	35%
30-Sep-15	6.05	4.51	55%	0%	0.92%	35%
31-Dec-15	5.07	3.78	55%	0%	1.22%	15% - 30%
31-Mar-16	6.89	5.13	65%	0%	1.00%	15% - 30%
30-Jun-16	7.37	5.49	65%	0%	0.71%	15% - 30%
08-Nov-16	8.69	6.47	65%	0%	0.99%	15% - 30%
31-Dec-16	9.49	7.07	65%	0%	1.47%	12.5% - 30%
31-Jan-17	9.47	7.05	65%	0%	1.48%	10.0% - 30%

- (1) Canadian dollar amounts have been converted to U.S. dollars based on the historical Canadian to U.S. noon rate of exchange as at December 31, 2016. For further information, see "Exchange Rate Data."

### *Stock Option Grants from January 2014 to October 2014*

Our board of directors granted options to purchase common shares on January 1, 2014, April 1, 2014, July 1, 2014 and October 1, 2014, with each option having an exercise price of C\$4.86 per share, (or \$3.62 per share, as converted). In establishing this exercise price, our board of directors relied in part on independent third-party valuation as of December 31, 2013 and considered input from management, as well as the objective and subjective factors outlined above. At the grant date, our board of directors considered the events and circumstances most likely to affect the value of our common shares that occurred between December 31, 2013 and the grant dates and whether those events and circumstances were part of the assumptions used in the December 2013 valuation. Our board of directors determined that there were no other events and circumstances that occurred between December 31, 2013 and October 1, 2014 that were indicative of a significant change in the fair value of our common shares. Based on these factors, our board of directors determined that the fair value of our common shares at January 1, 2014, April 1, 2014, July 1, 2014 and October 1, 2014 was C\$4.86 per share (or \$3.62 per share, as converted).

*Stock Option Grants from January 2015 to October 2015*

Our board of directors granted options to purchase common shares on January 1, 2015, with each option having an exercise price of C\$6.05 per share, (or \$4.51 per share, as converted). In establishing this exercise price, our board of directors relied in part on independent third-party valuations as of December 31, 2014 and March 31, 2015 and considered input from management, as well as the objective and subjective factors outlined above. At the grant dates, our board of directors considered the events and circumstances most likely to affect the value of our common shares that occurred between the valuation dates and the grant dates and whether those events and circumstances were part of the assumptions used in the December 31, 2014, March 31, 2015, June 30, 2015 and September 30, 2015 valuations. Our board of directors determined that there were no other events and circumstances that occurred between valuation dates and grant dates that were indicative of a significant change in the fair value of our common shares. Based on these factors, our board of directors determined that the fair value of our common shares at January 1, 2015, April 1, 2015, July 1, 2015 and October 1, 2015 was C\$6.05 per share (or \$4.51 per share, as converted).

*Stock Option Grants from January 2016 to February 2016*

Our board of directors granted options to purchase common shares on January 1, 2016, January 29, 2016 and February 29, 2016, with each option having an exercise price of C\$5.07 per share (or \$3.78 per share, as converted). In establishing this exercise price, our board of directors relied in part on independent third-party valuations as of December 31, 2015 and considered input from management, as well as the objective and subjective factors outlined above. At the grant dates, our board of directors considered the events and circumstances most likely to affect the value of our common shares that occurred between the valuation dates and the grant dates and whether those events and circumstances were part of the assumptions used in the December 31, 2015 valuation. Our board of directors determined that there were no other events and circumstances that occurred between valuation dates and grant dates that were indicative of a significant change in the fair value of our common shares. Based on these factors, our board of directors determined that the fair value of our common shares at January 1, 2016, January 29, 2016 and February 29, 2016 was C\$5.07 per share (or \$3.78 per share, as converted).

*Stock Option Grants in November 2016*

Our board of directors granted options to purchase common shares on November 9, 2016 with each option having an exercise price of C\$8.69 per share (or \$6.47 per share, as converted). In establishing this exercise price, our board of directors relied in part on independent third-party valuations as of November 8, 2016 (valuation date) and considered input from management, as well as the objective and subjective factors outlined above. At the grant date, our board of directors considered the events and circumstances most likely to affect the value of our common shares that occurred between the valuation dates and the grant dates and whether those events and circumstances were part of the assumptions used in the November 8, 2016 valuation. Our board of directors determined that there were no other events and circumstances that occurred between valuation dates and grant dates that were indicative of a significant change in the fair value of our common shares. Based on these factors, our board of directors determined that the fair value of our common shares at November 9, 2016 was C\$8.69 per share (or \$6.47 per share, as converted).

*Stock Option Grants in January 2017*

Our board of directors granted options to purchase common shares on January 6, 2017 with each option having an exercise price of C\$9.49 per share (or \$7.07 per share, as converted). In establishing this exercise price, our board of directors relied in part on independent third-party valuations as of December 31, 2016 (valuation date) and considered input from management, as well as the objective and subjective factors outlined above. At the grant date, our board of directors considered the events and circumstances most likely to affect the value of our common shares that occurred between the valuation dates and the grant dates and whether those events and circumstances were part of the assumptions used in the December 31, 2016 valuation. Our board of directors determined that there were no other events and circumstances that occurred between valuation dates and

## [Table of Contents](#)

grant dates that were indicative of a significant change in the fair value of our common shares. Based on these factors, our board of directors determined that the fair value of our common shares at January 6, 2017 was C\$9.49 per share (or \$7.07 per share, as converted).

### *Stock Option Grants in February 2017*

Our board of directors granted options to purchase common shares on February 2, 2017, February 3, 2017 and February 6, 2017 with each option having an exercise price of C\$9.47 per share (or \$7.05 per share, as converted). In establishing this exercise price, our board of directors relied in part on an independent third-party valuation as of January 31, 2017 (valuation date) and considered input from management, as well as the objective and subjective factors outlined above. At the grant date, our board of directors considered the events and circumstances most likely to affect the value of our common shares that occurred between the valuation dates and the grant dates and whether those events and circumstances were part of the assumptions used in the January 31, 2017 valuation. Our board of directors determined that there were no other events and circumstances that occurred between valuation dates and grant dates that were indicative of a significant change in the fair value of our common shares. Based on these factors, our board of directors determined that the fair value of our common shares at February 2, 2017, February 3, 2017 and February 6, 2017 was C\$9.47 per share (or \$7.05 per share, as converted).

### **JOBS Act**

In April 2012, the JOBS Act was enacted. Section 107 of the JOBS Act provides that an “emerging growth company” can take advantage of the extended transition period provided in Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act, for complying with new or revised accounting standards. Thus, an emerging growth company can delay the adoption of certain accounting standards until those standards would otherwise apply to private companies. We have irrevocably elected not to avail ourselves of this extended transition period and, as a result, we will adopt new or revised accounting standards on the relevant dates on which adoption of such standards is required for other public companies.

We continue the process of evaluating the benefits of relying on other exemptions and reduced reporting requirements under the JOBS Act. Subject to certain conditions, as an emerging growth company, we may rely on certain of these exemptions, including without limitation, (i) providing an auditor’s attestation report on our system of internal controls over financial reporting pursuant to Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and (ii) complying with any requirement that may be adopted by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board regarding mandatory audit firm rotation or a supplement to the auditor’s report providing additional information about the audit and the financial statements, known as the auditor discussion and analysis. We will remain an emerging growth company until the earlier of (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenue of \$1 billion or more; (ii) the last day of the fiscal year following the fifth anniversary of the date of the completion of our IPO; (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in nonconvertible debt during the previous three years; or (iv) the date on which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer under the rules of the SEC.

## **Results of Operations for the Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015 and 2016**

### ***Research and Development Revenue***

The following represents a comparison of our research and development revenue for the nine months ended September 30, 2015 and 2016:

	<b>Nine Months Ended</b>		<b>Increase/(Decrease)</b>	
	<b>September 30,</b>			
	<b>2015</b>	<b>2016</b>		
	<b>(unaudited)</b>			
	<b>(dollars in millions)</b>			
Revenue from research and collaborations	\$ 8.2	\$ 8.8	\$ 0.6	7%

## [Table of Contents](#)

The increase in collaboration revenue of \$0.6 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 compared to the same period in 2015 is primarily due to the \$2.0 million and \$6.0 million technology access fees received from Daiichi and GSK, respectively in 2016 compared to the \$7.5 million upfront payment from Celgene, which was amortized into revenue in 2015.

### **Research and Development Expense**

The following represents a comparison of our research and development expense for the nine months ended September 30, 2015 and 2016:

	Nine Months Ended September 30,		Increase/(Decrease)	
	2015	2016		
	(unaudited)			
	(dollars in millions)			
<b>Research and development expense</b>				
ZW25	\$ 3.3	\$ 5.1	\$ 1.8	55%
ZW33	3.3	8.1	4.8	145%
Therapeutic platforms	4.2	5.7	1.5	36%
Other research activities	5.6	9.0	3.4	61%
<b>Total research and development expense</b>	<b>\$ 16.4</b>	<b>\$ 27.9</b>	<b>\$ 11.5</b>	<b>70%</b>

During the nine months ended September 30, 2016, our research and development expenditures increased by \$11.5 million, compared to the same period in 2015. This was primarily due to increased clinical manufacturing activities and IND-enabling studies associated with ZW25 and ZW33, as well as increased activities associated with our Azymetric platform and early-stage research and discovery programs recorded in other research activities.

### **General and Administrative Expense**

The following represents a comparison of our general and administrative expense for the nine months ended September 30, 2015 and 2016:

	Nine Months Ended September 30,		Increase/(Decrease)	
	2015	2016		
	(unaudited)			
	(dollars in millions)			
General and administrative expense	\$ 3.8	\$ 7.4	\$ 3.6	95%

General and administrative expense increased for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 by \$3.6 million, compared to the same period in 2015, primarily due to an increase in salaries expense and professional fees. The salaries increase was the result of new hires and higher share-based compensation expense. The increase in professional fees over the same period in 2015 was associated with consulting services related to functional currency change, lab and office buildout, and legal and human resources advisory services.

### **Other Income (Expenses)**

Other income for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 decreased by \$1.9 million primarily due to \$1.1 million increase in interest and accretion expenses, \$0.8 million of losses due to change in fair value of warrant liabilities and \$0.8 million of impairment on IPR&D that was partially offset by \$0.7 million increase in foreign exchange gain and a net gain of \$0.2 million from the previously held equity investment (Kairos).

**Results of Operations for the Years Ended December 31, 2014 and 2015**

**Research and Development Revenue**

The following represents a comparison of our research and development revenue for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015:

	Year Ended December 31,		Increase/(Decrease)	
	2014	2015		
	(dollars in millions)			
Revenue from research and collaborations	\$ 1.7	\$ 9.7	\$ 8.0	471%

The increase in collaboration revenue of \$8.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2015 compared to the same period in 2014 is primarily due to the amortization of deferred revenue related to the Celgene upfront payment recognized into revenue from January 1, 2015 to June 30, 2015. In addition, the increase relates to the milestone payment from Lilly and research support payments from Merck.

**Research and Development Expense**

The following represents a comparison of our research and development expense for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015:

	Year Ended December 31,		Increase/(Decrease)	
	2014	2015		
	(dollars in millions)			
<b>Research and development expense</b>				
ZW25	\$ 2.8	\$ 5.2	\$ 2.4	86%
ZW33	1.5	5.3	3.8	253%
Therapeutic platforms	4.0	5.9	1.9	48%
Other research activities	4.3	8.3	4.0	93%
<b>Total research and development expense</b>	\$ 12.6	\$ 24.7	\$ 12.1	96%
Less: Government credits	2.1	0.3	(1.8)	(86%)
<b>Total research and development expense, net</b>	\$ 10.5	\$ 24.4	\$ 13.9	132%

During the year ended December 31, 2015, our research and development increased by \$12.1 million, compared to the same period in 2014. This was primarily due to increased clinical manufacturing activities and IND-enabling studies associated with ZW25 and ZW33, increased activities associated with our Azymetric platform, as well as early-stage research and discovery programs recorded in other research activities.

Government credits, which consist of SR&ED, decreased by \$1.8 million in 2015. The SR&ED amount for the current year is calculated based on our preceding year taxable capital and preceding year total assets. The decrease was primarily due to the increase in our taxable capital and total assets amounts in 2014, which resulted in a lower credit in 2015. Furthermore, changes in the Quebec SR&ED structure resulted in certain research and development, or R&D, expenses being ineligible for R&D tax credits in Quebec.

**General and Administrative Expense**

The following represents a comparison of our general and administrative expense for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015:

	Year Ended December 31,		Increase/(Decrease)	
	2014	2015		
	(dollars in millions)			
General and administrative expense	\$ 3.9	\$ 5.2	\$ 1.3	33%

## Table of Contents

General and administrative expense increased for the year ended December 31, 2015 by \$1.3 million compared to 2014 primarily due to an increase in salaries expense, professional fees and facilities expenses. The salaries increase was the result of new hires made after the second quarter in 2014 as well as higher share-based compensation expense resulting from an increase in stock option grants in 2015 as compared to the same period in 2014. The increase in professional fees in 2015 was associated with the conversion of our financial statements to U.S. GAAP financial statements and other financial reporting requirements, as well as an increase in legal and advisory services. The increase in facilities expenses was due to higher office and rent expenses as a result of greater headcount and square footage.

### Other Income (Expenses)

Other expenses for the year ended December 31, 2015 decreased primarily due to the absence of accretion on convertible debentures issued to CTI Life Science Fund, L.P., or CTI, which were converted into common shares on June 16, 2014. Additionally, there was an increase in other income in 2015 due to higher interest income and foreign exchange gain compared to 2014. As a result, there was no accretion expense for the year ended December 31, 2015.

### Quarterly Results of Operations

The following selected historical consolidated statements of operations and comprehensive loss data for the quarters ended March 31, 2014 to September 30, 2016 have been derived from our unaudited consolidated financial statements and footnotes. The unaudited consolidated statements of loss and comprehensive loss for the nine month periods ended September 30, 2015 and 2016 are included elsewhere in this prospectus. The unaudited consolidated financial statements have been prepared on a basis consistent with our audited consolidated financial statements and, in the opinion of management, include all adjustments, consisting only of normal recurring adjustments, which management considers necessary for the fair presentation of the information for the unaudited periods. Historical results are not necessarily indicative of future results, and our interim period results are not necessarily indicative of results to be expected for a full year or any other interim period. The following data should be read in conjunction with the remainder of this "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" section and the consolidated financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus.

#### Consolidated Statement of Quarterly Loss:

	Q1 2014	Q2 2014	Q3 2014	Q4 2014	Q1 2015	Q2 2015	Q3 2015	Q4 2015	Q1 2016	Q2 2016	Q3 2016
	(dollars in thousands, except for share and per share amounts)										
Revenue	\$ 482	\$ 778	\$ 181	\$ 229	\$ 3,925	\$ 3,956	\$ 340	\$ 1,439	\$ 262	\$ 6,343	\$ 2,172
Operating expenses:											
Research and development (1)	2,462	3,125	2,862	4,173	4,118	7,141	5,157	8,238	7,916	10,223	9,759
Government grants and credits	—	—	—	(2,149)	—	—	—	(251)	—	—	—
General and administrative (1)	662	985	849	1,449	1,379	1,273	1,194	1,371	2,085	2,656	2,696
Total operating expenses	3,124	4,110	3,711	3,473	5,497	8,414	6,351	9,358	10,001	12,879	12,455
Loss from operations	(2,642)	(3,332)	(3,530)	(3,244)	(1,572)	(4,458)	(6,011)	(7,919)	(9,739)	(6,536)	(10,283)
Other income (expense)	(112)	(119)	16	21	682	(61)	199	4	1,620	(815)	(1,859)
Loss before income taxes	(2,754)	(3,451)	(3,514)	(3,223)	(890)	(4,519)	(5,812)	(7,915)	(8,119)	(7,351)	(12,142)
Income tax expense	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(34)	—	(72)	(255)
Deferred income tax benefit	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	5,407	—	—
Net loss	\$ (2,754)	\$ (3,451)	\$ (3,514)	\$ (3,223)	\$ (890)	\$ (4,519)	\$ (5,812)	\$ (7,949)	\$ (2,712)	\$ (7,423)	\$ (12,397)
Net loss per common share (basic and diluted)	\$ (0.20)	\$ (0.25)	\$ (0.25)	\$ (0.14)	\$ (0.03)	\$ (0.17)	\$ (0.22)	\$ (0.29)	\$ (0.10)	\$ (0.24)	\$ (0.40)
Weighted-average number of common shares (basic and diluted)	13,677,550	13,934,244	13,983,702	22,990,268	26,698,342	26,930,645	26,959,778	26,963,168	27,485,161	30,604,907	31,327,561

- (1) For each period presented, the Company has reclassified certain legal costs, which were previously included in research and development in error, to general and administrative expenses. There was no impact on total operating expenses, net loss, or net loss per common share for any period presented.

### **Liquidity and Capital Resources**

We have financed our operations primarily through private equity placements of our common shares, a private placement of preferred shares and most recently our credit facility. We entered into the Perceptive Facility on June 2, 2016 with the Perceptive Facility Lenders. Pursuant to the Credit Agreement, we are able to borrow up to an aggregate of \$15.0 million, consisting of Tranche A and Tranche B term loans for \$7.5 million each. The Tranche A term loan was made available to us immediately. We will be eligible for the Tranche B term loan when we have: (i) enrolled at least one patient in a Phase 1 clinical trial developing ZW25 for an indication targeting HER2 expressing tumors by June 2, 2017, which we achieved in September 2016; (ii) enrolled at least one patient in a Phase 1 clinical trial developing ZW33 for an indication targeting HER2 expressing tumors by August 2, 2017; and (iii) entered into a collaboration agreement with a publicly-traded pharmaceutical or biotechnology company with a market capitalization greater than \$10 billion that is reasonably expected to result in aggregate payments in excess of \$100 million, which we achieved in April 2016 by entering into a licensing and collaboration agreement with GSK. These milestones are outlined in greater detail in Section 6.02 of the Credit Agreement, which is filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part and which will be filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities and available on the system for electronic document analysis and retrieval, or SEDAR, at [www.sedar.com](http://www.sedar.com), under our profile.

Amounts borrowed under the facility can be repaid at any time, subject to certain penalty payments, prior to the June 2, 2020 maturity date, at which time all amounts borrowed will be due and payable. Amounts borrowed under the Tranche A or Tranche B term loans and subsequently repaid or prepaid may not be reborrowed. In addition, the terms of the Perceptive Facility require us to pay monthly interest payments up until June 2, 2018, after which monthly principal payments of \$225,000 will also commence. Advances under the Perceptive Facility bear interest at the rate of LIBOR plus 10% annually, with LIBOR to be a minimum of 1%. As of September 30, 2016, the applicable interest rate was 11%. On August 3, 2016, the warrant certificates were assigned to Perceptive Credit Holdings, LP, an affiliate of the Perceptive Facility Lenders.

We made customary affirmative and negative covenants in Credit Agreement. As of the date of this prospectus, we are in compliance with the terms and covenants of the Credit Agreement. In the event of a default, including, among other things, our failure to make any payment when due or our uncured default in the performance or observance of any term, covenant, condition or agreement we were required to perform, the lenders under the Perceptive Facility will be able to declare all obligations immediately due and payable. The Perceptive Facility was collateralized by substantially all of our assets, including our intellectual property but excluding specific intellectual property linked to our strategic partnerships and collaborations. Pursuant to the terms of the Credit Agreement, Perceptive was concurrently issued a warrant certificate that entitles Perceptive to purchase up to 704,081 of our Class A preferred shares at an exercise price of \$4.90 per share, with an expiry term of five years.

In addition, our operations have been funded through upfront fees, milestone payments, research support payments from our strategic partners and government grants and SR&ED credits. As of September 30, 2016, we had \$51.8 million in cash and cash equivalents and short-term investments.

In addition to our existing cash and cash equivalents, we expect to continue to receive additional reimbursements from our existing and future research collaborations for research and development services rendered and additional milestone payments. However, our ability to receive these milestone payments is dependent upon our ability to successfully complete specified research and development activities and therefore it is uncertain at this time. We also expect to increase our cash and cash equivalents with the estimated net proceeds of this offering and through future equity financings.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Cash Flows**

The following table represents a summary of our cash flows for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015 and the nine months ended September 30, 2015 and 2016:

	Year Ended December 31,		Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2014	2015	2015	2016
	(dollars in millions)			
<b>Net cash provided by (used in):</b>				
Operating activities	\$ (7.0)	\$ (22.2)	\$ (16.4)	\$ (26.6)
Investing activities	(0.3)	(9.2)	(5.0)	(22.7)
Financing activities	46.4	1.5	1.7	66.1
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	(1.3)	(5.4)	(4.3)	(0.4)
<b>Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents</b>	<u>\$ 37.8</u>	<u>\$ (35.3)</u>	<u>\$ (24.0)</u>	<u>\$ 16.4</u>

#### *Operating Activities*

Net cash used in operating activities reflects, among other things, amounts used to fund our preclinical activities, including clinical manufacturing and IND-enabling studies. The increase in net cash used in operating activities was primarily due to an increase in the activities associated with our ongoing research programs and increase in our professional fees resulting from the license and collaboration agreements.

#### *Investing Activities*

Net cash used in investing activities in 2016 primarily related to a \$20.0 million increase in short-term investments and \$2.7 million in purchases of lab equipment, computer hardware, and increases in leaseholds, whereas in 2015, short-term investments increased \$4.3 million and purchases of office equipment and software amounted to \$0.7 million. Net cash used in investing activities in the year ended December 31, 2015 primarily relates to short-term investments and our equity investment in Kairos. Net cash used in investing activities in the year ended December 31, 2014 is primarily related to the acquisition of computer hardware and software.

#### *Financing Activities*

Net cash provided by financing activities for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 includes \$58.9 million of net proceeds from the equity financing that was completed in January 2016 and \$7.0 million of net proceeds from the credit facility. For the nine months ended September 30, 2015, net proceeds from private financing was \$1.8 million. Net cash provided by financing activities in each of the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2014 includes net proceeds of \$1.8 million and \$46.4 million respectively, primarily from private equity placements.

#### *Funding Requirements*

We have not generated any revenue from product sales to date and do not expect to do so until such time as we obtain regulatory approval of and commercialize one or more of our product candidates. As we are currently in clinical and preclinical stages of development, it will be some time before we expect to achieve this and it is uncertain that we ever will. We expect that we will continue to increase our operating expenses in connection with ongoing clinical trials and preclinical activities and the development of product candidates in our pipeline. We expect to continue our strategic partnerships and will look for additional collaboration opportunities. We also expect to continue our efforts to pursue additional grants and refundable tax credits from the Canadian government in order to further our research and development. Although it is difficult to predict our funding requirements, based upon our current operating plan, we anticipate that our existing cash and cash equivalents



## **Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosure About Market Risk**

We are exposed to market risks in the ordinary course of our business. The market risk inherent in our financial instruments and in our financial position represents the potential loss arising from adverse changes in interest rates.

We had cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments of \$51.8 million and \$15.2 million at September 30, 2016 and December 31, 2015, respectively, consisting primarily of funds in cash and guaranteed investment certificates. The primary objective of our investment activities is to preserve principal and liquidity while maximizing income without significantly increasing risk. We do not enter into investments for trading or speculative purposes. Due to the short-term nature of our investment portfolio, we do not believe an immediate 10% increase in interest rates would have a material effect on the fair market value of our portfolio, and accordingly we do not expect our operating results or cash flows to be materially affected by a sudden change in market interest rates.

We undertake certain transactions in Canadian dollars and as such are subject to risk due to fluctuations in exchange rates. Canadian dollar denominated payables are paid at the converted rate as due. We do not use derivative instruments to hedge exposure to foreign exchange rate risk due to the low volume of transactions denominated in foreign currencies. At September 30, 2016, our net monetary assets denominated in Canadian dollars was \$20.1 million (C\$26.4 million).

Our operating results and financial position are reported in U.S. dollars in our financial statements. The fluctuation of the Canadian dollar in relation to the U.S. dollar will consequently have an impact upon our loss and may also affect the value of our assets and the amount of shareholders' equity.

We do not believe that inflation and changing prices had a significant impact on our results of operations for any periods presented herein.

## **Segment Reporting**

We view our operations and manage our business in one segment, which is the discovery, development and commercialization of next-generation biotherapeutics, initially focused on the treatment of cancer.

## BUSINESS

### Overview

Zymeworks is an innovative, clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company dedicated to the discovery, development and commercialization of next-generation multifunctional biotherapeutics, initially focused on the treatment of cancer. Our suite of complementary therapeutic platforms and our fully-integrated drug development engine provide the flexibility and compatibility to precisely engineer and develop highly-differentiated product candidates. These capabilities have resulted in multiple wholly-owned product candidates with the potential to drive superior outcomes in large underserved and unaddressed patient populations, as further described below.

Our lead product candidate, ZW25, is a novel bispecific (dual-targeting) antibody currently being evaluated in an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial, targeting two distinct domains of the human epidermal growth factor receptor 2, or HER2. This unique design enables ZW25 to address patient populations with all levels of HER2 expression, including those with low to intermediate HER2-expressing tumors, who are otherwise limited to chemotherapy or hormone therapy. Approximately 81% of patients with HER2-expressing breast cancer and 57% of patients with HER2-expressing gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer have tumors that express low to intermediate levels of HER2, making them ineligible for treatment with currently-approved HER2 targeted therapies, such as Herceptin and Perjeta, which generated combined sales of \$8.3 billion in 2015. In our Phase 1 clinical trial, ZW25 has demonstrated preliminary anti-tumor activity across multiple cancer types in patients who have progressed after several lines of treatment with HER2-targeted therapies. Our second product candidate, ZW33, capitalizes on the unique design of ZW25 and is a bispecific antibody-drug conjugate, or ADC, based on the same antibody framework as ZW25 but armed with a cytotoxic (potent cancer cell-killing) payload. We designed ZW33 to be a best-in-class HER2-targeting ADC for several indications characterized by HER2 expression for which we expect to initiate a Phase 1 clinical trial in the second half of 2017. We are also advancing a deep pipeline of preclinical product candidates and discovery-stage programs in immuno-oncology and other therapeutic areas. In addition to our wholly-owned pipeline, two of our therapeutic platforms have been further leveraged through multiple revenue-generating strategic partnerships with the following global pharmaceutical companies: Merck, Lilly, Celgene, GSK and Daiichi.

Our proprietary capabilities and technologies include four modular, complementary platforms that can be easily used in combination with each other and with existing approaches. This ability to layer technologies without comprising manufacturability enables us to engineer next-generation biotherapeutics with synergistic activity, which we believe will result in superior patient outcomes. Our core platforms include:

- **Azymetric**, our bispecific platform, which enables therapeutic antibodies to bind two distinct locations on a target, known as epitopes. This is achieved by tailoring multiple configurations of the antibody's Fab regions (locations on the antibody to which epitopes bind);
- **ZymeLink**, our ADC platform which comprises multiple cytotoxic payloads and the linker technology used to couple these payloads to tumor-targeting antibodies or proteins. It can be used in conjunction with our other therapeutic platforms to increase safety and efficacy as compared to existing ADC technologies;
- **EFFECT**, which enables finely-tuned modulation (both up and down) of immune cell recruitment and function; and
- **AlbuCORE**, our antibody-alternative platform, which augments the properties of naturally-occurring human serum albumin, or HSA, with multivalent (multi-targeted) binding to enable complex mechanisms of action that are not amenable to antibody-based approaches.

Our protein engineering expertise and proprietary structure-guided molecular modeling capabilities enable these therapeutic platforms. Together with our internal antibody discovery and generation technologies, we have established a fully-integrated drug development engine and toolkit that is capable of rapidly delivering a steady pipeline of next-generation product candidates in oncology and other therapeutic areas.

The field of oncology has benefited from major advances in the understanding of cancer biology over the past decade, which have led to the development of several successful biotherapeutics contributing to a global

## [Table of Contents](#)

market valued at greater than \$83.7 billion in 2015 and projected to grow to \$128.0 billion by 2020. Despite this scientific progress, cancer remains the second-leading cause of death worldwide, leaving a substantial opportunity for Zymeworks to develop and deliver more effective medicines. We believe our novel therapeutic platforms, and our ability to build better biologics, uniquely position us to take advantage of recent advancements in cancer biology and address these underserved patient populations.

Our lead product candidate, ZW25, is an Azymetric bispecific antibody currently being evaluated in an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial, which simultaneously binds two non-overlapping epitopes of HER2 resulting in dual HER2 signal blockade and increased tumor cell binding, immune cell recruitment and HER2 receptor downregulation as compared to existing HER2-targeted therapies. In our Phase I clinical trial, preliminary anti-tumor activity has been observed across multiple cancer types in patients who have progressed after several lines of treatment with HER2-targeted therapies. We plan to present detailed safety and preliminary anti-tumor activity data for ZW25 at the American Society of Clinical Oncology meeting in June 2017. For our second product candidate, ZW33, we expect to initiate a Phase 1 clinical trial in the second half of 2017. ZW33 is a bispecific anti-HER2 ADC that is based on the same antibody framework as ZW25, but is armed with a potent cytotoxic payload. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, has granted Orphan Drug Designation to both ZW25 and ZW33 for the treatment of ovarian cancer and to ZW25 for the treatment of gastric cancer. We will continue to focus on advancing multiple well-differentiated product candidates into clinical trials to build our pipeline portfolio as well as exploiting our protein engineering expertise to develop innovative therapeutic platforms.

Our unique combination of proprietary protein engineering capabilities and resulting therapeutic platform technologies was initially validated through strategic partnerships with Merck and Lilly, which focus on our Azymetric and EFECT therapeutic platforms. We subsequently entered into broader strategic partnerships with Celgene and GSK followed by a collaboration and cross-licensing agreement with Daiichi. During the initial partnerships with Merck, Lilly and GSK, the relationships were expanded to include either additional licenses or therapeutic platforms. These relationships provide our strategic partners with access to components of our proprietary Azymetric and EFECT therapeutic platforms for their development of a defined number of protein therapeutics on a predominantly non-target-exclusive basis. Importantly, these strategic partnerships have provided Zymeworks with non-dilutive funding as well as access to proprietary therapeutic assets, to increase our ability to rapidly advance our product candidates while maintaining worldwide commercial rights to our wholly-owned therapeutic pipeline.

The mission that unites everyone at Zymeworks is to create biotherapeutics that allow patients to return home to their loved ones, disease free. We intend to advance the development of disruptive therapeutic platforms and impactful biotherapeutics, especially in areas of unmet need. We believe we are well-positioned to deliver on our mission.

### **Overview of our Proprietary Therapeutic Platforms**

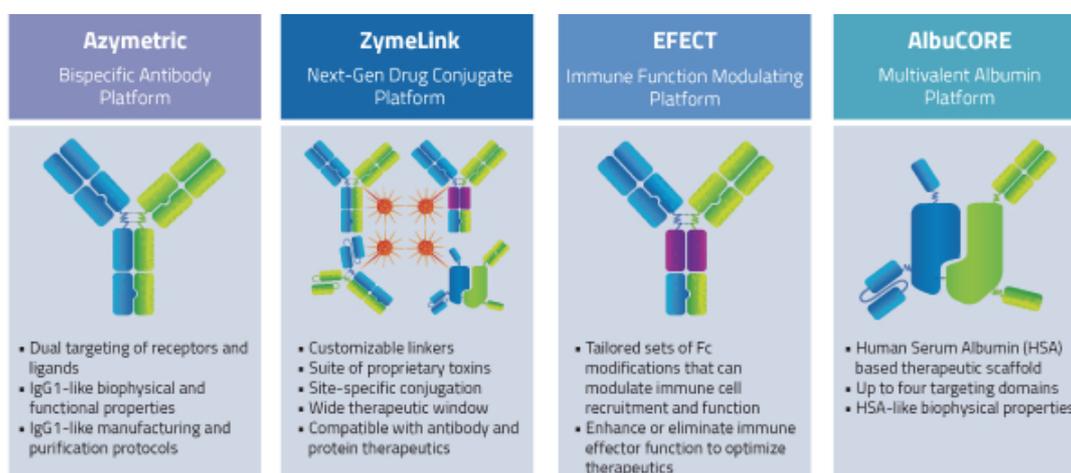
Our expertise in protein engineering has enabled the development of our proprietary therapeutic platforms, a complementary suite of highly-tailored biologics solutions. Our therapeutic platforms can be used alone, or in combination, with synergistic activity to develop multifunctional fit-for-purpose biotherapeutics with bispecific capabilities (Azymetric), cytotoxic payload delivery (ZymeLink), finely-tuned immune function modulation (EFECT) and multivalent targeting (AlbuCORE). The modular design and ease of use of our therapeutic platforms allow for the design and evaluation of multiple candidates with different formats to determine the optimal therapeutic combination early in development. We continue to leverage these therapeutic platforms to expand our pipeline of next-generation biotherapeutics that we believe could represent significant improvements to the standard of care in multiple cancer types.

We believe our in-house biologics design and engineering capabilities confer significant competitive advantages to our therapeutic platforms and are ultimately reflected in our programs. Some of these key advantages are:

- **Highly modular and customizable.** Our platforms can be combined in multiple ways and this capability has achieved synergistic results in preclinical studies. For example, our ZymeLink platform enables the

attachment of cytotoxic payloads to the candidates in any of our other platforms to create enhanced therapeutics, such as ADCs. These capabilities allow us to finely-tune characteristics such as tumor-killing potential, target specificity and immune cell engagement, and expand our ability to engineer superior drugs against multiple cancers.

- **Fit-for-purpose.** Our platforms can also be utilized to engineer biotherapeutics that are tailored for the particular target and disease state. For example, Azymetric bispecifics can be developed with multiple antigen binding formats to provide specific engagement geometry for a given target. This allows us to identify the targets and diseases that we wish to exploit and then engineer an optimized biotherapeutic to maximize therapeutic effect. We believe this method of deliberate drug development is a more effective and efficient mechanism for the creation of next-generation biotherapeutics.
- **Consistent with native (Antibody or Albumin) formats.** Our antibody platforms are differentiated from our competitors and have been engineered to retain the desirable biophysical characteristics of native antibody (Immunoglobulin, or IgG) formats such as a low risk of provoking an adverse anti-drug immune response, or immunogenicity, superior pharmacokinetics, the ability to beneficially recruit the immune system through effector function, and ease of manufacturing and purification. Likewise, our AlbuCORE platform builds on native HSA, and exploits the natural accumulation of albumin in tumors which we believe may lead to enhanced targeting of the tumor.
- **Readily scalable and transferable.** Our in-house biologics design and engineering expertise and infrastructure is positioned to create a steady stream of product candidates that are scalable, efficient to manufacture (by us, a partner or contract manufacturing organization), and naturally endorse favorable characteristics such as high production and purity levels. We believe this is a significant competitive advantage given the historical challenges faced by others in the field who manufacture complex biologics, such as bispecifics and ADCs.



### ***Azymetric Bispecific Antibody Platform***

The Azymetric platform consists of a library of proprietary amino acid substitutions that enable the transformation of monospecific antibodies into bispecific antibodies, which gives them the ability to simultaneously bind two non-overlapping epitopes. Azymetric bispecific technology enables the development of biotherapeutics with dual-targeting of receptors/ligands and simultaneous blockade of multiple signaling pathways, increasing tumor-specific targeting and efficacy while reducing toxicities and the potential for drug-resistance. In preclinical studies, the dual-targeting of Azymetric antibodies has demonstrated synergistic

## [Table of Contents](#)

activity relative to the application of an equivalent dose of the corresponding monospecific antibodies. Azymetric bispecifics can also be engineered to enhance internalization of the antibody into the tumor cell and consequently increase the delivery of cytotoxic payloads.

First-generation bispecific platforms significantly alter the structure of monoclonal antibodies or rely upon complex and proprietary manufacturing processes. Azymetric bispecifics, in contrast, retain the desirable drug-like qualities of monoclonal antibodies, including long half-life, stability and low immunogenic potential, which increases their probability of success. Azymetric bispecifics are also compatible with standard manufacturing processes with high production yields and purity, which accelerates manufacturing timelines and reduces costs.

### ***ZymeLink Conjugation Platform and Cytotoxins***

The ZymeLink conjugation platform is a suite of novel site-specific protein coupling technologies and customizable cleavable linkers that allow for the delivery of our proprietary cytotoxic payloads, which can be applied to all of our antibody and albumin-based therapeutic platforms. We believe that ZymeLink provides multiple competitive advantages over existing approaches, including optimized activity and tolerability profiles through increased drug delivery to target cells with reduced off-target effects, product homogeneity, preservation of immune cell interaction and stable pharmacokinetics.

### ***EFECT Antibody Effector Function Modulation Platform***

The EFECT platform comprises sets of modifications to the crystallizable fragment, or Fc, region of antibodies that enable the selective modulation of recruited cytotoxic immune cells for diverse therapeutic applications. This allows us to rationally tailor the selective enhancement or elimination of immune effector function to optimize product candidates.

### ***AlbuCORE Multispecific Antibody-Alternative Platform***

The AlbuCORE platform is a novel and proprietary suite of multivalent scaffolds engineered from the HSA backbone from which therapeutics can be developed. This platform is highly flexible and enables the addition of up to four customized targeting domains, which allows for additional tumor specificity and synergistic activity as well as an increase in the affinity and selectivity for a desired target. The resulting superstructure naturally accumulates in tumor microenvironments or areas of inflammation, and benefits from several attractive attributes of HSA, including superior pharmacokinetics and stability. Additionally, these AlbuCORE constructs possess standard manufacturing and purification protocols compatible with industry standard conjugation technologies, which accelerate the manufacturing process, while reducing costs.

### ***Our Pipeline of Product Candidates and Discovery Programs***

We currently have one wholly-owned product candidate in clinical development and several wholly-owned product candidates in preclinical development that leverage our multiple therapeutic platforms to address areas of significant unmet medical need.

The table below summarizes the status of our product candidates and the focus areas of the most advanced discovery efforts in our pipeline.

Programs			Status			WORLDWIDE COMMERCIAL RIGHTS
Program	Enabling Platform(s)	Indications	DISCOVERY	PRECLINICAL	PHASE 1	
<b>LEAD PRODUCT CANDIDATES</b>						
<b>ZW25</b> HER2 x HER2 Bispecific	Azymetric	Breast Cancer Gastric Cancer Ovarian Cancer				
<b>ZW33</b> HER2 x HER2 Bispecific ADC	Azymetric	Breast Cancer Ovarian Cancer				
<b>ADVANCED DISCOVERY PROGRAMS</b>						
<b>Multiple Programs</b> Bispecific ADC	Azymetric EFFECT ZymeLink	Solid Tumor				
<b>Multiple Programs</b> T Cell Engaging Bispecific	Azymetric EFFECT	Solid Tumor				
<b>Multiple Programs</b> Checkpoint Modulating Bispecific	Azymetric EFFECT	Solid Tumor				

- **ZW25** is our lead product candidate currently being evaluated in an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial in the United States, based on our Azymetric platform. It is a bispecific antibody that can simultaneously bind two non-overlapping epitopes, known as biparatopic binding, of HER2 resulting in dual HER2 signal blockade, increased binding and removal of HER2 protein from the cell surface, and enhanced effector function. These combined mechanisms of action have led to significant anti-tumor activity in preclinical models of breast cancer, including trastuzumab (currently branded as Herceptin) resistant high HER2-expressing tumors, as well as in tumors with lower levels of HER2 expression. Approximately 81% of patients with HER2-expressing breast cancer and 57% of patients with HER2-expressing gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer have tumors that express low to intermediate levels of HER2, making them ineligible for treatment with currently-approved HER2-targeted therapies, such as Herceptin and Perjeta. In the United States and EU5 (France, Germany, Italy, Spain and the United Kingdom) alone, approximately 405,803 and 49,058 patients are diagnosed with HER2-expressing breast and gastroesophageal cancer, respectively, every year. In addition, multiple other cancers, including ovarian, bladder, colorectal and non-small cell lung cancer, or NSCLC, also express HER2 at varying levels. Therefore, there is a significant unmet need for HER2-targeted agents that can effectively treat these patients.

We are developing ZW25 as a best-in-class HER2-targeting antibody intended as a treatment option for patients with any solid tumor that expresses HER2. Our initial focus is on the treatment of patients with breast or gastric cancers who have progressed after treatment with HER2-targeted therapies or who are not eligible for approved HER2-targeted therapies based on low to intermediate levels of HER2 expression. We then intend to develop ZW25 for other HER2-expressing cancers, including ovarian cancer. ZW25 has been granted Orphan Drug Designation for the treatment of both gastric and ovarian cancer by the FDA. In our Phase 1 clinical trial, ZW25 has demonstrated preliminary anti-tumor activity across multiple cancer types in patients who have progressed after several lines of treatment with HER2-targeted therapies.

- **ZW33** is a bispecific anti-HER2 ADC that is based on the same antibody framework as ZW25 but armed with a cytotoxic payload. ZW33 retains the mechanisms of action of ZW25 but takes advantage of high levels of antibody-target internalization to deliver a potent cytotoxin. We are developing ZW33 as a best-in-class HER2-targeting ADC for several indications characterized by HER2 expression including breast and ovarian cancer, especially those that have progressed or are refractory to HER2-targeted agents, including Kadcyla. The FDA has granted Orphan Drug Designation for ZW33 for the treatment of ovarian cancer. We plan on initiating a Phase I clinical trial for ZW33 in the second half of 2017.

## Our Strategy

Our goal is to leverage our next-generation therapeutic platforms and proprietary protein engineering capabilities to become a domain dominator in the discovery, development and commercialization of best-in-class multifunctional biotherapeutics for the treatment of cancer and other diseases with high unmet medical need.

Our key strategies to achieve this goal are to:

- **Aggressively advance our lead product candidate, ZW25, through the clinic in multiple HER2-expressing tumor types.** We plan to pursue the most rapid path possible to advance ZW25 through clinical trials and towards commercialization. We believe ZW25 is best-positioned to initially treat patients who have progressed after or who are not eligible for approved HER2-targeted therapies, such as Herceptin and Perjeta, based on low to intermediate levels of HER2 expression. A first-in-human Phase 1 clinical trial for ZW25 commenced in September 2016 and consists of three segments: a dose escalation segment in HER2-expressing solid tumors to assess safety and identify the maximum tolerated dose followed by expansion to evaluate ZW25 as both a monotherapy and in combination with standard of care therapy in patients with HER2-expressing refractory breast and gastric or gastroesophageal cancers and other HER2-expressing cancers including ovarian, bladder, colorectal and NSCLC. In our Phase 1 clinical trial, preliminary anti-tumor activity has been observed across multiple cancer types in patients who have progressed after several lines of treatment with HER2-targeted therapies. We plan to present detailed safety and preliminary anti-tumor activity data for ZW25 at the American Society of Clinical Oncology meeting in June 2017.
- **Pursue a rapid and multi-faceted development strategy for our novel and highly differentiated pipeline into clinical trials across many oncology indications with a critically high unmet medical need.** We have completed the Good Laboratory Practice, or GLP, toxicology studies and Current Good Manufacturing Practice, or cGMP, manufacturing for ZW33 and plan to initiate a Phase 1 clinical trial in the second half of 2017. We are able to realize significant cost and time savings for ZW33 relative to other bispecifics by leveraging the same antibody manufacturing processes as well as insights related to the safety, pharmacokinetics, immunogenicity and anti-tumor activity data generated for ZW25 in both the preclinical and clinical setting since they share an identical bispecific antibody backbone. The planned clinical trials will be designed to determine the maximum tolerated dose in the dose escalation phase before exploring safety and anti-tumor activity in HER2-expressing cancers including high HER2-expressing breast cancer that has progressed after existing HER2-targeted therapies, as well as in other cancers including HER2-expressing ovarian cancer. Our subsequent clinical product candidates will be chosen from a diverse set of programs that we are aggressively advancing through preclinical development in several oncology indications with significant unmet need. These product candidates leverage both novel and well-validated targets and take advantage of one or more of our proprietary therapeutic platforms, which we believe results in a deep pipeline of next-generation multifunctional biotherapeutics. Our goal is to advance at least one new product candidate to the IND stage every year.
- **Leverage our therapeutic platforms and proprietary protein engineering capabilities to continue to discover and develop additional novel product candidates.** We will continue to exploit the advantages of our therapeutic platforms to discover and develop novel product candidates with a focus on leveraging our Azymetric, ZymeLink, EFECT and AlbuCORE platforms for generating bispecific and multifunctional antibody therapeutics, drug conjugates and multispecific antibody alternatives. We are currently evaluating a number of disease targets, therapeutic candidates and cytotoxic payloads with the aim of advancing a steady pipeline of next-generation product candidates from discovery and preclinical research into clinical trials.
- **Leverage our strategic partnerships, while pursuing additional collaborations that can augment the power of our platforms and value of our pipeline.** We will continue to work closely with our strategic partners to help advance multiple programs developed using our therapeutic platforms. These strategic partnerships underscore the strengths of our therapeutic platforms, provide non-dilutive funding, broaden the scope of development efforts and have the potential to provide clinical validation. We plan to opportunistically enter into additional or expanded strategic relationships with top-tier biopharmaceutical companies, including retaining key geographic and commercial rights, particularly in disease areas not currently being pursued by us or by our current strategic partners.

- **Continue to develop innovative therapeutic platforms and expand our therapeutic focus into logical areas such as autoimmunity and inflammatory diseases.** We plan to advance novel first-in-class product candidates and to continue to develop next-generation therapeutic platforms through our in-house research and development activities, collaborations with recognized leading academic institutions as well as in-licensing and acquisition of new technologies.

**Background**

**Cancer Biology**

Cancers are a diverse group of diseases characterized by unregulated cell growth and disruption of adjacent tissues. In normal tissues, cell growth and death are tightly regulated processes, with new cells continually being generated to replace cells that have become damaged or function abnormally. Tumors develop when genetic changes render cells insensitive to naturally occurring apoptosis, or programmed cell death, or invisible to the immune system. Under these conditions, cells grow and proliferate unchecked, leading to the development of solid tumors or blood cancers. Tumors can become malignant, invading nearby tissues, or become metastatic, traveling through the circulatory or lymphatic systems to form new tumors far from their primary site of origin. Once tumors become malignant or metastatic, treatment options are limited based on currently available therapeutics.

Cancer is the second-leading cause of death worldwide. The incidence, prevalence and mortality rates associated with cancer vary greatly depending on the cancer type. The following table lists the annual incidence rates in the United States for the most prevalent cancers, excluding non-melanoma skin cancer.

**Annual Cancer Incidence and Mortality Rates in the United States (2016) and EU5 (2013)<sup>(1)</sup>**

Cancer Type	US		EU (FR, GR, IT, SP, UK)	
	Estimated New Cases	Estimated Deaths	Estimated New Cases	Estimated Deaths
Breast	249,260	40,890	248,658	59,311
Lung	224,390	158,080	195,191	165,084
Prostate	180,890	26,120	242,887	45,044
Colorectal	134,490	49,190	225,502	92,802
Bladder	76,960	16,390	80,431	25,865
Melanoma	76,380	10,130	56,216	9,471
Non-Hodgkin's Lymphoma	72,580	20,150	56,623	21,145
Thyroid	64,300	1,980	26,104	2,273
Kidney	62,700	14,240	57,126	22,374
Leukemia (all types)	60,140	24,400	41,788	26,993
Endometrial	60,050	10,470	40,018	9,158
Pancreatic	53,070	41,780	51,402	50,539
Head & Neck	48,330	9,570	63,279	22,051
Gastroesophageal	43,280	26,420	74,084	54,364
Liver	39,230	27,170	37,975	33,568
Ovarian	22,280	14,240	27,104	18,303

<sup>(1)</sup> U.S. data excerpted from: *Cancer Facts and Figures 2016*. Atlanta, GA: American Cancer Society, 2016. Head & Neck in the United States refers to patients with oral cavity and pharyngeal tumors.

EU5 data excerpted from: Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Ervik M, Dikshit R, Eser S, Mathers C, Rebelo M, Parkin DM, Forman D, Bray, F. *GLOBOCAN 2012 v1.0, Cancer Incidence and Mortality Worldwide: IARC CancerBase No. 11* (Internet). Lyon, France: International Agency for Research on Cancer; 2013. Head & Neck in the EU5 refers to patients with lip, oral cavity, larynx, nasopharynx and other pharyngeal tumors.

### ***Immune System and Antibodies***

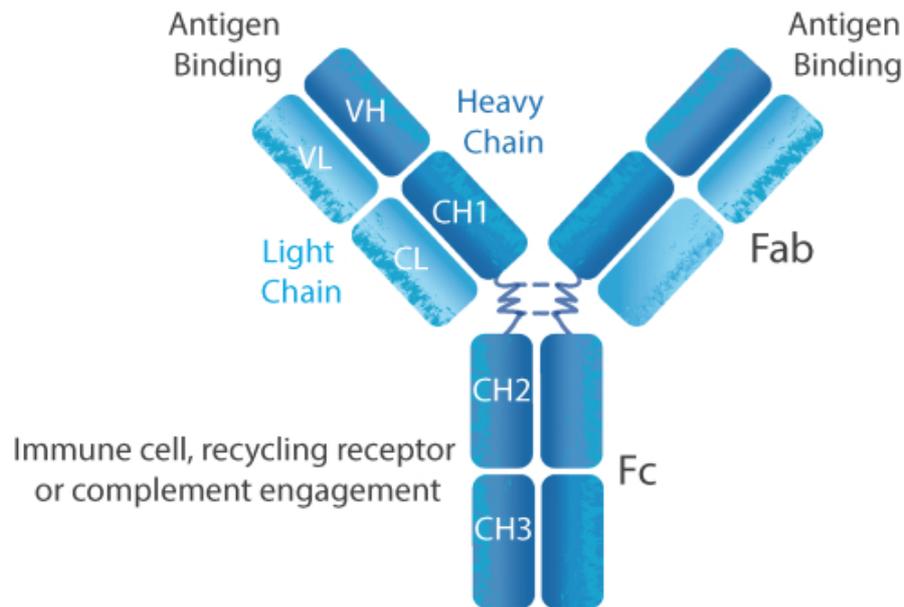
The immune system detects and defends organisms from invading pathogens, and identifies and eliminates aberrant cells. It is comprised of two subsystems: the innate and adaptive immune systems. The innate immune system mounts non-specific responses to conserved pathogen-associated molecular patterns and to alarm signals released by pathogen-infected cells. Key components of the innate immune system include:

- cytokines and chemokines, which are small signaling proteins that allow immune cells to communicate with one another and regulate cell movement towards a site of inflammation or infection;
- the complement pathway, which is a system of interacting proteins that coat pathogens, mark them for destruction and induce inflammatory responses;
- macrophages, which are cells that ingest and destroy foreign materials;
- neutrophils, which are cells that ingest and destroy microorganisms and are also capable of releasing enzymes that kill microorganisms; and
- natural killer, or NK, cells, which recognize and lyse pathogenic cells.

In contrast to innate immunity, the adaptive immune system mounts highly specific responses against non-self molecules, or antigens, and can be activated by the innate immune system. Key components of the adaptive immune system include:

- B cells, which generate unique antibodies targeting intact extracellular antigens;
- helper T cells, which stimulate B cells to divide, differentiate and secrete antibodies in response to peptide antigens processed from extracellular proteins presented by other immune cells; and
- cytotoxic T cells, which destroy infected or cancerous cells presenting peptide antigens processed from intracellular proteins.

Antibodies are Y-shaped, symmetrical molecules that recognize one antigen and can potentially engage two copies of that antigen simultaneously, as illustrated in the following diagram:



**Monoclonal Antibody Schematic.** Typical monoclonal antibodies are composed of two identical heavy chains and two identical light chains. The Fc comprises two identical CH2 and CH3 domains that form a complex known as a homodimer and interact with immune cells, complement components and receptors that prolong antibody half-life. The antigen binding fragments, or Fabs, interact with the antigen target through exposed surfaces on their distal tips.

Antigen binding is achieved by exposed loops (in VH and VL) located at the distal tips of the Fab arms. Sequence variations in these regions give different antibodies the ability to target different antigens. The Fc domain is a protein domain at the base of the “Y” and includes CH2 and CH3 domains. The Fc is shared by all antibodies of a particular isotype and can be engaged by various receptors to recruit immune cells and destroy antigen-expressing target cells. This immune cell-mediated activity is called effector function, and may include antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity, or ADCC, antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis, or ADCP, and complement-dependent cytotoxicity, or CDC.

In the context of cancer, the immune system performs continuous surveillance, eliminating cancerous cells and microscopic tumors. However, microscopic tumors occasionally escape immune surveillance and grow uncontrollably, leading to significant tissue damage and eventually compromising essential functions.

### Oncology Overview and Next-Generation Therapy

Cancer treatment depends on multiple factors, including the type, stage and degree of localization of the cancer. Small, localized tumors can often be effectively treated by surgery and radiation, and supplemental, or adjuvant, drugs are commonly administered in this setting. Patients with primary tumors that cannot be removed or which have metastasized beyond the primary site are typically treated with systemically-delivered drugs, such as chemotherapy.

### ***Chemotherapy***

Cytotoxic chemotherapeutic agents were the first type of systemic drug treatment developed for cancer and many remain in use today. These drugs typically act by disrupting cellular metabolism, division and mobility, which are required for tumor growth, invasion and metastasis. Tumors are more sensitive to chemotherapeutic agents than normal cells by virtue of their accelerated proliferation rates. However, chemotherapy also kills normal cells, particularly those that naturally grow and divide rapidly, such as those in the gastrointestinal tract. Because of this toxicity, these agents are typically administered in a limited range of doses within which tumors can be eliminated while minimizing toxic side effects, resulting in a narrow therapeutic window. As a result, chemotherapeutic agents are not always effective in eradicating cancer cells at doses low enough to avoid potentially fatal toxic damage.

### ***Targeted Therapies***

To address the broad toxicity of systemic chemotherapy, researchers have developed targeted therapies that interfere with the specific molecules that drive the rapid growth of cancer cells and lead to metastasis, or which can re-engage the immune system to combat cancer. While each patient's cancer is characterized by a unique combination of genetic mutations, many of these changes are common across many cancers. These common genetic changes are targeted by newer targeted therapies that discriminate cancerous from normal cells, often leading to superior tolerability and broader therapeutic windows compared to chemotherapy. The three most common classes of targeted therapies are as follows:

#### *Small Molecules*

Small molecule therapeutics are chemical compounds that generally interfere with the intracellular signaling of tyrosine kinases. Tyrosine kinase signaling regulates cell growth, proliferation, migration and new blood vessel formation, or angiogenesis, of tumors. Blocking these signals slows the growth of tumors. Small molecule therapeutics, due to their small size and the weaker binding of targets, are generally less specific and more toxic than biologics.

#### *First-Generation Biologics*

Most biologics used as cancer therapies are monoclonal antibodies directed against tumor cell surface antigens, though this class of therapeutics also includes vaccines, cytokines and receptor fusion proteins. Due to their high degree of target specificity, monoclonal antibodies also offer the unique ability to target tumor-selective antigens, while minimizing off-target side effects. In oncology, first-generation biologics were generally used for growth signal neutralization through ligand or receptor blockade or degradation such as Herceptin or Perjeta for the HER2 receptor and Erbitux for the epidermal growth factor receptor, or EGFR.

#### *Second-Generation Biologics*

Second-generation biologics were designed to further increase efficacy and reduce toxicity of targeted cancer therapies. In some instances, the domain of a monoclonal antibody was engineered to enhance therapeutic efficacy, or the Fab domains were engineered to improve target antigen affinity and specificity. In addition, small molecules or cytokines could be conjugated to antibodies to precisely deliver toxic payloads specifically to tumors. Antibodies could also be engineered such that they simultaneously engaged multiple different antigens (i.e., bispecific antibodies) and induced biological effects previously unattainable with first-generation monoclonal antibodies. This resulted in biologics often being the preferred treatment option for many cancers given their higher efficacy and safety profile as well as longer serum exposure in comparison to small molecules.

## **Zymeworks' Next-Generation Biologics**

Small molecule therapeutics and biologics have led to improvements in patient outcomes compared to chemotherapies. However, some patients acquire resistance, become refractory to, or cannot tolerate the increased toxicity of these treatments. Importantly, these treatments often only delay disease progression and do not induce durable cancer remission. As a result, there is a need for new therapies with improved, long-lasting efficacy and reduced toxicity. We believe the future of oncology will be defined by multifunctional therapeutics specifically designed to act through several synergistic mechanisms of action to enhance efficacy, overcome resistance and minimize side effects. Furthermore, we believe our proprietary protein engineering capabilities and our integrated biologics discovery engine uniquely enable us to develop the next generation of biotherapeutics, including bispecific and multifunctional antibodies, immune engagers, ADCs and other proprietary protein formats to help address this treatment gap. Our suite of proprietary therapeutic platforms uniquely allows us to utilize all of the above approaches in our mission to allow patients to return home to their loved ones, disease free.

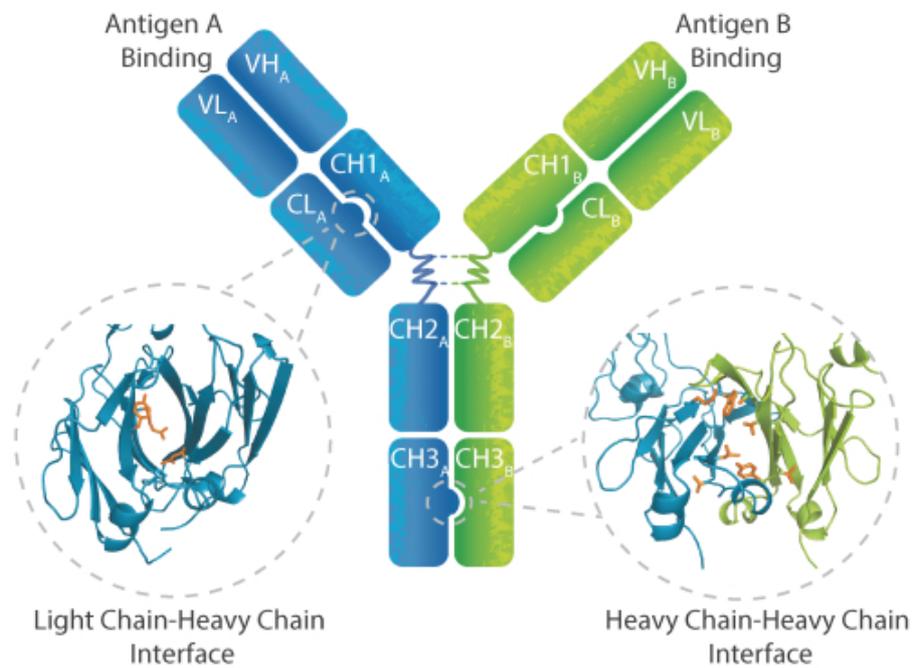
## **Zymeworks' Competitive Advantage: Proprietary Therapeutic Platforms**

Our expertise in protein engineering has enabled the development of our next-generation therapeutic platforms, a suite of complementary and highly-tailored biologics solutions. Our therapeutic platforms can be used alone or in combination with synergistic activity to develop fit-for-purpose biotherapeutics with bispecific capabilities (Azymetric), cytotoxic payload delivery (ZymeLink), finely-tuned immune cell regulation (EFFECT) and multivalent targeting (AlbuCORE). We continue to leverage these therapeutic platforms to expand our deep pipeline of next-generation biotherapeutics that we believe could represent significant improvements to the standard of care in multiple cancer types.

### ***Azymetric Bispecific Antibody Platform***

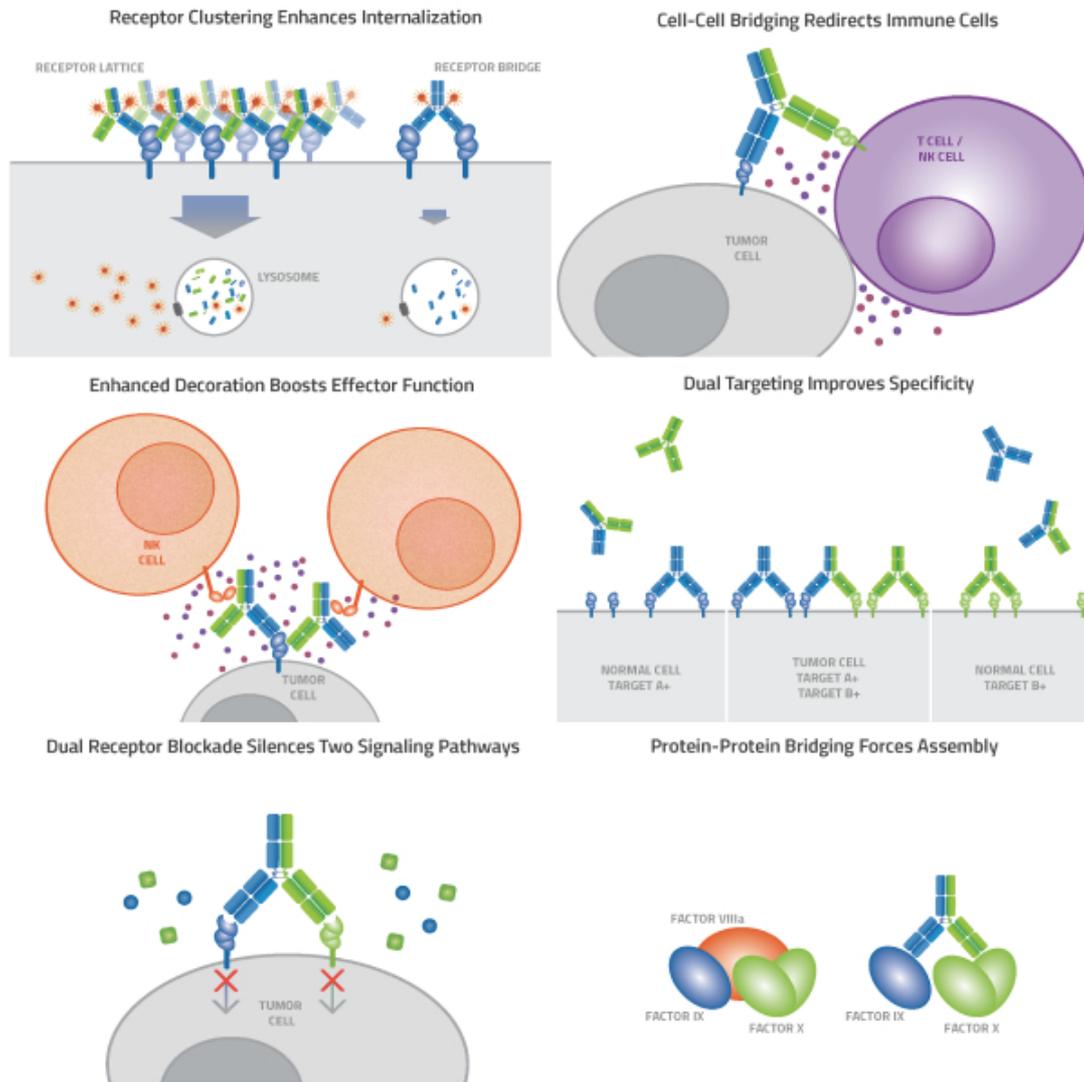
The Azymetric platform consists of a library of proprietary amino acid substitutions in the Fc and Fab regions that transform monospecific antibodies into bispecific antibodies, giving them the ability to simultaneously bind two non-overlapping epitopes. The core technology consists of complementary amino acid substitutions on each of the CH3 domains that we have engineered to facilitate the obligate interaction of two distinct heavy chains. Additional amino acid substitutions are also introduced at the heavy-light chain interfaces to facilitate the correct pairing of the heavy chains with their respective light chains.

We are leveraging the multiple therapeutic mechanisms of action of our Azymetric platform to develop our internal pipeline of wholly-owned bispecific product candidates, including ZW25 and ZW33. We have also licensed the Azymetric platform to our strategic partners (Merck, Lilly, Celgene, GSK and Daiichi) for their own therapeutic development.



**Azymetric Antibody Schematic.** Azymetric antibodies consist of two different heavy chains and two different light chains which, when associated using proprietary, engineered Fc and Fab domain interfaces, can engage two distinct antigens through two different antigen-targeting arms.

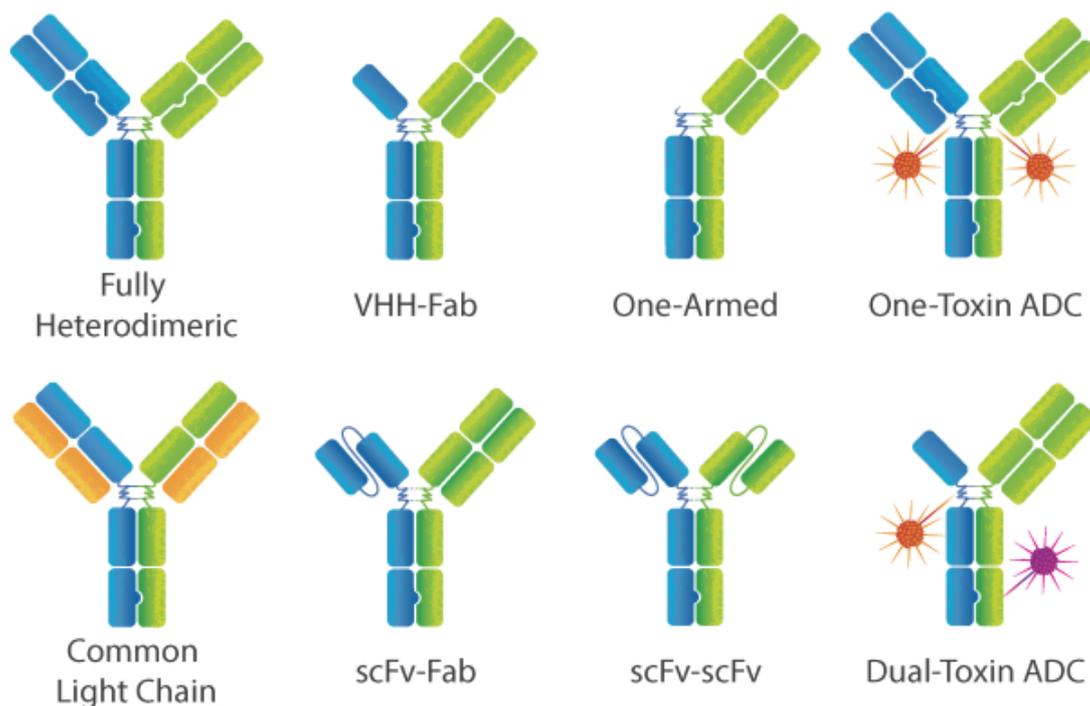
We have engineered our Azymetric bispecific antibodies to retain the desirable features of naturally-occurring IgG antibodies, including low immunogenicity, long serum half-life, high stability and the ability to mediate effector function. Azymetric antibodies are also manufactured using industry-standard monoclonal antibody processes and maintain high production yields and product purity. This allows for “plug-and-play,” low-cost, high-quality manufacturing for both our proprietary and partnered product candidates. These are significant advantages compared to competing bispecific technologies, which in many cases suffer from poor stability or may require additional complex manufacturing steps. By retaining the properties of an unmodified Fc region, Azymetric antibodies can be stably formulated, dosed on a convenient schedule, and have the ability to kill tumors through multiple mechanisms of action. In addition, Azymetric antibodies are compatible with glyco-engineering and other Fc modifications (for example, our EFECT platform) to enhance therapeutic activity.



**Unique Mechanisms of Action of Bispecific Antibodies.** Bispecific antibodies can mediate effects through multiple unique mechanisms of action, including: (i) enhanced receptor clustering, which may accelerate internalization and promote sub-cellular sorting to the lysosome for improved cytotoxin delivery; (ii) recruitment of immune cells to tumor cells by simultaneous engagement of receptors on each cell; (iii) increasing tumor cell decoration by engaging two targets on the same receptor, or two different receptors, to enhance Fc-mediated effector cell function; (iv) improved specificity of tumor targeting by requiring engagement of two tumor-associated antigens; (v) dual receptor blockade with a single antibody to suppress signaling through two oncogenic pathways (the same effect can be achieved by dual ligand binding); or (vi) by bridging proteins to replace a missing component of a macromolecular complex. Other unique bispecific mechanisms of action (not shown) include delivering biologics across the blood brain barrier, enhancing tumor cell death signaling by improved receptor clustering, and increasing cytotoxin delivery by coupling a poorly-internalizing tumor-specific receptor to a well-internalizing target.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Unlike many other bispecific platforms, the Azymetric platform is compatible with alternative antigen binding formats (e.g. antigen binding fragments, or Fabs, single chain antibodies, or scFvs, and heavy chain antibodies, or VHHS, see illustration below). This flexibility allows us to explore multiple different structural variants and to select the format that provides optimized engagement geometry for a given target pair to maximize therapeutic effect for the desired biology. We believe that this level of therapeutic customization will be essential to design next-generation biologics that effectively target increasingly complex biological challenges.



**Azymetric Format Variants.** Azymetric antibodies can be formatted with dual Fab antigen-targeting arms, with common light chains, in alternate scFv or VHH formats, hybrid formats, or as ADCs, in order to create highly-tailored biotherapeutics that provide optimal engagement geometry for a given target pair to maximize therapeutic effect.

We have designed the Azymetric platform to provide us with the following competitive advantages:

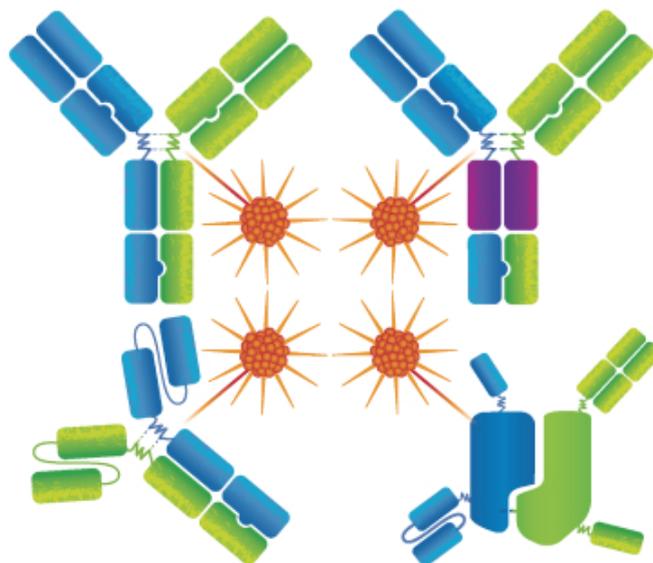
- dual-targeting of receptors and ligands
  - *enables enhanced tumor specificity and synergistic efficacy;*
- simultaneous blockade of multiple signals or parallel pathways
  - *enhances efficacy while reducing the potential for drug resistance and relapse;*
- several modular and compatible antibody formats
  - *enables fit-for-purpose biotherapeutic development that optimally exploits therapeutic targets in the context of each particular disease state;*
- redirected targeting of immune effector cells to the tumor
  - *recruits and activates the patient's naïve immune cells to attack tumors for increased efficacy;*
- enhanced antibody internalization and sub-cellular sorting
  - *delivers more drug to tumors for increased efficacy;*

## [Table of Contents](#)

- IgG-like biophysical and functional properties
  - *retains effector function and enhances pharmacokinetics and stability, with resistance to aggregation and reduced immunogenic potential relative to other bispecific formats; and*
- compatible with existing industry-standard manufacturing and purification protocols
  - *plug-and-play manufacturing process accelerates development and reduces cost of goods.*

### **ZymeLink Conjugation Platform and Cytotoxins**

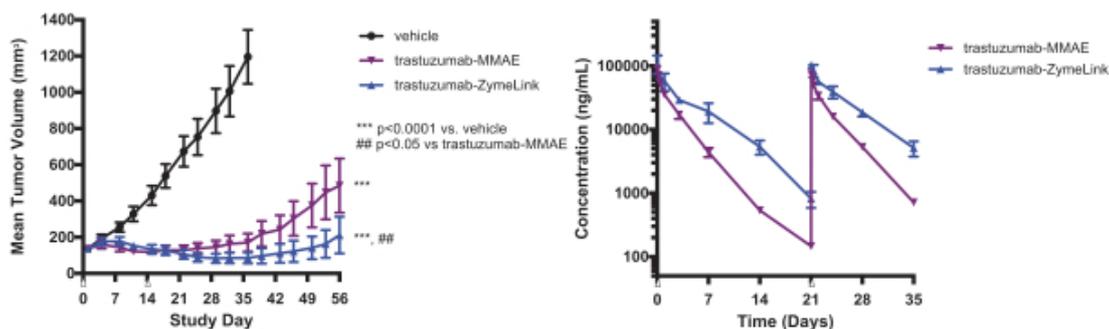
The ZymeLink conjugation platform represents a suite of novel site-specific protein conjugation technologies and customizable cleavable linkers that enable the delivery of cytotoxic payloads, and can be applied to all of our antibody and albumin-based therapeutic scaffolds. The ZymeLink platform enables the production of homogeneous product candidates that are stable in circulation but enable the efficient release of payload upon internalization by target cells. For antibodies, the ZymeLink platform has been specifically engineered to preserve Fc effector function to facilitate the recruitment and activation of immune cells as well as maintain typical antibody pharmacokinetics.



**ZymeLink Drug Conjugate Platform.** The ZymeLink drug conjugate platform is a suite of novel site-specific protein conjugation technologies and customizable cleavable linkers that allow for the delivery of our proprietary cytotoxic payloads, and can be applied to all of our antibody and albumin-based therapeutic platforms.

We have also developed a series of proprietary cytotoxic payloads, spanning multiple classes, which possess highly potent anti-tumor activity against a broad range of cancer cell types. When conjugated to tumor-targeting antibodies, the resulting ZymeLink-cytotoxin conjugates demonstrate exceptional anti-tumor activity and tolerability *in vivo* in our preclinical studies. In fact, the ZymeLink-cytotoxin conjugates are tolerated by non-human primates at doses six-fold higher than the only currently-approved cleavable ADC platform based on monomethyl auristatin E, or MMAE, potentially resulting in an expanded therapeutic window in patients. This key competitive advantage may enable administration of higher ADC doses and delivery of more cytotoxin to the tumor, with reduced toxic side effects, relative to other ADC platforms.

**ZymeLink Antibody-Drug Conjugates are Potent and Have Greater Exposure than MMAE Antibody-Drug Conjugates**



Primate Safety	Trastuzumab-MMAE	Trastuzumab-ZymeLink
Dose-limiting Toxicity	Myelotoxicity (6 mg/kg)	Elevated AST/ALT (24 mg/kg)
Maximum Tolerated Dose	3 mg/kg	18 mg/kg

**ZymeLink Drug Conjugate Platform Safety.** At an equivalent drug-to-antibody ratio, an ADC generated using the ZymeLink platform was potent and at least as efficacious as an ADC generated using the MMAE platform in a HER2-expressing patient-derived breast cancer model. In the study on the left panel, ADCs were administered at 3 mg/kg on day 0 and 14 (indicated by open triangles) in a blinded, randomized, placebo controlled study (n=9 mice/group) with established tumors. Treatment with trastuzumab-ZymeLink achieved statistically significant results since such treatment inhibited the relative growth rate of tumors when compared to trastuzumab-MMAE indicated by “###” (p-value<0.05). The ZymeLink ADC also exhibited increased exposure and was six-fold better tolerated in non-human primates compared to the MMAE ADC in a four-week tolerability study (right panel and table). The maximum tolerated dose of trastuzumab-ZymeLink was determined to be 18 mg/kg based on elevated levels of AST and ALT at 24 mg/kg. In contrast, the maximum tolerated dose of trastuzumab-MMAE was limited to 3 mg/kg based on severe myelotoxicity at 6 mg/kg despite having lower drug exposure than trastuzumab-ZymeLink at equivalent doses. Dose-limiting toxicity and maximum tolerated dose were assessed by clinical observations and clinical pathology using standards equivalent to those in a human clinical trial. An experimental result, such as those derived from a clinical or non-clinical study, is “statistically significant” if it is unlikely to have occurred by chance. The statistical significance of the experimental results is determined by a widely used statistical method that establishes the p-value of the results. A p-value is the probability that the reported result was achieved purely by chance, such that a p-value of less than or equal to 0.001 means that there is a 0.1% or less probability that the difference between the control group and the treatment group is purely due to chance. Under this method, the smaller the p-value the greater the confidence that the results are significant. The FDA generally considers a p-value of 0.05 or less to represent statistical significance.

We have designed the ZymeLink platform to provide us with the following competitive advantages:

- targeted delivery of our proprietary next-generation cytotoxins
  - optimizes efficacy and safety profiles thus broadening therapeutic window;

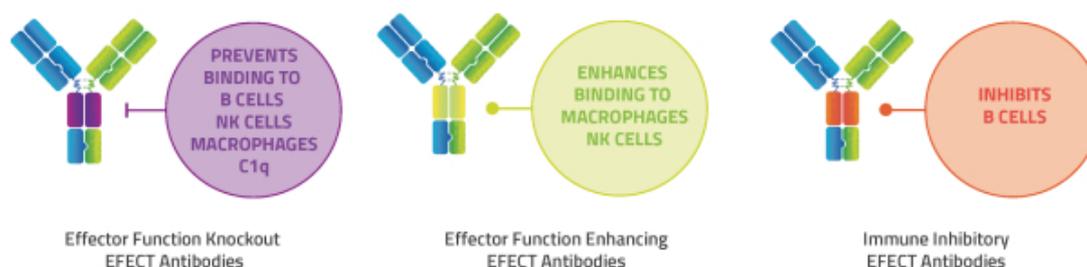
## Table of Contents

- customized cleavable linkers with optimized loading, stability and release
  - maximizes drug delivery to target cells while minimizing off-target effects;
- site-specific conjugation technology
  - ensures product homogeneity, preserves Fc effector function for recruitment/activation of immune cells, and maintains pharmacokinetics through FcRn engagement; and
- compatible with multiple antibody and protein formats including Azymetric, AlbuCORE and our partnered programs
  - maximizes utility across a broad range of applications.

Importantly, the ZymeLink conjugation platform is compatible with our proprietary cytotoxins as well as a variety of additional small molecule therapeutics. Together, they can be combined with traditional monoclonal antibodies and with the Azymetric (bispecific), EFECT and AlbuCORE (multispecific) platforms to enable the development of best-in-class, life-changing therapies for patients.

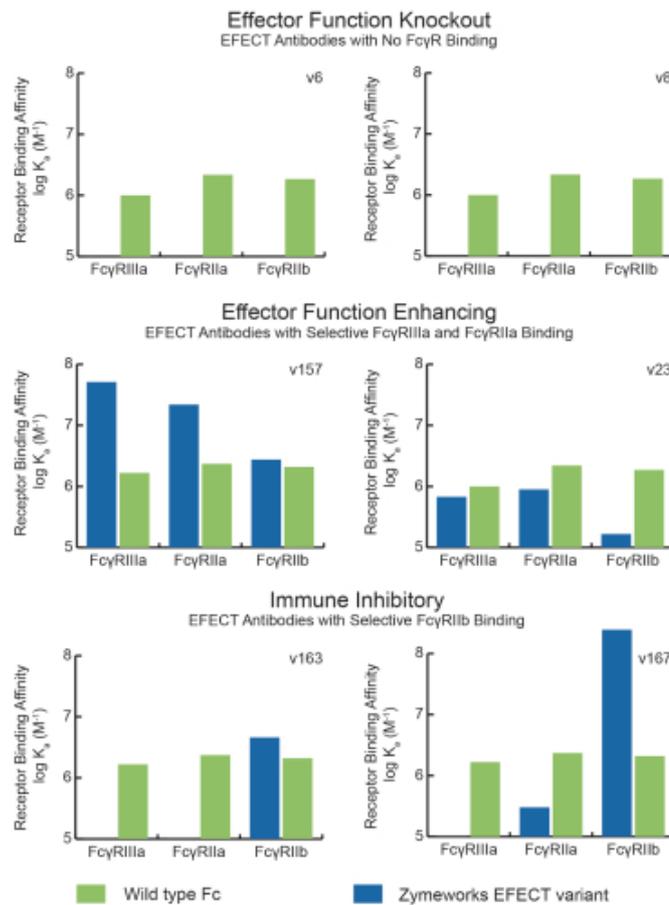
### EFECT Antibody Effector Function Modulation Platform

Immune cells bind to the Fc region of antibodies through proteins called Fc receptors. Some Fc receptors activate immune cell function (FcγRIIa and FcγRIIIa), while other Fc receptors inhibit immune cell function (FcγRIIb). The EFECT platform is comprised of sets of proprietary modifications to the Fc region of antibodies that enable us to selectively modulate the activity of recruited immune cells. For example, preventing Fc-FcγR interactions may be important for T cell re-directing bispecific antibodies. A T cell re-directing bispecific antibody capable of being bound by Fc receptors may recruit and instruct T cells to kill, not just the tumor cell, but also any immune cell bound to the Fc. Alternatively, improving binding to activating Fc receptors may enhance immune cell anti-cancer activity, while improving binding to inhibitory Fc receptors may reduce activity of immune cells, thereby suppressing autoimmunity. The ability to tune-up, tune-down, or eliminate immune cell engagement allows tailoring of the antibody effector function to match the desired therapeutic mechanism of action.



**Modulation of Effector Function with the EFECT Platform.** Tailored sets of amino acid modifications can be introduced in to the Fc region of antibodies to generate therapeutics with immune effector function eliminated (purple), with enhanced immune effector cell function (yellow) or the ability to inhibit B cell activity without depleting B cells (orange).

The EFECT platform is compatible with traditional monospecific antibodies and with Azymetric bispecific antibodies. We have licensed certain aspects of this therapeutic platform to Merck, GSK and Daiichi for use in conjunction with the Azymetric platform. We have also entered into a collaboration with GSK for the further development and commercialization of the EFECT platform.



**Modulation of FcγR Binding with the EFACT Platform.** Zymeworks has engineered EFACT variants that can selectively engage different FcγR receptors. The binding affinities (log  $K_a$  expressed in  $M^{-1}$ ) for activating FcγR1a and FcγR1a and inhibitory FcγR1b for a wild-type unmodified antibody Fc domain are shown in green while our EFACT variants are shown in blue.

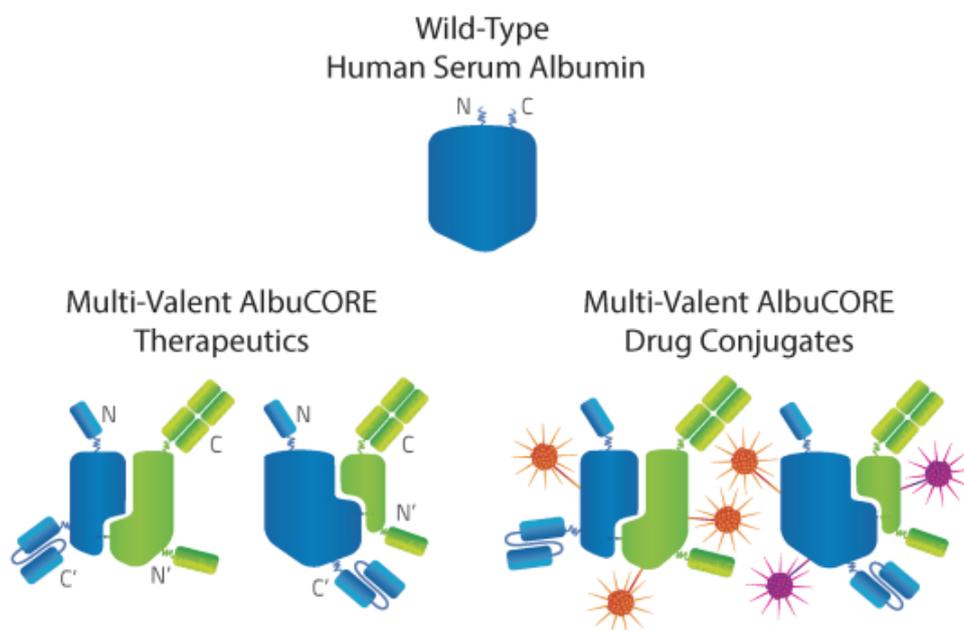
We have designed the EFACT platform to provide the following competitive advantages:

- selective enhancement of activating FcγR interactions
  - *enables precise up-regulation of immune effector function;*
- selective enhancement of inhibitory FcγR interactions
  - *enables precise downregulation of B cell or mast cell function and permits antibody crosslinking via immune cell engagement without immune cell activation; and*
- proprietary mutations to eliminate FcγR interactions
  - *eliminates the interaction between an antibody and the FcγR of immune cells more completely than alternative approaches while retaining the attractive pharmacokinetics of a full-sized antibody.*

## AlbuCORE Multispecific Antibody Alternative Platform

The AlbuCORE platform is a novel and proprietary suite of multivalent scaffolds based on HSA. This platform is highly flexible and enables the addition of up to four customizable targeting domains, which allows for additional tumor specificity and synergistic activity as well as increased affinity and selectivity for the desired target. The resulting superstructure naturally accumulates in tumor microenvironments or areas of inflammation and benefits from several attractive attributes of HSA, including superior pharmacokinetics and stability. Additionally, these antibodies possess standard manufacturing and purification protocols compatible with industry standard conjugation technologies which accelerate development and reduce manufacturing costs.

We evaluated a number of positions where the native HSA amino acid sequence could be split into two polypeptide chains. When the two separate chains are co-expressed, they efficiently and spontaneously associate to reform a native-like HSA structure with four available termini to which antigen-targeting domains can be fused, or other agents chemically conjugated.

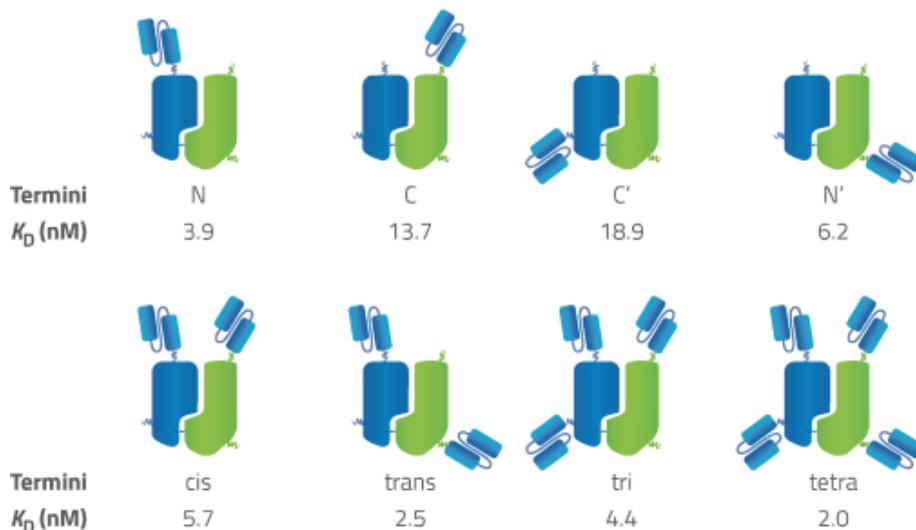


**AlbuCORE Platform Schematic.** Zymeworks has engineered a series of AlbuCORE scaffolds by genetically splitting the native HSA sequence at exposed loops. Different AlbuCORE scaffolds allow fusion of antigen-binding domains resulting in different target-engagement geometries. One or more cytotoxic drugs can also be conjugated to AlbuCORE scaffolds to enhance therapeutic utility.

Variants created using the AlbuCORE platform retain the attractive features of HSA as a therapeutic scaffold. AlbuCORE variants exploit the natural accumulation of albumin in tumors through enhanced tumor permeability and retention, and the increased demand by tumors for albumin as a source of energy and amino acids. AlbuCORE variants also retain the favorable pharmacokinetic properties of HSA, which have previously been exploited by fusing HSA to peptides, hormones and cytokines to extend the half-life of these otherwise rapidly-cleared molecules. Unlike antibodies, AlbuCORE-based biotherapeutics inherently lack effector function; this is a highly desirable trait in certain therapeutic applications. AlbuCORE variants also exhibit ideal manufacturing characteristics: they retain the stability and solubility characteristics exemplified by the frequent use of HSA as an excipient in pharmaceutical product formulations and can be produced in microbial expression systems at reduced cost-of-goods compared to other systems.

## Table of Contents

AlbuCORE's multivalent binding capabilities enable us to design biotherapeutics with high avidity binding or multispecific targeting to crosslink multiple disease targets and effector cells. Similar to the Azymeric platform, the AlbuCORE platform also offers the flexibility to test multiple formats with variable inter-termini distances and geometries. This allows us to identify a variant with the optimal targeting geometries needed to induce maximal effect for a particular disease state.



**AlbuCORE Valency and Binding Geometries.** Relative binding affinity, or  $K_D$ , of an AlbuCORE scaffold fused with anti-HER2 scFv binding domains, demonstrating that differences in binding affinity to HER2-expressing target cells depend on the valency and site of fusion on the scaffold. The lower the  $K_D$ , the stronger the binding of AlbuCORE to the target.

We have designed the AlbuCORE platform to provide the following competitive advantages:

- multivalent targeting: up to four sites to which peptides or protein domains can be fused
  - *enables enhanced tumor specificity and synergistic efficacy;*
- ability to customized geometry of targeting domains and optimized structure-activity relationship
  - *increases affinity and selectivity for therapeutic target leading to increased efficacy and decreased toxicity;*
- HSA-like biophysical and functional properties
  - *naturally accumulates in the tumor microenvironment and at sites of inflammation*
  - *increases serum circulation and tissue residence time compared to small molecules and other protein scaffolds*
  - *enhances stability and pharmacokinetics, and decreases immunogenic potential; and*
- compatible with existing industry standard manufacturing and purification protocols
  - *standard manufacturing process accelerates development and reduces cost of goods.*

## ZymeCAD Computational Modeling and Engineering Technology

Our therapeutic platforms are enabled by our protein engineering expertise and by leveraging ZymeCAD, our proprietary computational modeling technology. We continue to leverage ZymeCAD to support our strategic partnerships and develop novel therapeutic platforms.

## [Table of Contents](#)

ZymeCAD is a comprehensive approach to predictive protein modeling and structure-guided protein engineering. We utilize this suite of proprietary software modules to develop better therapeutic platforms by increasing our understanding of the structure-function relationships and biophysical characteristics of specific protein changes. These software modules include:

### ***Molecular Modeling***

ZymeCAD includes a number of proprietary software tools used to build and refine the quality of high-definition molecular models, incorporating structural data from multiple sources including crystallography, homology and sequence data as well as experimentally-derived data. High quality structural models of protein therapeutics and their interactions with targets are a critical component of our approach to protein engineering and the design of next-generation product candidates and therapeutic platforms.

### ***Conformational Dynamics***

ZymeCAD incorporates a number of simulation approaches to sample and evaluate changes within molecular systems, including protein backbone, sidechain and interdomain changes. Proprietary simulation methodologies provide us with a comprehensive understanding of the alternate states and functional characteristics of the protein of interest, including target binding and stability.

### ***Hot Spot Determination***

ZymeCAD plays a key role in the *in silico* identification of a specific subset of amino acids in a protein that is critical to determining its functional characteristic and overall stability. These amino acid residues can play a role either independently or as part of a cluster of networked residues, and through proprietary algorithms, ZymeCAD can identify these critical residues, referred to as “hot spots.” These analyses, including the inherent knowledge of the downstream impact of altering specific hot spots, can drive the rational design and engineering of product candidates.

### ***Energy Function and Scoring***

ZymeCAD contains proprietary energy and scoring functions that score and rank the stability of proteins and binding energies across protein-target interfaces, and the outward-facing surfaces of the proteins. This empirical ranking methodology was developed, implemented and successfully utilized in the development of our platform technologies and biotherapeutics, and plays a key role in executing on our strategic partnerships relating to the development of new EFECT modalities.

Rigorous commercial software engineering practices, coupled with robust quality assurance standards and a world-class software engineering team have created an extensible, scalable, reliable and secure platform that we believe positions us to remain at the leading edge of the development of next-generation biotherapeutics as we continue to innovate beyond the current state of art in computational protein design.

### **Next-Generation Biologics Market Opportunity**

The expansion of the pharmaceutical market driven by an aging worldwide population and increased standard of living in emerging markets has contributed to growth of the biologics markets over the last several years. Monoclonal antibodies are the most prevalent biologic type, as they are effective, amenable to platform development, well-validated as a therapeutic class and familiar to regulatory agencies. Since the first antibody approval in 1986, approximately 47 products have been approved by the FDA and international regulatory authorities. Notably, the three largest selling oncology products are monoclonal antibodies, Avastin, Herceptin and Rituxan, which had 2015 worldwide sales of approximately \$6.7 billion, \$6.5 billion and \$5.6 billion, respectively. Currently there are over 300 monoclonal antibodies in various stages of clinical development with combined global sales expected to reach nearly \$125 billion.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The overall market for bispecific antibodies has been estimated to reach \$5.8 billion in 2024. Notably, these forecasts are conservative and reflect only projections for bispecifics in late-stage development. Challenges with existing bispecific technologies include a short half-life *in vivo*, low stability, and various manufacturing-related challenges. We believe the true market for bispecifics is significantly larger and we expect it to grow as clinical and regulatory experience with this class of therapeutics increases and stable bispecific antibodies with a longer *in vivo* half-life and enhanced efficacy are developed.

ADCs are a relatively more mature next-generation biotherapeutic technology comprising of monoclonal antibodies attached to biologically active drugs by chemical linkers with labile bonds. By combining the specific targeting ability of antibodies with cytotoxic drugs, ADCs allow sensitive discrimination between healthy and diseased tissue. Initial data suggests that some ADCs may have additive or synergistic effects with immuno-oncology drugs, notably with checkpoint inhibitors. Despite improvements in second generation ADCs, it is generally accepted that only a small fraction of their payload is delivered to the target, leaving significant room for improvement. Key challenges include production of consistent ADC batches, efficacy of antibody targeting and linkers with delayed payload release and poor stability. Potential solutions include alternative targeting mechanisms such as bispecifics, new linker technologies to improve the pharmacokinetic profile and improved conjugation of the linker to the antibody. Two ADCs are currently approved for use in the United States: Seattle Genetics' Adcetris and Roche/Genentech's Kadcyła. These two products accounted for \$1.2 billion in sales for 2015. With over 50 antibody-drug conjugates in the clinic, including 20 programs in Phase 2 or Phase 3 trials, the market for ADCs has been estimated to be between \$10.0 billion and \$12.7 billion by the 2020-2025 timeframe.

## Product Candidate Pipeline

### ***ZW25: Anti-HER2 Biparatopic Bispecific Azymetric Antibody***

#### *Overview*

ZW25, our lead product candidate currently being evaluated in an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial in the United States, is based on our Azymetric platform. It is a bispecific antibody that can simultaneously bind two non-overlapping epitopes, known as biparatopic binding, of HER2 resulting in dual HER2 signal blockade, increased binding and removal of HER2 protein from the cell surface, and enhanced effector function. These combined mechanisms of action have led to activity in preclinical models of breast cancer, including trastuzumab-resistant (currently branded as Herceptin) high HER2-expressing tumors, as well as in tumors with lower levels of HER2 expression. Approximately 81% of patients with HER2-expressing breast cancer and 57% of patients with HER2-expressing gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer have tumors that express low to intermediate levels of HER2, making them ineligible for treatment with currently-approved HER2-targeted therapies, such as Herceptin and Perjeta. In addition, multiple other cancers, including ovarian, bladder, colorectal and non-small cell lung cancer express HER2 at varying levels. Therefore, there is a significant unmet need for HER2-targeted agents that can effectively treat these patients. In our Phase 1 clinical trial, ZW25 has demonstrated preliminary anti-tumor activity across multiple cancer types in patients who have progressed after several lines of treatment with HER2-targeted therapies.

We are developing ZW25 as a best-in-class HER2-targeting antibody intended as a treatment option for patients with any solid tumor that expresses HER2. Our initial focus is on the treatment of patients with breast or gastric cancers who have progressed after treatment with HER2-targeted therapies or who are not eligible for approved HER2-targeted therapies based on low to intermediate levels of HER2 expression. We then intend to develop ZW25 as a therapeutic agent for other HER2-expressing cancers, including ovarian cancer. ZW25 has been granted Orphan Drug Designation for the treatment of both gastric and ovarian cancer by the FDA.

#### *HER2 and the Current Treatment of HER2-expressing Breast Cancer*

HER2 is a member of the human epidermal growth factor receptor, or HER, family of receptors that normally stimulate cell growth in response to ligand binding, receptor activation and downstream molecular signaling cascades. In cancerous cells, the gene encoding HER2 can become amplified. Amplification greatly increases the number of HER2 receptors expressed on the cell surface causing inappropriate and unregulated signaling that accelerates cell growth, reduces apoptosis and enhances cell motility leading to cancer. HER2

expression therefore provides a selective marker on the surface of tumors for therapeutic targeting. The table below illustrates the incidence of high HER2 expression in a variety of different cancer types:

**Incidence of HER2 Gene and Protein Expression in Various Cancers**

Cancer Type	Incidence of High HER2 Expression
Breast	~20%
Bladder	5-15%
Endometrial	8-35%
Ovarian	6.7%
Gastroesophageal	4-22%
Pancreatic	2-29%
Cervical	1-21%
Head & Neck	3%
Colorectal	2-3%
Lung	1-6%
Melanoma	0-5%

*Excerpted from Yan et al. HER2 aberrations in cancer: implications for therapy. Cancer Treatment Reviews 2014 40, 770-780.*

The level of HER2 expression in tumors is commonly used to guide treatment decisions for patients with breast and gastric cancers. HER2 levels in tumor biopsies are typically screened by immunohistochemistry, or IHC, and assigned a value from 0 (baseline expression levels) to 3+ (extraordinarily high expression levels). Similarly, gene amplification can be determined by fluorescence *in situ* hybridization, or FISH, and scored as either negative (two copies are normal) or positive (extra copies). The HER2 expression status of cancer can be described as High, Intermediate, Low or Negative according to the classification table below.

**Cancer Classification According to HER2 Status**

		IHC				FISH			HER2-Targeted Therapies	
		3+	2+	1+	0	Positive	Equivocal	Negative	Approved	Zymeworks Candidates
HER2 Expression Classification	HER2 High	X							Hereceptin, Perjeta, Kadcylya, Tykerb	ZW25 ZW33
	HER2 Intermediate		X			X		X	None	ZW25 ZW33
	HER2 Low			X			X	X	None	ZW25 ZW33
	HER2 Negative				X			X	N/A	N/A

HER2 expression has been associated with a worse outcome in a number of cancers, particularly HER2 High-expressing breast cancers. Prior to the advent of HER2-targeted therapies, patients with HER2-expressing breast cancer had reduced overall survival and greater likelihood of relapse relative to patients with HER2 Negative breast cancer.

Breast cancer treatment is based on disease stage, grade, hormone and HER2 receptor status. Treatment options include surgery, radiotherapy and drug therapy. Early-stage tumors are typically removed by surgery and patients may be treated with drugs to prevent cancer recurrence, referred to as adjuvant therapy. In cases when

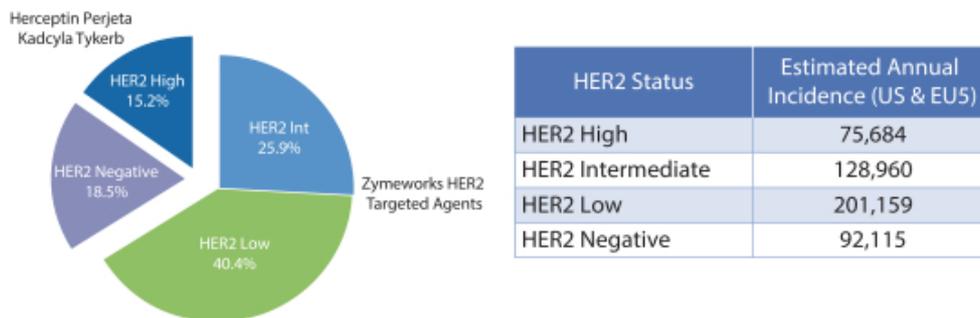
[Table of Contents](#)

the tumor is larger, patients may be administered drug treatments to reduce the tumor size prior to surgery, referred to as neoadjuvant treatment. Breast tumors that cannot be removed surgically because they are locally advanced or metastatic are treated primarily with drugs.

The type of drug prescribed for a particular breast cancer patient depends on the molecular signature of the patient’s tumor. HER2-targeted therapies are only approved for patients whose tumors are classified as HER2 High, representing approximately 20% of all breast cancer patients. Four drugs targeting HER2 have been approved by the FDA for the treatment of early and late-stage breast cancers that overexpress HER2: Herceptin (trastuzumab), Perjeta (pertuzumab), Kadcyra (ado-trastuzumab emtansine) or T-DM1, and Tykerb (lapatinib). Current standard of care for HER2 High breast cancer is built on a backbone of HER2 inhibition throughout all lines of therapy. For metastatic disease, first-line standard of care therapy consists of Herceptin, Perjeta and a taxane resulting in an average overall survival benefit of 56.5 months. Second line standard of care is Kadcyra. For patients who have progressed after treatment with Herceptin, Perjeta and Kadcyra there is no preferred treatment. Options include Herceptin plus chemotherapy, Herceptin plus Tykerb or Tykerb plus Xeloda. While HER2-targeted therapies are effective in many patients with HER2 High breast cancer, some patients fail to respond to these drugs and all patients with metastatic disease ultimately relapse.

In addition to improved options for HER2 High breast cancer, there is also a need for HER2-targeted therapies that can effectively treat cancers with lower levels of HER2 expression (HER2 Low / HER2 Intermediate). Approximately 81% of patients with HER2-expressing breast cancer have tumors that express low to intermediate levels of HER2. Currently-approved HER2-targeted therapies, such as Herceptin and Perjeta, are not sufficiently active to provide clinical benefit to patients whose tumors express low to intermediate levels of HER2 and therefore are not approved for these indications. Some of these patients may have tumors that express either or both the estrogen receptor and progesterone receptor and may receive hormone therapies such as tamoxifen, which can result in an average overall survival benefit of 43.3 months. However, tumors that lack expression of the estrogen and progesterone receptors and express HER2 at low to intermediate levels are currently classified as triple negative. These patients receive cytotoxic chemotherapy and fare much more poorly, living just 13.3 months, on average. We believe replacing or adding ZW25 to the existing standard of care for these molecular subtypes will lead to improved survival for these patients.

**Breast Cancer Classification by Graded HER2 Expression**



**A Significant Number of Breast Cancer Patients Express HER2 at Low and Intermediate Levels.** ZW25 may be able treat breast cancer patients whose tumors are currently classified as triple negative or hormone receptor positive that express HER2 at High, Intermediate and Low levels representing a substantial market.

Many gastric/gastroesophageal junction cancers also have high levels of HER2 expression. Herceptin has been approved in combination with chemotherapy as first-line treatment of HER2 High-expressing gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancers whereas other HER2-targeted agents including Kadcyra and Tykerb have

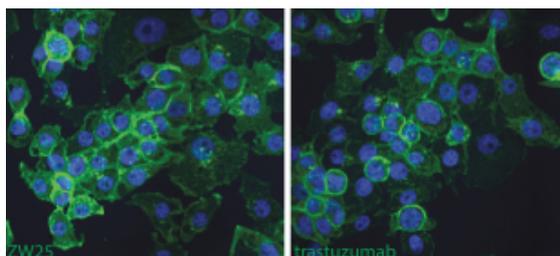
failed to demonstrate efficacy in this indication. Patients with advanced gastric cancer whose tumors express high levels of HER2 and that receive Herceptin plus chemotherapy live an average of 16 months. By comparison, patients whose tumors express low to intermediate levels of HER2 receive cytotoxic chemotherapy and live less than 12 months on average. Importantly, over 57% of gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancers express low to intermediate levels of HER2 and are ineligible for HER2-targeted therapies resulting in a significant unmet need.

A subset of other cancers, including ovarian, bladder, colorectal and NSCLC also express HER2 at varying levels and should be amenable to treatment with next-generation HER2-targeted therapies. Thus, there is a significant unmet need for biotherapeutics that can effectively treat HER2-expressing tumors not currently eligible for HER2-targeted therapies.

#### *Potential Advantages of ZW25*

ZW25 is an anti-HER2 biparatopic bispecific antibody. The biparatopic binding mode increases the number of antibodies bound to HER2 receptors at the cell surface relative to monospecific antibodies and promotes receptor clustering and internalization.

#### **ZW25 Exhibits Superior Cell Binding Compared to Monospecific HER2 Antibodies**



***ZW25 Binds to HER2 Intermediate Cancer Cells with Higher Surface Density than Trastuzumab.*** HER2-expressing JIMT-1 cells were incubated with 200 nM of ZW25 or trastuzumab and detected with fluorescent anti-human IgG Fc secondary antibodies (green). Cell nuclei (blue) were stained with DAPI.

ZW25 mediates its therapeutic effect on HER2-expressing tumors through a combination of therapeutic mechanisms including:

- enhanced effector function-mediated cytotoxicity including ADCC, CDC and ADCP as a result of increased binding and receptor saturation of tumors by ZW25; enhanced phagocytosis and presentation of tumor antigens may also lead to increased immune targeting of the tumors;
- enhanced blockade of ligand-dependent and ligand-independent tumor growth; and
- enhanced apoptosis due to increased HER2 internalization and rapid withdrawal of HER2 signaling from HER2 signaling-directed tumors.

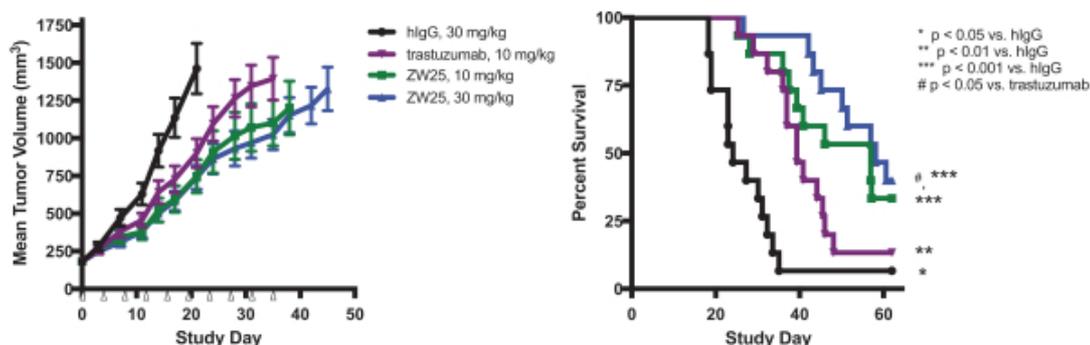
We believe that ZW25 will be an effective therapy for the treatment of HER2-expressing breast cancer patients that are either ineligible for Herceptin or Perjeta based on HER2 expression levels, or who have relapsed or refractory HER2 High breast cancers. We estimate that the annual patient population for our lead indication (first-line Stage III inoperable and Stage IV breast cancer, HER2 2+, non-FISH amplified) in the United States, France, Germany, Italy, Spain and the United Kingdom will reach 30,400 by 2023.

ZW25 may also be an effective therapy for the neoadjuvant or adjuvant treatment of HER2 Low and Intermediate-expressing early-stage breast cancer. Given the large population that could potentially benefit from ZW25 treatment, approval in any of these indications would offer significant upside to the market opportunity for ZW25.

*Preclinical Development of ZW25*

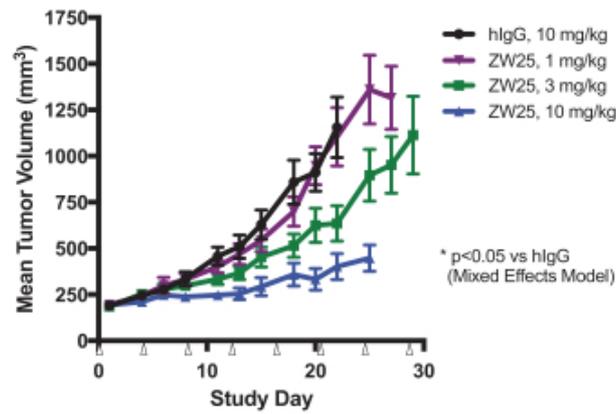
We have conducted *in vitro* and *in vivo* preclinical studies that demonstrate the significant anti-tumor activity of ZW25 against breast tumors expressing low to intermediate levels of HER2 as well as ovarian cancer. Neither Herceptin nor Perjeta have been approved for use in these settings. Our preclinical data also support the potential for superiority of ZW25 over Herceptin in gastric cancer, where ZW25 was able to achieve complete responses in a patient-derived gastric tumor model. These data are highlighted in the figures below. In addition, we have generated data that demonstrate the potential for superiority over the combination of trastuzumab plus pertuzumab as well as comparable activity to the trastuzumab-based ADC, T-DM1, in HER2 High models.

**ZW25 Inhibits Tumor Growth and Extends Survival in a HER2 1+ Patient-Derived Breast Cancer Model**



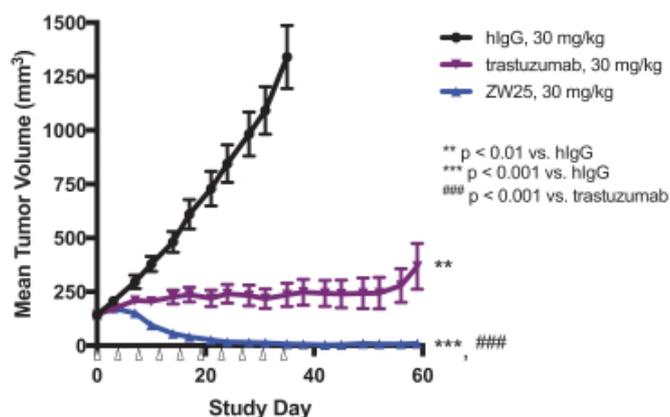
**ZW25 is Effective in a HER2 Low Patient-Derived Breast Cancer Model.** ZW25 inhibits tumor growth (left) and extends survival (right) in the HER2 Low breast cancer patient-derived xenograft model. Antibodies were administered twice weekly for five weeks (indicated by open triangles) in a blinded, randomized, placebo controlled study (n=15 mice/group) with established tumors. Survival was extended following treatment with ZW25, and the length of survival extension was statistically significant when compared to the hIgG control indicated by “\*\*\*” (p-value < 0.001).

### ZW25 Inhibits Tumor Growth in a HER2 3+ Ovarian Cancer Model



**ZW25 Exhibits Dose-Dependent Tumor Growth Inhibition in a HER2 High Ovarian Cancer Model.** Antibodies were administered at the indicated concentrations twice weekly for four weeks (indicated by open triangles) in a blinded, randomized, placebo controlled study (n=10-12 mice/group) with established tumors. Treatment with ZW25 significantly inhibited the relative growth rate of tumors when compared to the hlgG control indicated by “\*” (p-value < 0.05). These results suggest that ZW25 may be an efficacious treatment for patients with ovarian cancers that express HER2 at a High level, an indication for which current HER2-targeted therapies are not approved. This model is only moderately responsive to trastuzumab.

**ZW25 Promotes Complete Responses in a HER2 3+ Patient-Derived Gastric Cancer Model**



Response	ZW25 (n=10)	Trastuzumab (n=10)
Complete Response	7	0
Partial Response	3	1

**ZW25 Demonstrated Superior Results to Trastuzumab in a HER2 High Gastric Cancer Patient-Derived Xenograft Model.** ZW25 promotes complete regressions in a HER2 High patient-derived gastric cancer xenograft model. Antibodies were administered at 30 mg/kg twice weekly for five weeks (indicated by open triangles) in a blinded, randomized, placebo controlled study (n=10 mice/group) with established tumors. Treatment with ZW25 significantly inhibited the relative growth rate of tumors when compared to trastuzumab indicated by “###” (p-value < 0.001). Using modified Response Evaluation Criteria In Solid Tumors, or RECIST, criteria ZW25 induced complete responses in 7 of 10 mice and partial responses in 3 of 10 mice on Day 35. All the tumor responses induced by ZW25 were durable and at the completion of the study, on Day 59, 9 in 10 mice had complete responses and 1 in 10 had a partial response. These results suggest that ZW25 may be an efficacious treatment for patients with gastric cancer that express HER2 at a High level.

In safety studies, ZW25 was well-tolerated by non-human primates in a repeat-dose GLP toxicology study at up to 150 mg/kg administered every week for eight weeks followed by a five-week recovery period. No anti-drug antibodies, histopathology or treatment-related adverse events were observed and the no observed adverse effect level was considered to be 150 mg/kg. Together, these data led to the filing of an IND application for ZW25 in June 2016 and patient dosing commenced as part of an adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial in September 2016.

*Clinical Development of ZW25*

ZW25 is being evaluated in a non-randomized, open-label, adaptive Phase 1 clinical trial conducted pursuant to an IND submitted by us to the FDA that became effective in July 2016. This trial will evaluate ZW25 as a single agent (Part 1, 2) and in combination with standard of care chemotherapy (Part 3) in patients with locally-advanced (unresectable) or metastatic solid tumors that express HER2, as confirmed by IHC or FISH and as described in the IND for ZW25. The primary objectives of the trial are to characterize the safety, tolerability, pharmacokinetic profile and maximum tolerated dose of ZW25. Secondary objectives include evaluation of preliminary anti-tumor activity, as well as identification of potential biomarkers of response. We intentionally designed our Phase 1 trial to enable a potentially accelerated path to regulatory approval in patients who have

## [Table of Contents](#)

progressed after approved therapies (Part 2), while maintaining the flexibility to include components (Part 3) which could help advance ZW25 into earlier lines of therapy. The full study is expected to be complete by the end of 2018, with Part 1 (dose escalation) expected to be complete in the first quarter of 2017, at which time we anticipate having top-line data regarding overall tolerability and anti-tumor activity.

A preliminary snapshot of the clinical database from February 15, 2017 for the first two cohorts treated in the Phase 1 clinical trial has demonstrated encouraging tolerability and anti-tumor activity. Nine patients have been treated, including three at 5 mg/kg and six at 10 mg/kg. Four patients were previously diagnosed with breast cancer, four with gastric or gastroesophageal junction cancer and one with adnexal cancer, and all tumors were HER2 High. Previous treatments in all patients included Herceptin, as well as Perjeta and Kadcylla in all breast cancer patients. Three of the four breast cancer patients had also received Tykerb. The majority of adverse events have been mild or moderate in severity and there have been no dose-limiting toxicities. The best response for the nine patients per standard RECIST 1.1 criteria has been partial response in two patients, both treated at 10 mg/kg, stable disease in two patients (one at 5 mg/kg and one at 10 mg/kg) and progressive disease in five patients (two treated with 5 mg/kg, and three with 10 mg/kg). The partial responses were seen in two patients in the 10 mg/kg cohort with HER2 High-expressing breast cancer, whose disease had progressed after multiple lines of therapy, including Herceptin, Perjeta, Kadcylla and Tykerb. After two four-week cycles of treatment, one patient had a 55% decrease in their measured tumor lesions, and the second had a 33% decrease. Both patients are continuing to receive ZW25 treatment on study. One patient with stable disease also had HER2 High breast cancer, with progression after prior treatment with Herceptin, Perjeta and Kadcylla. After four cycles of treatment, this patient had an 11% decrease in tumor lesions and continue on study. The second patient with stable disease had esophageal cancer, with progression after prior treatment with Herceptin. After two cycles of treatment, this patient had a 19% decrease in tumor lesions and a decrease in the serum tumor marker carcinoembryonic antigen, or CEA, from 51 to 9 ng/ml. This patient also remains on study. One patient with gastric cancer that had progressed after multiple lines of treatment including Herceptin, was classified as having progressive disease based on RECIST 1.1 criteria due to the finding of two new lymph node lesions. However, this patient also had a 24% decrease in baseline target lesions as well as a decrease in CEA from 22 to 1.7 ng/ml. This patient's treating physician considers this patient to be benefiting from treatment despite the new radiologic findings and therefore this patient remains on study. We plan to present detailed safety and preliminary anti-tumor activity data for Part 1 at the American Society of Clinical Oncology meeting in June 2017.

If we continue to see evidence of anti-tumor activity in indications with high unmet medical need such as HER2-expressing cancer that has progressed after all therapies known to confer clinical benefit, we intend to seek fast track designation for ZW25 from the FDA. Furthermore, we would discuss with the FDA and other regulatory authorities the appropriate trial designs that might support accelerated approval using a surrogate endpoint such as response rate. We would also consider seeking breakthrough designation if the data were considered to be strongly compelling, such as evidence of a response rate or clinical benefit rate well above the expected rate. The FDA and corresponding regulatory authorities will ultimately review our clinical results and determine whether our product candidates are safe and effective and whether accelerated regulatory approval is possible. No regulatory agency has made any such determination that any of our product candidates are safe or effective for use by the general public for any indication nor has any regulatory authority provided any indication that ZW25 will be eligible for accelerated approval.

As ZW25 mediates its therapeutic effect through several mechanisms of action, we believe this antibody has the potential to be a best-in-class therapy providing clinical benefit to patients with any HER2-expressing cancer, including those with low to intermediate levels of HER2 that are not eligible for other HER2-targeted therapies, as well as those patients who have progressed after prior HER2-targeted therapies. The FDA has granted Orphan Drug Designation to ZW25 for the treatment of both gastric and ovarian cancer.

## **ZW33: Anti-HER2 Biparatopic Bispecific Asymmetric ADC**

### *Overview*

ZW33 is a bispecific anti-HER2 ADC that is based on the same antibody framework as ZW25 but armed with a cytotoxic payload. ZW33 retains the mechanisms of action of ZW25 but takes advantage of high levels of antibody-target internalization to deliver a potent cytotoxin. We are developing ZW33 as a potential best-in-class HER2-targeting ADC for several indications characterized by HER2 expression including breast cancers that have progressed or are refractory to existing HER2-targeted therapies as well as ovarian cancer. The FDA has granted Orphan Drug Designation for ZW33 for the treatment of ovarian cancer. We plan on initiating a Phase 1 clinical trial in patients with HER2-expressing tumors in the second half of 2017.

### *Current Treatment of HER2 High-expressing Advanced Breast Cancer*

Four drugs targeting HER2 have been approved by the FDA for the treatment of early and late stage breast cancers with HER2 High classification: Herceptin, Perjeta, Kadcyra and Tykerb. Current standard of care for HER2 High breast cancer is built on a backbone of HER2 inhibition throughout all lines of therapy. For metastatic disease, first-line standard of care therapy consists of Herceptin, Perjeta and a taxane based on the results of the CLEOPATRA study, where the combination of Herceptin, Perjeta and docetaxel was associated with a median progression-free survival, or PFS, of 18.7 months, and a median overall survival, or OS, of 56.6 months compared to a median PFS of 12.7 months and median OS of 40.8 months with Herceptin and docetaxel. Second line standard of care currently consists of treatment with Kadcyra based on the EMILIA study, where Kadcyra was associated with a median PFS of 9.6 months, and OS of 30.9 months compared to a median PFS of 6.4 months and median OS of 25.1 months for the combination of Xeloda and Tykerb. For patients who have progressed after treatment with Herceptin, Perjeta, and Kadcyra there is no preferred treatment. Options include Herceptin plus chemotherapy, Herceptin plus Tykerb or Tykerb plus Xeloda; these are generally thought to be associated with a median PFS of approximately four months.

Despite the clinical benefit obtained with current HER2-targeted therapy patients with HER2 High breast cancer, patients with metastatic disease ultimately relapse, and not all patients respond. Therefore, there remains a significant unmet medical need for a HER2-targeting agent that is effective in refractory and resistant HER2 High cancers.

In addition to the unmet need in HER2 High breast cancer, there are a number of other cancers that express HER2 at varying levels, including ovarian cancer. Ovarian cancer is the leading cause of death among women with gynecological tumors. HER2 expression may be found in up to 60% of ovarian cancers, with approximately 15% of patients with either intermediate or high levels of expression. There are currently no HER2-targeted agents approved for use in ovarian cancer.

### *Potential Advantages of ZW33*

ZW33 is an anti-HER2 biparatopic bispecific antibody conjugated to the potent cytotoxin mertansine, or DM1. DM1 is a well-characterized and clinically validated ADC cytotoxin that destabilizes tubulin and selectively inhibits cell division in rapidly dividing tissues. Compared to existing HER2-targeted therapies, ZW33 mediates a superior therapeutic effect on HER2-expressing tumors through a combination of mechanisms, including:

- enhanced toxin-mediated cytotoxicity due to increased HER2-mediated internalization and delivery of the cytotoxic payload;
- enhanced apoptosis due to increased HER2 internalization and rapid withdrawal of HER2 signaling from HER2 signaling-dependent tumors;
- enhanced blockade of ligand-dependent and ligand-independent tumor growth;
- enhanced effector function-mediated cytotoxicity including ADCC, CDC and ADCP as a result of increased binding and receptor saturation of tumors by ZW33; and

## [Table of Contents](#)

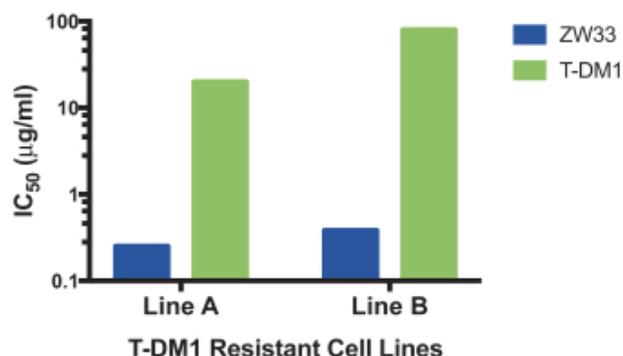
- enhanced phagocytosis and presentation of tumor antigen that may lead to increase immune targeting of the tumors and potential synergy with checkpoint modulators.

The initial development of ZW33 will focus on patients with HER2 high-expressing breast cancer who have progressed on or are refractory to approved HER2-targeted agents, including Herceptin, Perjeta and Kadcyla (or the combination therapy of Herceptin, Perjeta and chemotherapy in metastatic breast cancer). In preclinical studies, ZW33 has demonstrated superior activity compared to Kadcyla and other existing HER2-targeted therapies. If ZW33 demonstrates superiority in head-to-head clinical trials, we believe it could replace Kadcyla as the preferred therapy for second line treatment of HER2+ metastatic cancer, for which the estimated annual patient population for this indication in the United States and EU is expected to reach 10,700 by 2023. Ultimately, ZW33 could be used as a follow-on therapy for ZW25, mirroring the development strategy employed for Kadcyla as follow-on therapy for Herceptin. ZW33 also has the potential to be a treatment for other HER2-expressing cancers, including ovarian, which would expand the addressable market. The FDA and corresponding regulatory authorities will ultimately review our clinical results and determine whether our product candidates are effective. No regulatory agency has made any such determination that ZW33 is effective for use by the general public for any indication.

### *Preclinical Development of ZW33*

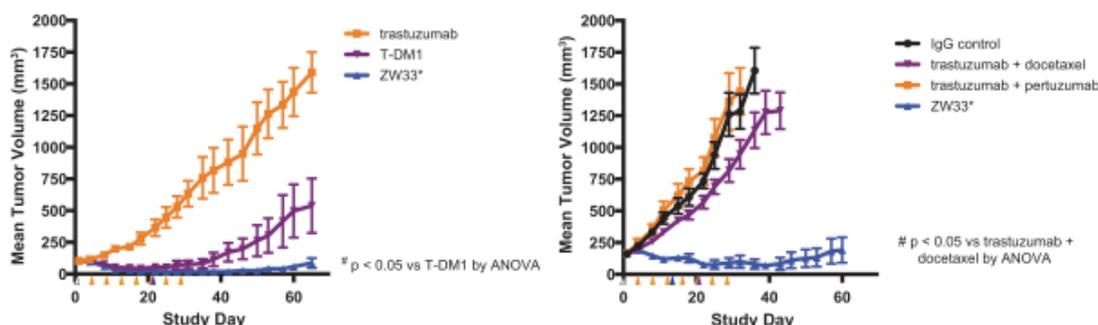
*In vitro* and *in vivo* preclinical studies demonstrate that ZW33 can inhibit tumor growth, including complete regressions, in multiple trastuzumab-resistant xenograft models. In addition, breast cancer cell lines with acquired resistance to trastuzumab or T-DM1 remained sensitive to growth inhibition by ZW33 with subnanomolar potency. ZW33 is also more efficacious than T-DM1 in trastuzumab-resistant patient-derived breast cancer models. Furthermore, we have shown that ZW33 can induce regression of aggressive tumors as a second-line therapy in ovarian and breast cancer xenograft models. Taken together, these data sets suggest strong efficacy in resistant and refractory models of HER2-expressing cancer.

**ZW33 Retains Potency Against T-DM1 Resistant Cell Lines**



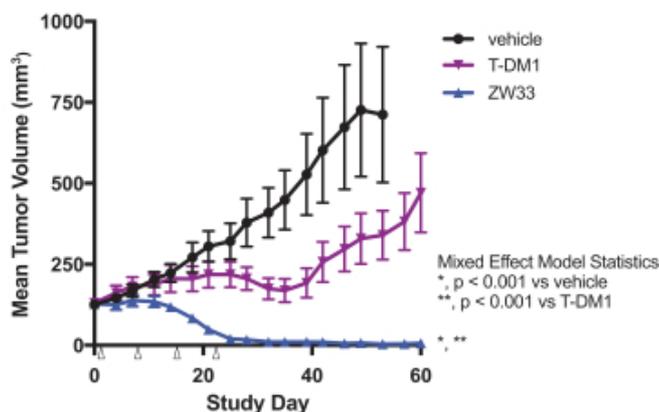
**ZW33 Retains Potency Against T-DM1 Resistant Cell Lines.** Breast cancer cell lines with defined HER2 gene copy number, HER2 protein expression, and HER2 receptor phosphorylation were developed *in vivo* to have acquired resistance to T-DM1. Cells were then treated with serial dilutions of ZW33 or T-DM1. The concentration of ZW33 (blue) required to inhibit 50% of cell growth, or IC<sub>50</sub>, was significantly lower than T-DM1 (green).

**ZW33\* Demonstrates Superior Tumor Growth Inhibition Compared to Other HER2-Targeted Therapies in HER2 3+ Patient-Derived Breast Cancer Models**



**ZW33\* Demonstrates Superior Tumor Growth Inhibition as Compared to Other HER2-Targeted Therapies in a Trastuzumab-resistant HER2 High Tumor Model.** A first-generation ZW33 (\*prior to affinity optimization) significantly inhibited tumor growth in trastuzumab-resistant HER2 High patient-derived breast tumors as indicated by “#” (p-value < 0.05). In the left panel, trastuzumab was administered at 15 mg/kg to load, and then 10 mg/kg twice weekly for four weeks (indicated by orange triangles) and ADCs were administered at 10 mg/kg to load, and then 5 mg/kg on day 22 (indicated by the blue triangle). In the study on the right panel, ZW33 was administered at 10 mg/kg on days 1 and 14 (indicated by the blue triangle; n=7 mice/group), trastuzumab + pertuzumab at 5 mg/kg each twice weekly for four weeks (indicated by the orange triangles) and docetaxel was administered at 20 mg/kg on day 1 and day 22 intraperitoneally (indicated by the purple triangle; n=8-10 mice/group). All other agents were administered intravenously.

**ZW33 Promotes Regressions in a Heterogeneous HER2-Expressing Patient-Derived Ovarian Cancer Model**



Efficacy Criteria	ZW33 (n=10)	T-DM1 (n=10)
Tumor Growth Inhibition (%)	313%	65%
<b>3D RECIST Scores</b>		
Complete Response	8	0
Partial Response	2	1
Stable Disease	-	3
Progressive Disease	-	6

**Treatment with ZW33 Significantly Inhibited Tumor Growth Rate in OVXF1320 Ovarian Tumors.** ZW33 was able to achieve complete responses in a patient-derived tumor model of serous adenocarcinoma of the ovary. ZW33 or T-DM1 were administered at 5 mg/kg weekly for 4 weeks (indicated by open triangles) in a blinded, randomized, placebo controlled study (n=10 mice/group) with established tumors. Treatment with ZW33 significantly inhibited the relative growth rate of tumors when compared to T-DM1 indicated by “\*\*\*” (p-value < 0.001). Using modified 3D RECIST criteria on Day 53, ZW33 induced complete responses in 8 of 10 mice and partial response in 2 of 10 mice. The tumor responses induced by ZW33 were durable suggest that ZW33 may be an efficacious treatment for patients with ovarian cancer that express HER2.

ZW33 has been evaluated in a repeat-dose GLP toxicology and pharmacokinetics study in non-human primates administered weekly for eight weeks followed by an eight-week recovery period and final results are expected in the first quarter of 2017. Based on preliminary results, the no observed adverse effect level, or NOAEL, of ZW33 was determined to be 3 mg/kg. cGMP manufacturing has been completed in support of our planned IND submission in the first quarter of 2017.

*Anticipated Clinical Development of ZW33*

We plan to evaluate ZW33 as a monotherapy in a non-randomized, open-label Phase 1 clinical trial in patients with HER2 High breast and ovarian cancers, whose disease has progressed after all standard of care therapies. We intend to initiate a Phase 1 clinical trial for ZW33 in the second half of 2017.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The primary objective of the trial will be to characterize the safety, tolerability, pharmacokinetics and maximum tolerated dose of ZW33. The secondary objectives for the trial will include evaluation of preliminary anti-tumor activity of ZW33, as well as an exploration of potential biomarkers of response. Based upon the observed safety and activity, subsequent development may also focus on early lines of therapy in both HER2 High breast and all HER2-expressing ovarian tumors as well as other HER2-expressing cancers. Ultimately, ZW33 may be developed as a later line of therapy for patients who have progressed after ZW25 and chemotherapy regimens, similar to the development path of Kadcyła in Herceptin-experienced patients.

### ***Other Asymetric Product Candidates***

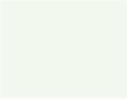
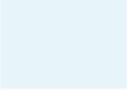
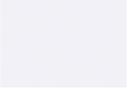
We maintain ongoing discovery efforts to identify and test new target combinations, product candidates and platform technologies that have the potential to address unmet clinical needs. We have developed multiple undisclosed preclinical product candidates targeting a combination of known and novel tumor antigens based on our platform technologies. All of these candidates remain unpartnered. From this pool of discovery candidates, we plan to identify and advance multiple programs into clinical trials in the future.

## **Strategic Partnerships and Collaborations**

### ***Our Strategic Partnerships***

Our unique combination of proprietary protein engineering capabilities and resulting therapeutic platform technologies was initially validated through strategic partnerships with Merck and Lilly. We subsequently entered into broader strategic partnerships with Celgene and GSK and a collaboration and cross-licensing agreement with Daiichi. Following the completion of the initial agreements with Merck, Lilly and GSK, the relationships were subsequently expanded to include either additional licenses or therapeutic platforms. These relationships provide our strategic partners with access to components of our proprietary Asymetric and EFECT therapeutic platforms for their development of a defined number of protein therapeutics, for which we will not have ownership. These strategic partnerships have provided us with non-dilutive funding as well as access to proprietary therapeutic assets, which increase our ability to rapidly advance our product candidates while maintaining worldwide commercial rights to our wholly-owned therapeutic pipeline. To date, we have received over \$24.8 million in the form of non-refundable upfront payments and milestone payments and are additionally eligible to receive up to \$1.3 billion in development and \$2.8 billion in commercial milestone payments available under our existing collaboration agreements, as well as tiered royalties on potential future product sales. It is possible, however, that our strategic partners' programs do not advance as currently contemplated, which would negatively effect the amount of development and commercial milestone payments and royalties on potential future product sales we may receive. Importantly, these partnerships include predominantly non-target-exclusive licenses for any of our therapeutic platforms; thus we are free to develop therapeutics to many high-value targets utilizing our platforms.

Our key strategic partnerships are summarized in the graphic on the following page.

Programs				Stages	
Partners	Events	Programs	Enabling Platform(s)	DISCOVERY/ PRECLINICAL	CLINICAL
	Announced: 2011 Milestone #1: 2012 Milestone #2: 2013 Expanded: 2014	<b>Multiple</b> Up to 3	Azymetric EFECT		
	Announced: 2014 Expanded: 2014 Milestone #1: 2015 Milestone #2: 2016	<b>Multiple</b> Up to 4 (including Immuno-Oncology)	Azymetric		
	Announced: 2015	<b>Multiple</b> Up to 8	Azymetric		
	Announced: 2015	<b>Multiple</b> Up to 10	EFECT		
	Announced: 2016	<b>Multiple</b> Up to 6	Azymetric		
	Announced: 2016	<b>One</b> (Immuno-Oncology)	Azymetric EFECT		

**Merck**

In August 2011, we entered into a research and license agreement with Merck, which was amended and restated in December 2014, to develop and commercialize three bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric and EFECT platforms. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Merck a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody sequence pair exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$190.75 million, including an upfront payment (\$1.25 million received in 2011), research milestone payments totaling \$3.5 million (\$2.0 million and \$1.5 million received in 2012 and 2013, respectively), payments for completion of IND-enabling studies of up to \$6.0 million, development milestone payments of up to \$66.0 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$114.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks patent coverage on products, or (ii) for five years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates will be reduced.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Merck to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric and EFECT platforms. Merck provides funding for a portion of our internal and external research costs in support of the collaboration. After the conclusion of the research program, Merck will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for Merck and us including the right for Merck to terminate the agreement in its sole discretion with advance notice to us. The agreement will terminate on the later

## [Table of Contents](#)

of: (a) the expiry of the last patent covering a Merck licensed product excluding methods of making the product; or (b) the expiry of the royalty payment obligations by Merck. During the research term, the agreement will terminate if the antibodies do not achieve all the research milestones or if Merck elects to not further develop the antibodies after the research term.

### ***Lilly (2013)***

In December 2013, we entered into a licensing and collaboration agreement with Lilly to research, develop and commercialize one bispecific antibody, with an option for a second antibody, generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Lilly a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody target pair-specific exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$103.0 million, including an upfront payment (\$1.0 million received in 2013) and per product potential milestone payments, comprised of research milestone payments totaling \$1.0 million (\$1.0 million received in 2015), IND submission milestone payments of \$2.0 million, development milestone payments of \$8.0 million and commercial milestone payments of \$40 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for ten years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates may be potentially reduced.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Lilly to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric platform. Lilly provides funding for a portion of our internal and external research costs in support of the collaboration. After the conclusion of the research program, Lilly will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing, and commercialization of the products.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for Lilly and us including the right for Lilly to terminate the agreement in its sole discretion with advance notice to us. The agreement will terminate on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis upon the latter of the product being no longer covered by certain patents related to the Lilly licensed product, or 10 years after the first commercial sale of the Lilly licensed product in such a country.

### ***Lilly (2014)***

In October 2014, we entered into a second licensing and collaboration agreement with Lilly to research, develop and commercialize three bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. This agreement did not alter or amend the initial agreement entered in 2013. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Lilly a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody target-pair exclusive (for two bispecific antibodies) and an antibody sequence pair-specific (for one bispecific antibody) license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$375.0 million, comprised of research milestone payments of up to \$6.0 million (\$2.0 million earned in 2016), IND submission milestone payments of up to \$24.0 million, development milestone payments of up to \$60.0 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$285.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for ten years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates may be potentially reduced. In conjunction with this collaboration agreement, Lilly purchased approximately \$24.0 million of our common shares.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Lilly to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric platform. We are responsible for our internal and external research costs in support of this collaboration. After the conclusion of the research program, Lilly will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The agreement contains customary termination rights for Lilly and us with advance notice to us, in addition to (i) both Lilly and us have certain rights to terminate on a program by program basis due to scientific failure, (ii) Lilly can terminate the agreement on a target pair by target pair basis in its sole discretion after the payment of the initial license fee for such a target pair, (iii) Lilly can terminate the agreement or specific target pairs due to an incurable material breach by us, and under specific conditions, Lilly shall have certain rights to continue the research, development and commercialization of products with their license payment, milestone and royalty obligations reduced by 50% and (iv) Lilly shall have the right to terminate the agreement or specific target pairs in the event of us undergoing a change of control, while retaining certain rights. If the affected research programs have not completed specific research stages, Lilly's obligations to the license payments, milestones and royalties shall be reduced in a tiered fashion ranging from 25-75%.

### ***Celgene***

In December 2014, we entered into a collaboration agreement with Celgene to research, develop and commercialize up to eight bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Celgene a right to exercise options to worldwide, royalty-bearing, antibody sequence pair-specific exclusive licenses to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We received an upfront payment of \$8.0 million, which was accounted for as upfront collaboration consideration received in 2014. Celgene has the right to exercise options on up to eight programs and if Celgene opts in on a program, we are eligible to receive up to \$164.0 million per product candidate (up to \$1.3 billion for all eight programs), comprised of a commercial license option payment of \$7.5 million, development milestone payments of up to \$101.5 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$55.0 million. No development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date.

In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years, beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. Celgene also has the right, prior to the first dosing of a patient in a Phase 3 clinical trial for a product, to buy down the royalty to a flat low-single digit rate with a payment of \$10.0 million per percentage point. In addition to this collaboration agreement, the parties also entered into an equity subscription agreement under which Celgene paid \$8.6 million for common shares.

Under the agreement, we are collaborating with Celgene to generate and develop a number of bispecific antibodies during the research program, the term of which expires in April 2018 but can be extended by Celgene by 24 months if Celgene makes an additional payment. After the conclusion of the research program, Celgene will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for Celgene and us including the right of Celgene to terminate the agreement in its entirety or on a product-by-product basis in its sole discretion with advance notice to us. The agreement will terminate on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis upon the later of the expiration of the last-expiring patent related to the Celgene licensed product, or 10 years after the first commercial sale of the Celgene licensed product in such a country. If Celgene does not exercise its option for the commercial license, the agreement will terminate on a product-by-product basis for which the option was not exercised.

### ***GSK (2015)***

In December 2015, we entered into a collaboration and license agreement with GSK to research, develop and commercialize up to 10 new Fc-engineered monoclonal and bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the EFECT and Azymetric platforms. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted GSK a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody target-exclusive license to new intellectual property generated to the EFECT platform

## [Table of Contents](#)

under this collaboration and a non-exclusive license to the Azymetric platform to research, develop and commercialize future licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$1.1 billion, including research, development and commercial milestone payments of up to \$110.0 million for each product. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low-single digits on net sales of products, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks patent coverage on products or certain joint patent coverage on products, or (ii) for 10 years beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage or certain joint patent coverage on products, royalty rates will be reduced. No development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date. We retained the right to develop up to four products, free of royalties, using the new intellectual property generated in this collaboration, and after a period of time, to grant licenses to such intellectual property for development of additional products by third-parties.

Under the collaboration and license agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with GSK to generate new Fc-engineered antibodies. Each party will bear its own costs for the responsibilities assigned to it during the research period. After the conclusion of the research period, each party will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of its own respective products. The research period will terminate when the “research collaboration plan” is complete or on December 1, 2018, whichever is earlier. The “research collaboration plan” is defined in section 3.1.3 of the collaboration and license agreement, which is filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part. During the term of the agreement and solely based on the outcome of the research collaboration, we have granted GSK exclusive rights to develop and commercialize monospecific antibodies against targets nominated by GSK. If GSK develops bispecific antibodies using its own platform approaches, we have granted GSK exclusive rights to develop and commercialize such antibodies comprising of specific antibody sequence pairs.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for GSK and us including the right for GSK to terminate the agreement in its sole discretion with advance notice to us, after the research period has advanced beyond a specified stage, and allowing the parties to terminate the agreement by mutual agreement during the research period. If GSK elects not to advance any product into research and development, the agreement will terminate at the end of the research period. If GSK elects to advance one or more products incorporating intellectual property generated under the research period for further research and development, the agreement will terminate on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis upon the latter of the product being no longer covered by a patent related to the GSK licensed product, or 10 years after the first commercial sale of the GSK licensed product in such a country.

### **GSK (2016)**

In April 2016, we entered into a licensing agreement with GSK to research, develop and commercialize up to six bispecific antibodies generated through the use of the Azymetric platform. This may include bispecific antibodies incorporating new engineered Fc regions generated under the 2015 GSK agreement outlined in the preceding section. Under the terms of this agreement, we granted GSK a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody sequence pair-specific exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$908.0 million, including an upfront payment as a technology access fee (\$6.0 million received in 2016), research milestone payments of up to \$30.0 million, development milestone payments of up to \$152.0 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$720.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties in the low to mid-single digits on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks patent coverage on products, or (ii) for ten years beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. If there is no Zymeworks patent coverage on products, royalty rates may be potentially reduced. No research, development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date. GSK has the right, prior to the first dosing of a patient in a Phase 3 clinical trial for a product, to buy down the royalty payable on such product by only 1% with a payment of \$10.0 million.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Under the agreement, GSK will bear all responsibility and all costs associated with research, development and commercialization of products generated using the Azymetric platform.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for GSK and us including the right for GSK to terminate the agreement in its sole discretion with advance notice to us. Termination provisions allow for GSK to terminate the agreement or specific antibody sequence pairs due to an incurable material breach by us, and under specific conditions, GSK shall have certain rights to continue the research, development, and commercialization of products with their license payment, milestone, and royalty obligations reduced by 50%.

### ***Daiichi***

In September 2016, we entered into a collaboration and cross-license agreement with Daiichi to research, develop and commercialize one bispecific antibody generated through the use of the Azymetric and EFACT platforms. Under the terms of the agreement, we granted Daiichi a worldwide, royalty-bearing antibody sequence pair-specific exclusive license to research, develop and commercialize certain licensed products. We are eligible to receive up to \$149.9 million, including an upfront payment as a technology access fee of \$2.0 million (received in 2016), research and development milestone payments and a commercial option payment totaling up to \$67.9 million and commercial milestone payments of up to \$80.0 million. In addition, we are eligible to receive tiered royalties ranging from the low single digits up to 10% on product sales, with the royalty term being, on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis, either (i) for as long as there is Zymeworks platform patent coverage on products, or (ii) for ten years beginning from the first commercial sale, whichever period is longer. No research, development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date. We also gained non-exclusive rights to develop and commercialize up to three products using Daiichi's proprietary immune-oncology antibodies, with royalties in the low single digits to be paid to Daiichi on sales of such products.

Under the agreement, we are sharing certain research and development responsibilities with Daiichi to generate bispecific antibodies with the Azymetric platform. Daiichi is responsible for our internal and external research costs in support of this collaboration during the research program term. After the research program term, Daiichi will be solely responsible for the further research, development, manufacturing and commercialization of the products. Under the non-exclusive immuno-oncology antibody license to Zymeworks, we are solely responsible for all research, development and commercialization of the resulting products.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for Daiichi and us including the right for Daiichi to terminate the rights to our therapeutic platforms in its sole discretion with advance notice to us and for us to terminate our rights to Daiichi's antibodies with advance notice to Daiichi. The agreement shall terminate, with respect to Daiichi's license, if Daiichi fails to exercise its option or, on a Product-by-Product basis, until expiration of Daiichi's royalty obligations.

### **Intellectual Property**

Our business success will depend significantly on our ability to:

- secure, maintain and enforce patent and other proprietary protection for our core technologies, inventions and know-how;
- obtain and maintain licenses to key third-party intellectual property owned by such third parties;
- preserve the confidentiality of our trade secrets; and
- operate without infringing upon valid, enforceable third-party patents and other rights.

We seek to secure and maintain patent protection for the composition of matter, manufacturing processes and methods of use for our drug candidates and for our underlying protein engineering capabilities and

therapeutic platforms including Azymetric, ZymeLink, EFECT, AlbuCORE and ZymeCAD. We also utilize trade secrets, careful monitoring and limited disclosure of our proprietary information where patent protection is not appropriate. We also protect our proprietary information by ensuring that our employees, consultants, contractors and other advisors execute agreements requiring non-disclosure and assignment of inventions prior to their engagement. We will continue to expand our intellectual property holdings by seeking patent protection for new compositions of matter, new features and applications of our core therapeutic platforms, and innovative new therapeutic platforms, in the United States and other jurisdictions. We will also supplement internal innovation through in-licensing of new technologies and compositions of matter as appropriate. We intend to take advantage of any available data exclusivity, market exclusivity, patent term adjustment and patent term extensions.

We routinely monitor the status of existing and emerging intellectual property disclosed by third parties that may impact our business, and to the extent we identify any such disclosures, by evaluating them and taking appropriate courses of action.

As of February 16, 2017, our patent portfolio consists of 49 active patent families, 45 with filed Patent Cooperation Treaty, or PCT, applications, 39 of which are in the national phase, and three of which consist of filed U.S. provisional applications. Of these, 21 families relate to our key product candidates and programs including ZW25, ZW33 and our therapeutic platform technology, described elsewhere in this prospectus, and 28 relate to other potential product candidates or technologies that we do not consider material to our business at this time. Three patent families that are not material to our business are co-owned with VAR2 Pharmaceuticals ApS. One patent family that is not material to our business is co-owned with the National Research Council Canada. None of these co-owned patent families relate to our therapeutic platforms or our lead product candidates, ZW25 and ZW33. We do not have a contract with VAR2 Pharmaceuticals ApS covering such patents. We have 22 issued patents, nine of which are U.S. patents, and all of which are owned by the company.

### ***Therapeutic Antibody Portfolio***

Our therapeutic antibody patent portfolio is directed to specific compositions of matter and methods of treatment for Zymeworks' product candidates, including target-specific interactions and immunomodulatory mechanisms.

- **ZW25 and ZW33:** We own the ZW25 and ZW33 patent portfolio, including an international patent application filed under the PCT that is now in the national phase with applications pending in Australia, Brazil, Canada, China, Europe, India, Japan, Korea, Mexico, Russia and the United States. This application relates to the composition of matter, methods of making and uses of biparatopic anti-HER2 bispecific antibodies and ADCs, and if issued, are expected to expire in 2034, absent any adjustments or extensions. An additional PCT application is directed to additional treatment methods using ZW25 and a U.S. provisional application is directed to additional treatment methods using ZW33.

ZW25 and ZW33 are also protected by our two patent families relating to the Azymetric Fc, as described below.

### ***Therapeutic Platform Technology Portfolio***

The therapeutic platform technology portfolio includes biological formats and variants thereof, including the Azymetric platform, the ZymeLink platform, the EFECT platform, the AlbuCORE platform and specific applications, manufacturing methods and assays related to the platform constructs and underlying computational chemistry.

- **Azymetric:** We own a portfolio of five patent families relating to the Azymetric platform for engineering Fc and Fab constructs for the development of bispecific antibodies. Two of the patent families relate to engineered antibody Fc region polypeptides having amino acid substitutions that preferentially form heterodimers, with PCT national phase applications pending in Australia, Brazil, Canada, China, Europe,

## [Table of Contents](#)

India, Japan, Korea, Mexico, Russia and the United States. One U.S. patent has issued with 1,102 days of patent term adjustment and is expected to expire on November 10, 2034. If issued, the remaining patents in these families are expected to expire between 2031 and 2032, absent any adjustments or extensions. Three patent families (two in the PCT national phase in Australia, Brazil, Canada, China, Europe, India, Japan, Korea, Mexico, Russia and the United States and one PCT application) relate to antibodies having amino acid substitutions in Fab-region heavy and light chains for making correctly paired bispecific antibodies. These patent families are directed to compositions, methods of producing and uses of heterodimeric antibodies. If issued, patents in these families are expected to expire between 2031 and 2036, absent any adjustments or extensions.

- **ZymeLink:** We own the ZymeLink patent portfolio relating to novel toxin molecules and novel linkers by means of which these toxins can be conjugated to antibodies and other protein scaffolds. Two PCT applications are in the national phase in key jurisdictions, including Australia, Brazil, Canada, China, Europe, India, Israel, Japan, Korea, Mexico, South Africa and the United States, and are directed to novel hemiaesterlin toxin derivatives, novel linker compositions, hemiaesterlin-linker compositions, and antibody-hemiaesterlin conjugate compositions one of which has issued in the United States. An additional PCT application is directed to novel auristatin derivatives, auristatin-linker compositions and antibody-auristatin conjugates. We also own a U.S. provisional application directed to novel tubulysin derivatives, tubulysin-linker conjugates and antibody-tubulysin conjugates. Any patents that may issue from these families are expected to expire between 2034 and 2037, absent any adjustments or extensions
- **EFECT:** The EFECT platform for engineering Fc constructs with modulated FcγR-binding and Fc effector function is protected by two PCT patent applications, which we own, both of which are in the national stage and are pending in key jurisdictions, including Australia, Brazil, Canada, China, Europe, India, Japan, Russia and the United States. One patent has issued in the United States. These patent families are directed to compositions of matter and methods of making Fc constructs with altered FcγR-binding and Fc effector function; if issued, they are expected to expire between 2031 and 2034, absent any adjustments or extensions.
- **AlbuCORE:** We own two PCT national phase patent applications relating to engineered multivalent human serum albumin AlbuCORE which are pending in Australia, Canada, China, Europe, India, Japan and the U.S. Two patents have issued in the U.S. The patents in these families, if issued, are expected to expire between 2032 and 2033, absent any adjustments or extensions.
- **Computational Chemistry:** We own a portfolio of 13 families of computational chemistry patents and patent applications which relate to the computational and algorithmic advances incorporated into the ZymeCAD suite of applications, including advances in general molecular modeling, conformational dynamics, docking, distal mutations, and molecular packing, as well as parallelization and graphical data analysis. Three of these patents have issued in the United States. Any patents that issue from these families are expected to expire between 2027 and 2035, absent any adjustments or extensions.

### **Technology Licensing and In-Licensed Intellectual Property**

We identify and selectively enter into technology licensing agreements and intellectual property in-licensing agreements to support pipeline advancement. Key agreements include:

- **CDRD Ventures Inc. (CVI; 2016):** We have entered into an assignment agreement with CVI, as part of our acquisition of Kairos, to have all of CVI's interests in the Kairos patents and intellectual property assigned to Zymeworks. Zymeworks may be required to make future payments to CVI upon the direct achievement of certain development milestones for products incorporating certain Kairos intellectual property, as well as royalty payments on the net sales of such products. For out-licensed products and technologies incorporating certain Kairos intellectual property, the Company may be required to pay CVI a mid-single digit percentage of the future revenue as a result of a revenue sharing agreement. We are not currently required to make any payments to CVI under this agreement.
- **Daiichi (2016):** We have entered into a Collaboration and Cross License Agreement with Daiichi whereby Daiichi granted us a non-exclusive, worldwide, and sub-licensable license for the development of

## [Table of Contents](#)

internal therapeutic programs using certain of Daiichi's immuno-oncology antibodies. We agreed to pay Daiichi a low single-digit royalty on product sales.

- **Innovative Targeting Solutions Inc. (ITS; 2016):** We have entered into a non-exclusive licensing agreement with ITS which grants us the right to use ITS' HuTARG discovery platform for the generation of therapeutic antibodies and other protein therapeutics. Pursuant to this agreement, ITS granted us a non-exclusive, worldwide, sub-licensable commercial license to its technology for the development of our internal therapeutic programs. This agreement requires us to make licensing payments to ITS of up to \$12.0 million over the five years following August 2016.
- **National Research Council Canada (NRC; 2013):** We entered into a research and licensing agreement with the NRC which grants us the right to use certain NRC intellectual property and arising intellectual property generated as a result of our collaboration in the research and development of product candidates, including ZW25, ZW33, and future product candidates. Licensing terms are tiered depending the level of NRC's contribution, and include obligations to pay annual license maintenance fees, intellectual property filing milestones, clinical and commercial milestones, and in select programs, low single-digit tiered royalties on product sales.
- **Selexis (2014):** We have entered into a commercial agreement with Selexis under which we were granted rights to manufacture and commercialize ZW25 and ZW33 using a proprietary Selexis cell line. Licensing terms include an annual license maintenance fee, and clinical, regulatory, and commercial milestones based on sales thresholds.
- **ProBioGen (2015):** We have entered into a commercial agreement granting us the right to manufacture and commercialize one of our product candidates using ProBioGen's proprietary GlymaxX technology for generating afucosylated antibodies. This license includes certain additional non-exclusive patent rights sub-licensed by this vendor. Licensing terms include preclinical, clinical, and commercial milestones based on sales thresholds.

## **Manufacturing**

We rely on third party contract manufacturing organizations to provide manufacturing, linker-toxin conjugation, and fill-finish services in order to generate all of the therapeutic antibody supply required for our non-clinical and clinical studies. To retain focus on our expertise in developing new product candidates, we do not currently plan to develop or operate in-house manufacturing capacity. Our bispecific therapeutic antibody candidates require standard manufacturing and chemistry manufacturing and control, CMC, processes typical of those required for monoclonal antibody manufacturing. We therefore expect to continue to be able to develop product candidates that can be manufactured in a cost-effective fashion by our network of well-validated third party contract manufacturing organizations.

Through our contract manufacturing organizations, we currently have sufficient supply of our product candidates to carry out ongoing and planned preclinical studies. We also have sufficient cGMP-grade supply of ZW25 and ZW33 on hand to complete Phase 1b/2a and Phase 1 clinical trials, respectively. An additional cGMP production run is being planned to generate sufficient supply of ZW33 for a Phase 2 clinical trial. We plan to identify redundant suppliers and manufacturing, toxin conjugation, and fill-finish services for all development products candidates prior to submission to the FDA.

## **Competition**

The biopharmaceutical industry is characterized by rapidly advancing technologies, intense competition and a strong emphasis on proprietary products. While we believe that our technology, knowledge, experience and scientific resources provide us with competitive advantages, we face potential competition from many different sources, including major pharmaceutical, specialty pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies, academic institutions and governmental agencies and public and private research institutions. Any product candidates that

## [Table of Contents](#)

we successfully develop and commercialize will compete with existing therapies and new therapies that may become available in the future.

With respect to target discovery activities, competitors and other third parties, including academic and clinical researchers, may be able to access rare families and identify targets before we do.

Many of the companies against which we are competing or against which we may compete in the future have significantly greater financial resources and expertise in research and development, manufacturing, preclinical testing, conducting clinical trials, obtaining regulatory approvals and marketing approved products than we do. Mergers and acquisitions in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries may result in even more resources being concentrated among a smaller number of our competitors. Smaller or early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaboration arrangements with large and established companies. These competitors also compete with us in recruiting and retaining qualified scientific and management personnel, establishing clinical trial sites, recruiting patients for clinical trials, and by acquiring technologies complementary to, or necessary for, our programs.

The key competitive factors affecting the success of all of our product candidates, if approved, are likely to be their efficacy, safety, convenience and price, the effectiveness of alternative products, the level of competition and the availability of coverage and adequate reimbursement from government and other third party payors.

Our commercial opportunity could be reduced or eliminated if our competitors develop and commercialize products or therapies that are safer, more effective, have fewer or less severe side effects, are more convenient or are less expensive than any products that we may develop. Our competitors also may obtain FDA, European Medicines Agency, or EMA, or other regulatory approval for their products more rapidly than we may obtain approval for ours, which could result in our competitors establishing a strong market position before we are able to enter the market. In addition, our ability to compete may be affected in many cases by insurers or other third party payors seeking to encourage the use of generic products.

Our product candidates will compete with the therapies and currently marketed drugs discussed below.

- **ZW25:** ZW25 is intended to treat patients with solid tumors that express HER2, but especially breast cancer patients with tumors expressing low to intermediate levels of HER2. Approved HER2-targeted therapies include Roche's Herceptin, Perjeta, and Kadcyra as well as Novartis' Tykerb, although none of these drugs are effective in treating tumors expressing low to intermediate levels of HER2. Currently, these patients may receive hormone therapy or cytotoxic chemotherapy including combinations of anthracyclines, taxanes, capecitabine and cyclophosphamide. We believe ZW25 will be a more effective and better tolerated therapy. There are other non-HER2 targeting monoclonal antibodies on the market that may have potential activity on tumors expressing low to intermediate levels of HER2 including Merck's Keytruda, Bristol-Myer Squibb's Opdivo or Roche's Tecentriq; however, these agents are currently not approved in breast, gastric, or ovarian cancer. Since they are relatively well-tolerated and have a different mechanism of action than ZW25, if they were to be approved in these indications, we believe they could potentially be used in combination with ZW25 to achieve even higher responses rates.
- **ZW33:** ZW33 is intended to treat patients with HER2-expressing breast cancer or other solid tumors that have progressed on, are refractory to, or are not eligible to receive existing HER2-targeted therapies. Roche's Kadcyra as well as combinations of Herceptin, Tykerb and capecitabine are some of the currently approved treatments. We believe that ZW33 will be a more effective therapy than Kadcyra based on our comparisons in preclinical models.

The FDA and corresponding regulatory authorities will ultimately review our clinical results and determine whether our product candidates are effective. No regulatory agency has made any such determination that any of our product candidates are effective for use by the general public for any indication.

## **Government Regulation**

Government authorities in the United States, at the federal, state and local level, and in other countries extensively regulate, among other things, the research, development, testing, manufacturing, quality control, approval, labeling, packaging, storage, record-keeping, promotion, advertising, distribution, post-approval monitoring and reporting, marketing and export and import of products such as those we are developing. Our ADC product candidates are comprised of both a drug product and a biologic product, and will therefore be subject to regulation in the United States as combination products. If marketed individually, each component would be subject to different regulatory pathways and would require approval of independent marketing applications by the FDA. A combination product, however, is assigned to a Center that will have primary jurisdiction over its regulation based on a determination of the combination product's primary mode of action, which is the single mode of action that provides the most important therapeutic action. In the case of our ADCs, we believe that the primary mode of action is attributable to the biologic component of the product. We believe our other product candidates will be regulated as therapeutic biologics, with the FDA's Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, or CDER, having primary jurisdiction over premarket development.

Biological products are subject to regulation under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, or FD&C Act, and the Public Health Service Act, or PHS Act, and other federal, state, local and foreign statutes and regulations. Our product candidates must be approved by the FDA before they may be legally marketed in the United States and by the appropriate foreign regulatory agency before they may be legally marketed in foreign countries.

### ***U.S. Biological Products Development Process***

The process required by the FDA before a biologic may be marketed in the United States generally involves the following:

- completion of extensive nonclinical, sometimes referred to as preclinical laboratory tests, and preclinical animal trials and applicable requirements for the humane use of laboratory animals and formulation studies in accordance with applicable regulations, including good laboratory practices, or GLPs;
- submission to the FDA of an IND application, which must become effective before human clinical trials may begin;
- performance of adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials according to the FDA's regulations commonly referred to as good clinical practice, or GCP, regulations and any additional requirements for the protection of human research subjects and their health information, to establish the safety and efficacy of the proposed biological product for its intended use;
- submission to the FDA of a BLA for marketing approval that includes substantive evidence of safety, purity, and potency from results of nonclinical testing and clinical trials;
- satisfactory completion of an FDA inspection of the manufacturing facility or facilities where the biological product is produced to assess compliance with cGMP requirements to assure that the facilities, methods and controls are adequate to preserve the biological product's identity, strength, quality and purity;
- potential FDA audit of the nonclinical and clinical study sites that generated the data in support of the BLA; and
- FDA review and approval, or licensure, of the BLA.

Before testing any biological product candidate in humans, the product candidate enters the preclinical testing stage. Preclinical tests, also referred to as nonclinical studies, include laboratory evaluations of product chemistry, toxicity and formulation, as well as animal studies to assess the potential safety and activity of the product candidate. The conduct of the preclinical tests must comply with federal regulations and requirements including GLPs.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The clinical study sponsor must submit the results of the preclinical tests, together with manufacturing information, analytical data, any available clinical data or literature and a proposed clinical protocol, to the FDA as part of the IND. Some preclinical testing may continue even after the IND is submitted. The IND automatically becomes effective 30 days after receipt by the FDA, unless the FDA places the clinical study on a clinical hold within that 30-day time period. In such a case, the IND sponsor and the FDA must resolve any outstanding concerns before the clinical study can begin. The FDA may also impose clinical holds on a biological product candidate at any time before or during clinical trials due to safety concerns or non-compliance. If the FDA imposes a clinical hold, trials may not recommence without FDA authorization and then only under terms authorized by the FDA.

Clinical trials involve the administration of the biological product candidate to healthy volunteers or patients under the supervision of qualified investigators, generally physicians not employed by or under the study sponsor's control. Clinical trials are conducted under protocols detailing, among other things, the objectives of the clinical study, dosing procedures, subject selection and exclusion criteria, and the parameters to be used to monitor subject safety, including stopping rules that assure a clinical study will be stopped if certain adverse events should occur. Each protocol and any amendments to the protocol must be submitted to the FDA as part of the IND. Clinical trials must be conducted and monitored in accordance with the FDA's regulations comprising the GCP requirements, including the requirement that all research subjects provide informed consent. Further, each clinical study must be reviewed and approved by an independent institutional review board, or IRB, at or servicing each institution at which the clinical study will be conducted. An IRB is charged with protecting the welfare and rights of study participants and considers such items as whether the risks to individuals participating in the clinical trials are minimized and are reasonable in relation to anticipated benefits. The IRB also approves the form and content of the informed consent that must be signed by each clinical study subject or his or her legal representative and must monitor the clinical study until completed.

Human clinical trials are typically conducted in three sequential phases that may overlap or be combined:

- **Phase 1.** The biological product candidate is initially introduced into healthy human volunteers and tested for safety. In the case of some products for severe or life-threatening diseases, especially when the product may be too inherently toxic to ethically administer to healthy volunteers, the initial human testing is often conducted in patients.
- **Phase 2.** The biological product candidate is evaluated in a limited patient population to identify possible adverse effects and safety risks, to preliminarily evaluate the efficacy of the product for specific targeted diseases and to determine dosage tolerance, optimal dosage and dosing schedule.
- **Phase 3.** Clinical trials are undertaken to further evaluate dosage, clinical efficacy, potency, and safety in an expanded patient population at geographically dispersed clinical study sites. These clinical trials are intended to establish the overall risk/benefit ratio of the product and provide an adequate basis for product labelling.

Post-approval clinical trials, sometimes referred to as Phase 4 clinical trials, may be conducted after initial marketing approval. These clinical trials are used to gain additional experience from the treatment of patients in the intended therapeutic indication, particularly for long-term safety follow-up.

During all phases of clinical development, regulatory agencies require extensive monitoring and auditing of all clinical activities, clinical data, and clinical study investigators. Annual progress reports detailing the results of the clinical trials must be submitted to the FDA. Written IND safety reports must be promptly submitted to the FDA and the investigators for serious and unexpected adverse events, any findings from other trials, tests in laboratory animals or *in vitro* testing that suggest a significant risk for human subjects, or any clinically important increase in the rate of a serious suspected adverse reaction over that listed in the protocol or investigator brochure. The sponsor must submit an IND safety report within 15 calendar days after the sponsor determines that the information qualifies for reporting. The sponsor also must notify the FDA of any unexpected

## [Table of Contents](#)

fatal or life-threatening suspected adverse reaction within seven calendar days after the sponsor's initial receipt of the information. The FDA or the sponsor or its data safety monitoring board may suspend a clinical study at any time on various grounds, including a finding that the research subjects or patients are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk. Similarly, an IRB can suspend or terminate approval of a clinical study at its institution if the clinical study is not being conducted in accordance with the IRB's requirements or if the biological product candidate has been associated with unexpected serious harm to patients.

There are also requirements governing the reporting of ongoing clinical trials and completed clinical trial results to public registries. Sponsors of clinical trials of FDA-regulated products, including biologics, are required to register and disclose certain clinical trial information, which is publicly available at [www.clinicaltrials.gov](http://www.clinicaltrials.gov). Information related to the product, patient population, phase of investigation, study sites and investigators, and other aspects of the clinical trial is then made public as part of the registration. Sponsors are also obligated to discuss the results of their clinical trials after completion. Disclosure of the results of these trials can be delayed until the new product or new indication being studied has been approved.

Concurrent with clinical trials, companies usually complete additional animal trials and must also develop additional information about the physical characteristics of the biological product candidate as well as finalize a process for manufacturing the product in commercial quantities in accordance with GMP requirements. To help reduce the risk of the introduction of adventitious agents with use of biological products, the PHS Act emphasizes the importance of manufacturing control for products whose attributes cannot be precisely defined. The manufacturing process must be capable of consistently producing quality batches of the product candidate and, among other things, the sponsor must develop methods for testing the identity, strength, quality, potency and purity of the final biological product. Additionally, appropriate packaging must be selected and tested and stability studies must be conducted to demonstrate that the biological product candidate does not undergo unacceptable deterioration over its shelf life.

### **U.S. Review and Approval Processes**

After the completion of clinical trials of a biological product candidate, FDA approval of a BLA must be obtained before commercial marketing of the biological product. The BLA must include results of product development, laboratory and animal trials, human trials, information on the manufacture and composition of the product, proposed labeling and other relevant information. In addition, under the Pediatric Research Equity Act, or PREA, a BLA or supplement to a BLA must contain data to assess the safety and effectiveness of the biological product candidate for the claimed indications in all relevant pediatric subpopulations and to support dosing and administration for each pediatric subpopulation for which the product is safe and effective. The Food and Drug Administration Safety and Innovation Act, or FDASIA, requires that a sponsor who is planning to submit a marketing application for a drug or biological product that includes a new active ingredient, new indication, new dosage form, new dosing regimen or new route of administration submit an initial Pediatric Study Plan, or PSP, within sixty days after an End-of-Phase 2 meeting or as may be agreed between the sponsor and FDA. Unless otherwise required by regulation, PREA does not apply to any biological product for an indication for which Orphan Drug Designation has been granted.

Under the Prescription Drug User Fee Act, or PDUFA, as amended, each BLA must be accompanied by a user fee. The FDA adjusts the PDUFA user fees on an annual basis. Fee waivers or reductions are available in certain circumstances, including a waiver of the application fee for the first application filed by a small business. Additionally, no user fees are assessed on BLAs for products designated as orphan drugs, unless the product also includes a non-orphan indication.

Within 60 days following submission of the application, the FDA reviews a BLA submitted to determine if it is substantially complete before the agency accepts it for filing. The FDA may refuse to file any BLA that it deems incomplete or not properly reviewable at the time of submission and may request additional information. In this event, the BLA must be resubmitted with the additional information. The resubmitted application also is

## [Table of Contents](#)

subject to review before the FDA accepts it for filing. Once the submission is accepted for filing, the FDA begins an in-depth substantive review of the BLA. The FDA reviews the BLA to determine, among other things, whether the proposed product is safe and potent, or effective, for its intended use, and has an acceptable purity profile, and whether the product is being manufactured in accordance with cGMP requirements to assure and preserve the product's identity, safety, strength, quality, potency and purity. The FDA may refer applications for novel biological products or biological products that present difficult questions of safety or efficacy to an advisory committee, typically a panel that includes clinicians and other experts, for review, evaluation and a recommendation as to whether the application should be approved and under what conditions. The FDA is not bound by the recommendations of an advisory committee, but it considers such recommendations carefully when making decisions. During the biological product approval process, the FDA also will determine whether a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy, or REMS, is necessary to assure the safe use of the biological product candidate. If the FDA concludes a REMS is needed, the sponsor of the BLA must submit a proposed REMS; the FDA will not approve the BLA without a REMS, if required.

Before approving a BLA, the FDA will inspect the facilities at which the product is manufactured. The FDA will not approve the product unless it determines that the manufacturing processes and facilities are in compliance with GMP requirements and adequate to assure consistent production of the product within required specifications. Additionally, before approving a BLA, the FDA will typically inspect one or more clinical sites to assure that the clinical trials were conducted in compliance with IND study requirements and GCP requirements.

Notwithstanding the submission of relevant data and information, the FDA may ultimately decide that the BLA does not satisfy its regulatory criteria for approval and deny approval. Data obtained from clinical trials are not always conclusive and the FDA may interpret data differently than the applicant interprets the same data. If the FDA decides not to approve the BLA in its present form, the FDA will issue a complete response letter that usually describes all of the specific deficiencies in the BLA identified by the FDA. The deficiencies identified may be minor, for example, requiring labeling changes, or major, for example, requiring additional clinical trials. Additionally, the complete response letter may include recommended actions that the applicant might take to place the application in a condition for approval. If a complete response letter is issued, the applicant may either resubmit the BLA, addressing all of the deficiencies identified in the letter, or withdraw the application.

If a product receives regulatory approval, the approval may be significantly limited to specific diseases and dosages or the indications for use may otherwise be limited, which could restrict the commercial value of the product. Further, the FDA may require that certain contraindications, warnings or precautions be included in the product labeling. The FDA may impose restrictions and conditions on product distribution, prescribing, or dispensing in the form of a REMS, or otherwise limit the scope of any approval. In addition, the FDA may require post marketing clinical trials, sometimes referred to as Phase 4 clinical trials, designed to further assess a biological product's safety and effectiveness, and testing and surveillance programs to monitor the safety of approved products that have been commercialized.

### ***Orphan Drug Designation***

The FDA may grant Orphan Drug Designation to drugs or biologics intended to treat a rare disease or condition that affects fewer than 200,000 individuals in the United States, or if it affects more than 200,000 individuals in the United States, there is no reasonable expectation that the cost of developing and marketing the product for this type of disease or condition will be recovered from sales in the United States. Orphan Drug Designation must be requested before submitting a BLA. After the FDA grants Orphan Drug Designation, the identity of the therapeutic agent and its potential orphan use are disclosed publicly by the FDA. Orphan Drug Designation does not convey any advantage in or shorten the duration of the regulatory review and approval process.

In the United States, Orphan Drug Designation entitles a party to financial incentives such as opportunities for grant funding towards clinical trial costs, tax advantages and user-fee waivers. In addition, if a product

## [Table of Contents](#)

receives the first FDA approval for the indication for which it has Orphan Drug Designation, the product is entitled to orphan exclusivity, which means the FDA may not approve any other application to market the same product for the same indication for a period of seven years, except in limited circumstances, such as a showing of clinical superiority over the product with orphan exclusivity or where the manufacturer with orphan exclusivity is unable to assure sufficient quantities of the approved orphan designated product. Competitors, however, may receive approval of different products for the indication for which the orphan product has exclusivity or obtain approval for the same product but for a different indication for which the orphan product has exclusivity. Orphan product exclusivity also could block the approval of one of our products for seven years if a competitor obtains approval of the same biological product as defined by the FDA or if our product candidate is determined to be contained within the competitor's product for the same indication or disease. If a drug or biological product designated as an orphan product receives marketing approval for an indication broader than what is designated, it may not be entitled to orphan product exclusivity.

### ***Post-Approval Requirements***

Maintaining substantial compliance with applicable federal, state and local statutes and regulations requires the expenditure of substantial time and financial resources. Rigorous and extensive FDA regulation of biological products continues after approval, particularly with respect to cGMP requirements. We will rely, and expect to continue to rely, on third parties for the production of clinical and commercial quantities of any products that we may commercialize. Manufacturers of our products are required to comply with applicable requirements in the cGMP regulations, including quality control and quality assurance and maintenance of records and documentation. Other post-approval requirements applicable to biological products include record-keeping requirements, reporting of adverse effects and reporting updated safety and efficacy information.

We also must comply with the FDA's advertising and promotion requirements, such as those related to direct-to-consumer advertising, the prohibition on promoting products for uses or in patient populations that are not described in the product's approved labelling (known as "off-label use"), industry-sponsored scientific and educational activities and promotional activities involving the internet. Discovery of previously unknown problems or the failure to comply with the applicable regulatory requirements may result in restrictions on the marketing of a product or withdrawal of the product from the market as well as possible civil or criminal sanctions. Failure to comply with the applicable U.S. requirements at any time during the product development process, approval process or after approval, may subject an applicant or manufacturer to administrative or judicial civil or criminal sanctions and adverse publicity. FDA sanctions could include refusal to approve pending applications, withdrawal of an approval, clinical hold, warning or untitled letters, product recalls, product seizures, total or partial suspension of production or distribution, injunctions, fines, refusals of government contracts, mandated corrective advertising or communications with doctors, debarment, restitution, disgorgement of profits, or civil or criminal penalties.

Biological product manufacturers and other entities involved in the manufacture and distribution of approved biological products are required to register their establishments with the FDA and certain state agencies, and are subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA and certain state agencies for compliance with cGMP requirements and other laws. Accordingly, manufacturers must continue to expend time, money and effort in the area of production and quality control to maintain GMP compliance. In addition, changes to the manufacturing process or facility generally require prior FDA approval before being implemented and other types of changes to the approved product, such as adding new indications and additional labeling claims, are also subject to further FDA review and approval.

### ***Biosimilars and Exclusivity***

The PPACA, signed into law on March 23, 2010, includes a subtitle called the Biologics Price Competition and Innovation Act of 2009, or BPCIA, which created an abbreviated approval pathway for biological products that are biosimilar to or interchangeable with an FDA-licensed reference biological product. To date, only one

## [Table of Contents](#)

biosimilar has been licensed under the BPCIA, although numerous biosimilars have been approved in Europe. The FDA has issued several guidance documents outlining an approach to review and approval of biosimilars.

Biosimilarity, which requires that there be no clinically meaningful differences between the biological product and the reference product in terms of safety, purity and potency, can be shown through analytical studies, animal studies and a clinical study or studies. Interchangeability requires that a product is biosimilar to the reference product and the product must demonstrate that it can be expected to produce the same clinical results as the reference product in any given patient and, for products that are administered multiple times to an individual, the biologic and the reference biologic may be alternated or switched after one has been previously administered without increasing safety risks or risks of diminished efficacy relative to exclusive use of the reference biologic. However, complexities associated with the larger, and often more complex, structures of biological products, as well as the processes by which such products are manufactured, pose significant hurdles to implementation of the abbreviated approval pathway that are still being worked out by the FDA.

Under the BPCIA, an application for a biosimilar product may not be submitted to the FDA until four years following the date that the reference product was first licensed by the FDA. In addition, the approval of a biosimilar product may not be made effective by the FDA until 12 years from the date on which the reference product was first licensed. During this 12-year period of exclusivity, another company may still market a competing version of the reference product if the FDA approves a full BLA for the competing product containing the sponsor's own preclinical data and data from adequate and well-controlled clinical trials to demonstrate the safety, purity and potency of their product. The BPCIA also created certain exclusivity periods for biosimilars approved as interchangeable products. At this juncture, it is unclear whether products deemed "interchangeable" by the FDA will, in fact, be readily substituted by pharmacies, which are governed by state pharmacy law.

A biological product can also obtain pediatric market exclusivity in the United States. Pediatric exclusivity, if granted, adds six months to existing exclusivity periods and patent terms. This six-month exclusivity, which runs from the end of other exclusivity protection or patent term, may be granted based on the voluntary completion of a pediatric study in accordance with an FDA-issued "Written Request" for such a study.

The BPCIA is complex and only beginning to be interpreted and implemented by the FDA. In addition, recent government proposals have sought to reduce the 12-year reference product exclusivity period. Other aspects of the BPCIA, some of which may impact the BPCIA exclusivity provisions, have also been the subject of recent litigation. As a result, the ultimate impact, implementation and meaning of the BPCIA are subject to significant uncertainty.

### **Canadian Review and Approval Process**

In Canada, our biologic product candidates and our research and development activities are primarily regulated by the *Food and Drugs Act* and the rules and regulations thereunder, which are enforced by Health Canada (including its Biologics and Genetic Therapies Directorate). Health Canada regulates, among other things, the research, development, testing, manufacture, packaging, storage, recordkeeping, labeling, advertising, promotion, distribution, post-approval monitoring, marketing and import and export of pharmaceutical products. Drug approval laws require licensing of manufacturing facilities, carefully controlled research and testing of products, government review and approval of experimental results prior to giving approval to sell drug products including biologic drug products. Regulators also typically require that rigorous and specific standards such as Good Manufacturing Practices, Good Laboratory Practices, or GLP, and Good Clinical Practices, or GCP, are followed in the manufacture, testing and clinical development, respectively, of any drug product. The processes for obtaining regulatory approvals in Canada, along with subsequent compliance with applicable statutes and regulations, require the expenditure of substantial time and financial resources. For further information, see "Risk Factors."

The principal steps required for drug approval in Canada is as follows:

### *Preclinical Toxicology Studies*

Non-clinical studies are conducted *in vitro* and in animals to evaluate pharmacokinetics, metabolism and possible toxic effects to provide evidence of the safety of the drug candidate prior to its administration to humans in clinical studies and throughout development. Such studies are conducted in accordance with applicable laws and GLP.

### *Initiation of Human Testing*

In Canada, the process of conducting clinical trials with a new drug cannot begin until we have submitted a Clinical Trial Application, or CTA, and the required number of days has lapsed without objection from Health Canada. Biological drugs carry additional risks, as compared to traditional small molecule drugs, associated with complexity and variability in manufacturing that can contribute to increased lot-to-lot variation of the final product, and with the potential for adventitious agents. Therefore, the content requirements for the quality information for biological drugs to be used in clinical trials are different from those for standard small molecule pharmaceutical drugs (for example, the inclusion of information on manufacturing facilities is required for biological drugs). In addition, it is necessary to have more stringent controls on the release of biologic drug lots used in authorized clinical trials.

Similar regulations apply in Canada to a CTA as to an IND in the United States. Once approved, two key factors influencing the rate of progression of clinical trials are the rate at which patients can be enrolled to participate in the research program and whether effective treatments are currently available for the disease that the drug is intended to treat. Patient enrollment is largely dependent upon the incidence and severity of the disease, the treatments available and the potential side effects of the drug to be tested and any restrictions for enrollment that may be imposed by regulatory agencies. For further information, see “Risk Factors.”

### *Clinical Trials*

Similar regulations apply in Canada regarding clinical trials as in the United States. In Canada, Research Ethics Boards, or REBs, instead of IRBs, are used to review and approve clinical trial plans. Clinical trials involve the administration of an investigational new drug to human subjects under the supervision of qualified investigators in accordance with current Good Clinical Practices, or cGCP, requirements, which include review and approval by REBs. Clinical trials are conducted under protocols detailing, among other things, the objectives of the trial, the trial procedures, the parameters to be used in monitoring safety and the efficacy criteria to be evaluated and a statistical analysis plan. Human clinical trials are typically conducted in three sequential phases, as discussed above in the context of government regulation in the United States.

The manufacture of investigational drugs for the conduct of human clinical trials is subject to current Good Manufacturing Practice, or cGMP, requirements. Investigational drugs and active pharmaceutical ingredients imported into Canada are also subject to regulation by Health Canada relating to their labeling and distribution. Progress reports detailing the results of the clinical trials must be submitted at least annually to Health Canada and the applicable REBs, and more frequently if serious adverse events occur. Phase 1, Phase 2 and Phase 3 clinical trials may not be completed successfully within any specified period, or at all. Furthermore, in Canada, Health Canada or the sponsor may suspend or terminate a clinical trial at any time on various grounds, including a finding that the research subjects are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk. Similarly, an REB can suspend or terminate approval of a clinical trial at its institution if the clinical trial is not being conducted in accordance with the REB’s requirements or if the drug has been associated with unexpected serious harm to subjects. Additionally, some clinical trials are overseen by an independent group of qualified experts organized by the clinical trial sponsor, known as a data safety monitoring board or committee. This group regularly reviews accumulated data and advises the study sponsor regarding the continuing safety of trial subjects, potential trial

## [Table of Contents](#)

subjects and the continuing validity and scientific merit of the clinical trial. We may also suspend or terminate a clinical trial based on evolving business objectives or competitive climate.

### *New Drug Application*

Upon successful completion of Phase 3 clinical trials, in Canada the company sponsoring a new drug then assembles all the preclinical and clinical data and other testing relating to the product's pharmacology, chemistry, manufacture, and controls, and submits it to Health Canada as part of a New Drug Submission, or NDS. The NDS is then reviewed by Health Canada for approval to market the drug.

As part of the approval process, Health Canada will inspect the facility or the facilities at which the drug is manufactured. Health Canada will not approve the product unless compliance with cGMP—a quality system regulating manufacturing—is satisfactory and the NDS contains data that provide substantial evidence that the drug is safe and effective in the indication studied. In addition, before approving an NDS, Health Canada will typically inspect one or more clinical sites to assure compliance with GCP.

The testing and approval process for an NDS requires substantial time, effort and financial resources, and may take several years to complete. Biologic drugs, such as our candidates, differ from standard small molecule drugs in that applicants must include more detailed chemistry and manufacturing information. This is necessary to help ensure the purity and quality of the product, for example to help ensure that it is not contaminated by an undesired microorganism. Data obtained from preclinical and clinical testing are not always conclusive and may be susceptible to varying interpretations, which could delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval. Health Canada may not grant approval of an NDS on a timely basis, or at all. In Canada, NDSs are subject to user fees and these fees are typically increased annually to reflect inflation.

Even if Health Canada approves a product candidate, the relevant authority may limit the approved indications for use of the product candidate, require that contraindications, warnings or precautions be included in the product labeling, including a black box warning, require that post-approval studies, including Phase 4 clinical trials, be conducted to further assess a drug's safety after approval, require testing and surveillance programs to monitor the product after commercialization, or impose other conditions, including distribution restrictions or other risk management mechanisms.

Biologic products in particular are monitored post-approval by being placed on a lot release schedule tailored to their potential risk, manufacturing, testing and inspection history to date. With higher risk biologics, each lot is tested before being released for sale in Canada. Moderate risk biologics are periodically tested at the discretion of Health Canada while manufacturers of low risk biologics usually only need to contact Health Canada regarding lots being sold or for providing certification of complete and satisfactory testing. Products are carefully scrutinized before they are placed in any level of the lot release process, and at any time the testing regime for a biologic may be altered.

Health Canada may prevent or limit further marketing of a product based on the results of post-marketing studies or surveillance programs. After approval, some types of changes to the approved product, such as adding new indications, manufacturing changes, and additional labeling claims, are subject to further testing requirements, notification, and regulatory authority review and approval. Further, should new safety information arise, additional testing, product labeling or regulatory notification may be required.

### *Subsequent Entry Biologics and Exclusivity*

The term subsequent entry biologic, or SEB, is used by Health Canada to describe a biologic drug that enters the market subsequent to a version previously authorized in Canada and with demonstrated similarity to a reference biologic drug. Accordingly, a SEB (known internationally as a biosimilar) will in all instances be a subsequent entrant onto the Canadian market.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Based on Health Canada guidance documents, a SEB can rely in part on prior information regarding safety and efficacy that is deemed relevant due to the demonstration of similarity to the reference biologic drug and which influences the amount and type of original data required. Generic drugs are chemically derived products that are pharmaceutically equivalent to innovative drugs, whereas SEBs are products of a biologic nature that are similar to innovative biologics. According to Health Canada, it is not currently possible to demonstrate that two biologic drugs are pharmaceutically equivalent, and therefore the regulatory approval process for generics and SEBs is different: SEBs are approved using the standard NDS pathway with some allowances made for reduced safety and efficacy information set out in guidance documents, while generic drugs are approved using an abbreviated new drug submission pathway set in guidance law. In part because it continues to be set out only in guidance and not law, the pathway for receiving SEB approval is somewhat in flux and subject to some uncertainty.

As discussed above, all SEBs enter the market subsequent to a biologic drug product previously approved in Canada and to which the SEB is considered similar. As such, SEBs are subject to existing laws and regulations outlined in the *Patented Medicines (Notice of Compliance) Regulations* and the *Food and Drug Regulations*, and related guidance documents.

Similar to the *Hatch-Waxman Act* in the United States, Canada has the *Patented Medicines (NOC) Regulations* which require a company that files a drug submission that references a patented product to address any relevant patents listed on the Patent Register prior to being able to receive approval from Health Canada. The Canadian regime is similar to the United States regime, but a number of distinctions do exist.

Like the United States, Canada also has data protection, but again differences exist between the two jurisdictions. For example, Canada's data protection applies to "innovative drugs" (i.e., a drug that contains a medicinal ingredient not previously approved in a drug by the Minister and that is not a variation of a previously approved medicinal ingredient such as a salt, ester, enantiomer, solvate or polymorph) and, where it exists, lasts for 8 years in most (but not all) circumstances. In general biologics can be considered innovative drugs but SEBs are not.

### ***Additional Regulation***

In addition to the foregoing, provincial, state and federal U.S. and Canadian laws regarding environmental protection and hazardous substances affect our business. These and other laws govern our use, handling and disposal of various biological, chemical and radioactive substances used in, and wastes generated by, our operations. If our operations result in contamination of the environment or expose individuals to hazardous substances, we could be liable for damages and governmental fines. We believe that we are in material compliance with applicable environmental laws and that continued compliance therewith will not have a material adverse effect on our business. We cannot predict, however, how changes in these laws may affect our future operations.

### ***Anti-Corruption Laws***

We are subject to the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, or the FCPA, the U.S. domestic bribery statute contained in 18 U.S.C. § 201, the U.S. Travel Act, the USA PATRIOT Act, the Canadian Corruption of Foreign Public Officials Act and possibly other state and national anti-bribery and anti-money laundering laws in countries in which we conduct activities, such as the UK Bribery Act 2010 and the UK Proceeds of Crime Act 2002, collectively, Anti-Corruption Laws. Among other matters, such Anti-Corruption Laws prohibit corporations and individuals from directly or indirectly paying, offering to pay or authorizing the payment of money or anything of value to any foreign government official, government staff member, political party or political candidate, or certain other persons, in order to obtain, retain or direct business, regulatory approvals or some other advantage in an improper manner. We can also be held liable for the acts of our third party agents (including CROs) under the FCPA, the Canadian Corruption of Foreign Public

## [Table of Contents](#)

Officials Act, the UK Bribery Act 2010 and possibly other Anti-Corruption Laws. In the healthcare sector, anti-corruption risk can also arise in the context of improper interactions with doctors, key opinion leaders, and other healthcare professionals who work for state-affiliated hospitals, research institutions, or other organizations.

### ***Government Regulation Outside of the United States***

In addition to regulations in the United States, we will be subject to a variety of regulations in other jurisdictions governing, among other things, clinical studies and any commercial sales and distribution of our products.

Whether or not we obtain FDA approval for a product, we must obtain the requisite approvals from regulatory authorities in foreign countries prior to the commencement of clinical studies or marketing of the product in those countries. Certain countries outside of the United States have a similar process that requires the submission of a clinical study application much like the IND prior to the commencement of human clinical studies. In the European Union, or EU, for example, a clinical trial application, or CTA, must be submitted to each country's national health authority and an independent ethics committee, much like the FDA and the IRB, respectively. Once the CTA is approved in accordance with a country's requirements, clinical study development may proceed.

The requirements and process governing the conduct of clinical studies, product licensing, coverage, pricing and reimbursement vary from country to country. In all cases, the clinical studies are conducted in accordance with GCP and the applicable regulatory requirements and the ethical principles that have their origin in the Declaration of Helsinki.

### ***Pharmaceutical Coverage, Pricing and Reimbursement***

Significant uncertainty exists as to the coverage and reimbursement status of any product candidates for which we may obtain regulatory approval. In the United States and markets in other countries, sales of any products for which we receive regulatory approval for commercial sale will depend, in part, on the availability of coverage and adequate reimbursement from third-party payors. Third-party payors include government programs such as Medicare or Medicaid, managed care plans, private health insurers, and other organizations. These third-party payors may deny coverage or reimbursement for a product or therapy in whole or in part if they determine that the product or therapy was not medically appropriate or necessary. Third-party payors may attempt to control costs by limiting coverage to specific drug products on an approved list, or formulary, which might not include all of the FDA-approved drug products for a particular indication, and by limiting the amount of reimbursement for particular procedures or drug treatments. Additionally, coverage and reimbursement for drug products can differ significantly from payor to payor. The Medicare and Medicaid programs are often used as models by private payors and other governmental payors to develop their coverage and reimbursement policies for drugs and biologics. However, one third-party payor's decision to cover a particular drug product does not ensure that other payors will also provide coverage for the product, or will provide coverage at an adequate reimbursement rate.

The cost of pharmaceuticals continues to generate substantial governmental and third party payor interest. We expect that the pharmaceutical industry will experience pricing pressures due to the trend toward managed healthcare, the increasing influence of managed care organizations and additional legislative proposals. Third-party payors are increasingly challenging the price and examining the medical necessity and cost-effectiveness of medical products and services, in addition to their safety and efficacy. We may need to conduct expensive pharmacoeconomic studies in order to demonstrate the medical necessity and cost-effectiveness of our products to obtain third-party payor coverage, in addition to the costs required to obtain the FDA approvals. Our product candidates may not be considered medically necessary or cost-effective. A payor's decision to provide coverage for a drug product does not imply that an adequate reimbursement rate will be approved. Adequate third-party reimbursement may not be available to enable us to maintain price levels sufficient to realize an appropriate return on our investment in product development.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Some third-party payors also require pre-approval of coverage for new or innovative drug therapies before they will reimburse healthcare providers who use such therapies. While we cannot predict whether any proposed cost-containment measures will be adopted or otherwise implemented in the future, these requirements or any announcement or adoption of such proposals could have a material adverse effect on our ability to obtain adequate prices for our product candidates and to operate profitably.

In international markets, reimbursement and healthcare payment systems vary significantly by country, and many countries have instituted price ceilings on specific products and therapies. There can be no assurance that our products will be considered medically reasonable and necessary for a specific indication, that our products will be considered cost-effective by third-party payors, that coverage or an adequate level of reimbursement will be available or that third-party payors' reimbursement policies will not adversely affect our ability to sell our products profitably.

### ***Healthcare Reform***

The United States and some foreign jurisdictions are considering or have enacted a number of legislative and regulatory proposals to change the healthcare system in ways that could affect our ability to sell our future products profitably. Among policy makers and payors in the United States and elsewhere, there is significant interest in promoting changes in healthcare systems with the stated goals of containing healthcare costs, improving quality or expanding access. In the United States, the pharmaceutical industry has been a particular focus of these efforts and has been significantly affected by major legislative initiatives.

By way of example, in March 2010, the PPACA was signed into law, intended to broaden access to health insurance, reduce or constrain the growth of healthcare spending, enhance remedies against fraud and abuse, add new transparency requirements for the healthcare and health insurance industries, impose new taxes and fees on the health industry and impose additional health policy reforms. Among the provisions of the PPACA of importance to our potential drug candidates are:

- an annual, non-deductible fee on any entity that manufactures or imports certain branded prescription drugs and biologic agents, apportioned among these entities according to their market share in certain government healthcare programs;
- an increase in the rebates a manufacturer must pay under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program to 23.1% of the average manufacturer price, or AMP, for branded drugs or the difference between AMP and best price, whichever is greater. For generic drugs the rebate is 13%;
- Medicare Part D coverage gap discount program, in which manufacturers must agree to offer 50% point-of-sale discounts to negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period;
- extension of manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability to covered drugs dispensed to individuals who are enrolled in Medicaid managed care organizations;
- expansion of eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs by, among other things, allowing states to offer Medicaid coverage to additional individuals and by adding new mandatory eligibility categories for certain individuals with income at or below 133% of the Federal Poverty Level, thereby potentially increasing manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability;
- requirement that applicable manufacturers and group purchasing organizations report annually to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or HHS, information certain payments and other transfers of value given to physicians and teaching hospitals, and any ownership or investment interest physicians, or their immediate family members, have in their company;
- a requirement to annually report drug samples that manufacturers and distributors provide to physicians;
- expansion of healthcare fraud and abuse laws, including the federal False Claims Act and the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, new government investigative powers, and enhanced penalties for noncompliance;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- a licensure framework for follow-on biologic products;
- a new Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute to oversee, identify priorities in, and conduct comparative clinical effectiveness research, along with funding for such research;
- creation of the Independent Payment Advisory Board which, when and if empaneled, will have authority to recommend certain changes to the Medicare program that could result in reduced payments for prescription drugs and those recommendations could have the effect of law even if Congress does not act on the recommendations; and
- establishment of a Center for Medicare & Medicaid Innovation at CMS to test innovative payment and service delivery models to lower Medicare and Medicaid spending, potentially including prescription drug spending.

Since its enactment, there have been judicial and Congressional challenges to certain aspects of the PPACA. In January, Congress voted to adopt a budget resolution for fiscal year 2017, or the Budget Resolution, that authorizes the implementation of legislation that would repeal portions of the PPACA. The Budget Resolution is not a law, however, it is widely viewed as the first step toward the passage of legislation that would repeal certain aspects of the PPACA. Further, on January 20, 2017, President Trump signed an Executive Order directing federal agencies with authorities and responsibilities under the PPACA to waive, defer, grant exemptions from, or delay the implementation of any provision of the PPACA that would impose a fiscal or regulatory burden on states, individuals, healthcare providers, health insurers, or manufacturers of pharmaceuticals or medical devices. Congress also could consider subsequent legislation to replace elements of the PPACA that are repealed. The impact of these efforts to repeal the PPACA on our business remains unclear.

In addition, other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted since the PPACA was enacted. These changes include aggregate reductions to Medicare payments to providers of up to 2% per fiscal year pursuant to the Budget Control Act of 2011, which began in 2013 and will remain in effect through 2025 unless additional Congressional action is taken. The American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several providers, including hospitals and cancer treatment centers, increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. These new laws may result in additional reductions in Medicare and other healthcare funding, which could have a material adverse effect on customers for our product candidates, if approved, and, accordingly, our financial operations. Also, there has been heightened governmental scrutiny recently over the manner in which drug manufacturers set prices for their marketed products, which have resulted in several Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for drug products.

We expect that the PPACA, as well as other healthcare reform measures that may be adopted in the future, may result in more rigorous coverage criteria and lower reimbursement, and in additional downward pressure on the price that we receive for any approved product. Any reduction in reimbursement from Medicare or other government-funded programs may result in a similar reduction in payments from private payors. The implementation of cost containment measures or other healthcare reforms may prevent us from being able to generate revenue, attain profitability or commercialize our drugs, once regulatory approval is obtained.

### ***Other Healthcare Laws and Compliance Requirements***

In the United States, the research, manufacturing, distribution, sale and promotion of drug products are potentially subject to regulation by various federal, state and local authorities in addition to the FDA, including the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, other divisions of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (e.g., the Office of Inspector General), the U.S. Department of Justice, state Attorneys General, and other state and local government agencies. For example, sales, marketing and scientific/educational grant

## [Table of Contents](#)

programs must comply with fraud and abuse laws such as the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, as amended, the federal False Claims Act, as amended, and similar state laws. Pricing and rebate programs must comply with the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program requirements of the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1990, as amended, and the Veterans Health Care Act of 1992, as amended. If products are made available to authorized users of the Federal Supply Schedule of the General Services Administration, additional laws and requirements apply. All of these activities are also potentially subject to federal and state consumer protection and unfair competition laws.

The federal Anti-Kickback Statute prohibits any person, including a prescription drug manufacturer (or a party acting on its behalf), from knowingly and willfully soliciting, receiving, offering or providing remuneration, directly or indirectly, to induce or reward either the referral of an individual, or the furnishing, recommending, or arranging for a good or service, for which payment may be made under a federal healthcare program such as the Medicare and Medicaid programs. This statute has been interpreted to apply to arrangements between pharmaceutical manufacturers on one hand and prescribers, purchasers, and formulary managers on the other. The term “remuneration” is not defined in the federal Anti-Kickback Statute and has been broadly interpreted to include anything of value, including for example, gifts, discounts, the furnishing of supplies or equipment, credit arrangements, payments of cash, waivers of payments, ownership interests and providing anything at less than its fair market value. Although there are a number of statutory exemptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting certain business arrangements from prosecution, the exemptions and safe harbors are drawn narrowly, and practices that involve remuneration intended to induce prescribing, purchasing or recommending may be subject to scrutiny if they do not qualify for an exemption or safe harbor. Our practices may not in all cases meet all of the criteria for safe harbor protection from federal Anti-Kickback Statute liability. The reach of the Anti-Kickback Statute was broadened by the PPACA, which, among other things, amends the intent requirement of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute such that a person or entity no longer needs to have actual knowledge of this statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation. In addition, the PPACA provides that the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the federal False Claims Act (discussed below) or the civil monetary penalties statute, which imposes fines against any person who is determined to have presented or caused to be presented claims to a federal healthcare program that the person knows or should know is for an item or service that was not provided as claimed or is false or fraudulent. Additionally, many states have adopted laws similar to the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, and some of these state prohibitions apply to referral of patients for healthcare items or services reimbursed by any third-party payor, not only the Medicare and Medicaid programs in at least some cases, and do not contain safe harbors.

The federal False Claims Act imposes liability on any person or entity that, among other things, knowingly presents, or causes to be presented, a false or fraudulent claim for payment by a federal healthcare program. The qui tam provisions of the federal False Claims Act allow a private individual to bring civil actions on behalf of the federal government alleging that the defendant has submitted a false claim to the federal government, and to share in any monetary recovery. In recent years, the number of suits brought by private individuals has increased dramatically. In addition, various states have enacted false claims laws analogous to the federal False Claims Act. Many of these state laws apply where a claim is submitted to any third-party payor and not merely a federal healthcare program. There are many potential bases for liability under the federal False Claims Act. Liability arises, primarily, when an entity knowingly submits, or causes another to submit, a false claim for reimbursement to the federal government. The federal False Claims Act has been used to assert liability on the basis of inadequate care, kickbacks and other improper referrals, improperly reported government pricing metrics such as Best Price or Average Manufacturer Price, improper use of Medicare numbers when detailing the provider of services, improper promotion of off-label uses (i.e., uses not expressly approved by FDA in a drug’s label), and allegations as to misrepresentations with respect to the services rendered. Our future activities relating to the reporting of discount and rebate information and other information affecting federal, state and third party reimbursement of our products, and the sale and marketing of our products and our service arrangements or data purchases, among other activities, may be subject to scrutiny under these laws. We are unable to predict whether we would be subject to actions under the federal False Claims Act or a similar state law, or the impact of such actions. However, the cost of defending such claims, as well as any sanctions imposed, could adversely affect our

## [Table of Contents](#)

financial performance. Also, HIPAA created several additional federal crimes, including healthcare fraud and false statements relating to healthcare matters. The healthcare fraud statute prohibits knowingly and willfully executing a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program, including private third-party payors. The false statements statute prohibits knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false, fictitious or fraudulent statement in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services.

In addition, we may be subject to, or our marketing activities may be limited by, data privacy and security regulation by both the federal government and the states in which we conduct our business. For example, the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, and its implementing regulations established uniform federal standards for certain “covered entities” (healthcare providers, health plans and healthcare clearinghouses) governing the conduct of certain electronic healthcare transactions and protecting the security and privacy of protected health information. The American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009, commonly referred to as the economic stimulus package, included expansion of HIPAA’s privacy and security standards called the Health Information Technology for Economic Clinical Health Act, or HITECH. Among other things, HITECH makes HIPAA’s privacy and security standards directly applicable to “business associates”—independent contractors or agents of covered entities that create, receive, maintain, or transmit protected health information in connection with providing a service for or on behalf of a covered entity. HITECH also increased the civil and criminal penalties that may be imposed against covered entities, business associates and possibly other persons, and gave state attorneys general new authority to file civil actions for damages or injunctions in federal courts to enforce the federal HIPAA laws and seek attorney’s fees and costs associated with pursuing federal civil actions.

Under the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act, which was enacted as part of the PPACA, certain drug manufacturers are required to track and annually report to the federal government certain payments and other transfers of value made to physicians and other healthcare professionals and teaching hospitals and ownership or investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members. There are also an increasing number of state “sunshine” laws that require manufacturers to make reports to states on pricing and marketing information. Several states have enacted legislation requiring pharmaceutical companies to, among other things, establish marketing compliance programs, file periodic reports with the state, make periodic public disclosures on sales, marketing, pricing, clinical trials and other activities, or register their sales representatives, as well as to prohibit pharmacies and other healthcare entities from providing certain physician prescribing data to pharmaceutical companies for use in sales and marketing, and to prohibit certain other sales and marketing practices. These laws may affect our future sales, marketing, and other promotional activities by imposing administrative and compliance burdens on us. If we fail to track and report as required by these laws or otherwise comply with these laws, we could be subject to the penalty provisions of the pertinent state and federal authorities.

Because of the breadth of these laws and the narrowness of available statutory and regulatory exemptions, it is possible that some of our business activities could be subject to challenge under one or more of such laws. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of the federal and state laws described above or any other governmental regulations that apply to us, we may be subject to penalties, including criminal and significant civil monetary penalties, damages, fines, disgorgement, imprisonment, exclusion from participation in government healthcare programs, injunctions, recall or seizure of products, total or partial suspension of production, denial or withdrawal of pre-marketing product approvals, private *qui tam* actions brought by individual whistleblowers in the name of the government or refusal to allow us to enter into supply contracts, including government contracts, and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our results of operations. We may also be subject to additional reporting requirements and oversight if we become subject to a corporate integrity agreement or similar agreement with a governmental entity to resolve allegations that we have violated these laws. To the extent that any of our products are sold in a foreign country, we may be subject to similar foreign laws and regulations, which may include, for instance, applicable post-approval requirements, including safety surveillance, anti-fraud and abuse laws, and

## [Table of Contents](#)

implementation of corporate compliance programs and reporting of payments or transfers of value to healthcare professionals.

### **Sales and Marketing**

As an early-stage biopharmaceutical company, we do not currently possess the commercial infrastructure that will be required to launch and market our product candidates. To date, we have not entered into co-promotion or out-licensing agreements with established pharmaceutical companies for any of our product candidates. To access the sales, marketing and distribution capacity required to market our drug candidates, we plan to selectively establish partnerships with biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies having established commercial capabilities in relevant indications. The timing and nature of such agreements will be determined by market size and complexity, access to pre-commercial and commercial infrastructure and our resource availability for developing a commercial organization. For product candidates targeting patient populations that can be serviced by a small, specialized commercial effort, we may seek out co-development and co-promotion agreements granting commercialization rights to an established commercial partner in some jurisdictions while allowing us to build these capabilities in other jurisdictions.

### **Facilities**

We lease approximately 23,155 square feet of office space and 10,570 square feet of laboratory space in Vancouver, British Columbia under lease agreements that expire in August 2021. We also lease approximately 5,470 square feet and 10,920 square feet of office space in Seattle, Washington under lease agreements that expire in January 2020 and February 2022, respectively.

### **Employees**

As of December 31, 2016, we had 117 employees, including 115 full-time employees, 72 of whom were primarily engaged in research and development activities and 48 of whom hold an M.D. or Ph.D. degree. 99 of our employees are based in Vancouver, British Columbia and 16 in Seattle, Washington. None of our employees are represented by a labor organization or are party to a collective bargaining arrangement. We consider our relationship with our employees to be excellent.

### **Legal Proceedings**

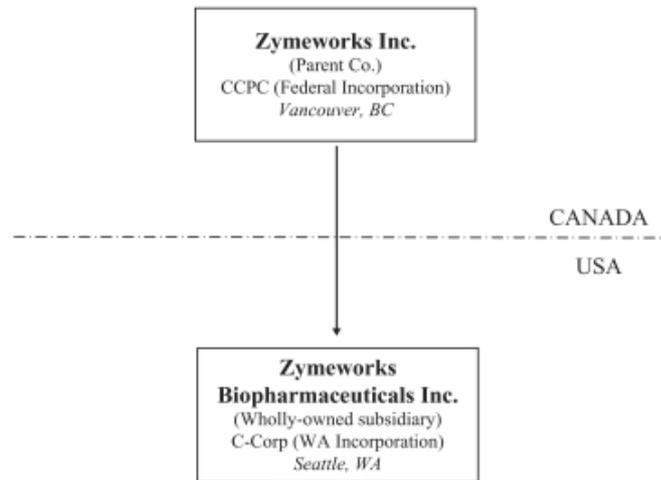
From time to time, we may be involved in various claims and legal proceedings relating to claims arising out of our operations. We are not currently a party to any material legal proceedings.

### **Corporate Structure**

We were incorporated on September 8, 2003 under the Canada Business Corporations Act, or CBCA, under the name “Zymeworks Inc.” On October 22, 2003, we were registered as an extra-provincial company under the Company Act (British Columbia), the predecessor to the BCBCA. Immediately prior to the consummation of this offering, we will file a continuation application to, among other things, continue the Company to British Columbia and amend and redesignate our share capital. See “Description of Share Capital.”

The following reflects our organizational structure. We have one wholly-owned subsidiary located in Seattle, Washington named Zymeworks Biopharmaceuticals Inc. Effective as of January 1, 2017, we completed a short-form amalgamation with our other previously wholly-owned subsidiary, Zymeworks Biochemistry Inc.

Corporate Org Chart:



**Notes:** CCPC refers to “Canadian Controlled Private Corporation.” Immediately prior to the closing of this offering, we will file a continuation application to continue the Company to British Columbia.

Our principal and registered office is located at 1385 West 8<sup>th</sup> Avenue, Suite 540, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada V6H 3V9, and our telephone number is (604) 678-1388. Our website address is [www.zymeworks.com](http://www.zymeworks.com). Information contained on, or accessible through, our website is not a part of this prospectus, and the inclusion of our website address in this prospectus is an inactive textual reference.

## MANAGEMENT

### Executive Officers and Directors

The following table provides information with respect to our directors and executive officers as of the date of this prospectus. The address for our directors and executive officers is c/o Zymeworks Inc., 1385 West 8th Avenue, Suite 540, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada V6H 3V9.

Name	Residence	Age	Position(s)
<i>Executive Officers</i>			
Ali Tehrani, Ph.D.	British Columbia, Canada	44	President and Chief Executive Officer and Director
Neil Klompas, CPA, CA	British Columbia, Canada	45	Chief Financial Officer
Diana Hausman, M.D.	Washington, USA	53	Chief Medical Officer
Jennifer Kaufman-Shaw, Ph.D., LL.B.	British Columbia, Canada	67	Vice President, Intellectual Property & Legal Affairs
Wajida Leclerc	British Columbia, Canada	57	Vice President, Human Resources
Surjit Dixit, Ph.D.	British Columbia, Canada	44	Vice President, Technology
John Babcook	British Columbia, Canada	54	Senior Vice President, Discovery Research
<i>Directors</i>			
Nick Bedford	British Columbia, Canada	57	Chairman of the Board and Governance & Nominating Committee
Kerry Blanchard, Ph.D., M.D.	Shanghai, China	61	Director
Noel Hall	British Columbia, Canada	55	Director
Kenneth Hillan, M.B. Ch.B.	California, USA	55	Director
Dion Madsen, B. Comm, CFA	California, USA	49	Director
Hollings Renton, MBA	California, USA	69	Director
Ali Tehrani, Ph.D.	British Columbia, Canada	44	President and Chief Executive Officer and Director
Shermaine Tilley, Ph.D., MBA	Quebec, Canada	65	Director
Lota Zoth, CPA(1) (2)	Texas, USA	57	Director, Chair of the Audit Committee

- (1) Member of the Audit Committee
- (2) Member of the Compensation Committee
- (3) Member of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee

### Executive Officers

#### *Ali Tehrani*

Dr. Tehrani is one of our co-founders and currently serves as our President & Chief Executive Officer. Dr. Tehrani has served as a member of our board of directors since the Company's inception in September 2003. He has been an integral part of many of our corporate achievements including raising seed and angel financing and overseeing our technical operations and patent filings. Dr. Tehrani holds both Bachelors and Masters of Science degrees in Biochemistry from the University of Massachusetts, and has a Doctoral degree in Microbiology and Immunology from the University of British Columbia. While completing his Ph.D. degree he co-founded the Student Biotechnology Network, for which he received the UBC Faculty of Science Achievement Award for Outstanding Leadership in 2002. Dr. Tehrani has served as a Board Director for the Student

## [Table of Contents](#)

Biotechnology Network, on the MITACS Industrial Advisory Board, and BIOTECanada's Industrial and Environmental Committee. Currently, he is a member of the Board of Directors of LifeSciences British Columbia, Creatus Biosciences Inc., CQDM and the British Columbia Premier's Technology Council.

### *Neil Klompas*

Mr. Klompas joined Zymeworks Inc. in March 2007 and currently serves as our Chief Financial Officer. Mr. Klompas brings over 20 years of healthcare and biotechnology experience to our management team. In addition to finance responsibilities, and in conjunction with our President and Chief Executive Officer, he manages our corporate growth initiatives. Prior to joining Zymeworks Inc., he worked with KPMG LLP in Canada and the United States, most recently (from 2005 to 2007) with KPMG's Pharmaceuticals, Biotechnology and Medical Device M&A Transaction Services practice in Princeton, New Jersey, where he advised on numerous transactions including mergers, acquisitions, divestitures and strategic alliances. Prior to that, from 2000 to 2005 Mr. Klompas worked with KPMG's Canadian Biotechnology and Pharmaceuticals practice in the fields of assurance, valuations and taxation. Mr. Klompas is a Chartered Professional Accountant and is a member of Chartered Professional Accountants of British Columbia. Mr. Klompas also holds a degree in Microbiology & Immunology from the University of British Columbia and serves on the faculty advisory board for Biotechnology and Chemistry for Camosun College and as a Director for the Canadian Gene Cure Foundation.

### *Diana Hausman*

Dr. Hausman has served as our Chief Medical Officer since June 2016. She is a board certified medical oncologist and brings more than 15 years of clinical drug development experience to our management team. Prior to joining Zymeworks Inc., she was Chief Medical Officer at Oncothyreon Inc. (now Cascadian Therapeutics, Inc.) from January 2012 to April 2016, where she oversaw the clinical program for their lead Phase 2 targeted anti-HER2 cancer therapy. While there, Dr. Hausman also led planning for the clinical development of a therapeutic vaccine, and earlier served as the company's Vice President, Clinical Development from September 2009 to December 2011. She has also held positions at ZymoGenetics, Inc., Berlex, Inc. and Immunex Corporation working across multiple indications, including oncology, hematology, hepatitis C and autoimmune disease. Dr. Hausman received her internal medicine training and specialty training in hematology and medical oncology at the University of Washington. She holds an M.D. degree from the University of Pennsylvania and an A.B. in biology from Princeton University.

### *Surjit Dixit*

Dr. Dixit has held various roles at Zymeworks Inc. since joining the company in July 2007, and currently serves as our Vice President, Technology. Dr. Dixit is responsible for the implementation of novel algorithms and advancement of our proprietary ZymeCAD approach. Prior to joining Zymeworks, Dr. Dixit was the coordinator of Computational Molecular Biophysics at Wesleyan University, Connecticut from January 2005 to July 2007, where he was instrumental in the development of novel methods for management and mining of high throughput molecular dynamics simulation data. Dr. Dixit obtained his Ph.D. at the Indian Institute of Technology, New Delhi researching methods for computing the binding and interaction energies in protein DNA complexes. Subsequently, from October 1999 to February 2001 he was a postdoctoral research associate at the Université Henri Poincaré, Nancy, France, working on the development and implementation of highly accurate methods for the prediction of binding energies in drug discovery research.

### *Jennifer Kaufman-Shaw*

Dr. Kaufman-Shaw has served as our Vice President, Intellectual Property and Legal Affairs since August 2014 and brings with her over 20 years of intellectual property management, strategy and execution experience to the management team. Dr. Kaufman-Shaw is responsible for our intellectual property portfolio and global patent

## [Table of Contents](#)

strategy, as well as supporting our therapeutics and platform licensing activities and general legal matters. Prior to joining Zymeworks Inc., Dr. Kaufman-Shaw was a Co-Founder of ImStar Therapeutics Inc. a biotechnology company, and also served as its Vice President, Intellectual Property and Legal Affairs from its founding in May 2012 to July 2014. She also served as a Vice President at the biotechnology company Sirius Genomics Inc. (from August 2007 to May 2012), and held various senior roles at QLT Inc. (from July 1997 to July 2007) including, most recently, Vice President, Patent Counsel (from 2005 to 2007), where she was responsible for developing and executing intellectual property strategies. Dr. Kaufman-Shaw is admitted to both the Alberta and British Columbia Bars and holds a Bachelor of Laws (LL.B.) and a doctorate in Biochemistry from the University of Alberta. She is currently serving as a member of the board of directors of MRM Proteomics Inc., a proteomics services and kit provider.

### *Wajida Leclerc*

Ms. Leclerc joined Zymeworks Inc. in April 2015 and currently serves as our Vice President, Human Resources. Ms. Leclerc is responsible for managing all aspects of Human Resources, including our growing demand for highly skilled science and technology professionals. Prior to joining Zymeworks Inc., Ms. Leclerc served as Director, Human Resources at BC Lottery Corporation, a crown corporation of the Province of British Columbia, from September 2010 to July 2014. Ms. Leclerc also brings with her a wealth of experience in human resource management within the biotech/pharmaceuticals industry, having served from 2008 to 2010 as Senior Director, Human Resources at Xenon Pharmaceuticals Inc., a pharmaceuticals company, and from 1998 to 2008 as Senior Director, Human Resources at QLT, Inc., a biotechnology company. Ms. Leclerc holds a Bachelors degree in Liberal Arts and Business from Simon Fraser University.

### *John Babcook*

Mr. Babcook has served as our Senior Vice President, Discovery Research since March 2016 and is responsible for target, antibody and drug conjugate discovery and associated partnerships. For over 20 years, Mr. Babcook has made significant contributions to the international biopharmaceutical industry. Prior to joining Zymeworks Inc., based on a novel antibody generation platform, he co-founded ImmGenics Pharmaceuticals Inc. in November 1998 which was acquired by Abgenix Inc. in 2000 and subsequently by Amgen, Inc. in 2006 where he led its Canadian research team from 2006 to 2010. Mr. Babcook also established the Biologics Division at the Centre for Drug Research and Development where he served as Vice President, Biologics from August 2011 to March 2016, in addition to becoming the founding President and Chief Scientific Officer of Kairos in January 2015. While at Kairos, he was responsible for the development of its ADC therapeutics pipeline and formed multiple collaborations, including the strategic partnership and the merger with Zymeworks Inc. in March 2016. Mr. Babcook has participated in the development of more than 100 therapeutic antibody-based programs, 11 of which are now in the clinic, including three ADCs. Mr. Babcook is an Adjunct Professor in Molecular Biology and Biochemistry at Simon Fraser University, an Honorary Doctorate recipient from the British Columbia Institute of Technology and the recipient of the LifeSciences British Columbia's "Innovation and Achievement" Award.

### *Nick Bedford*

Mr. Bedford has served as Chairman of our board of directors since September 2004. He brings his expertise in business and finance to Zymeworks, after serving as Chairman of the Board of Directors of ActiveState Corporation, a software corporation, from May 2002 up to the time of its acquisition by Sophos Group plc an international security software and hardware company in July 2003. Additionally, he has held senior positions at UBS Warburg from 1982 to 2002, including the Frankfurt-based role as Head of German Equities. In this position he oversaw all sales and sales trading of equity products, and was responsible for the merger of UBS Germany's equity business with SBC Warburg in 1998. Prior to this he was with UBS' Securities division in Zurich, Tokyo, and London. Mr. Bedford also currently serves on the Board of Actenum Corporation which he

## [Table of Contents](#)

joined in 2003, and was previously a member of the board of Aegis Mobility from 2006 to January 2015. Mr. Bedford holds a B.Sc. in Civil Engineering from King's College, London University.

### *Noel Hall*

Mr. Hall has served as a member of our board of directors since October 2008. Mr. Hall is a Managing Partner at the MacHall Group, a family office focused on life sciences and technology investing. He was the Co-founder, President and Director of Aspreva Pharmaceuticals Corp. from 2002 to 2008 which was acquired by the Galenica Group in January 2008. Prior to Aspreva, Mr. Hall co-founded the life sciences practice of consulting firm Hill and Knowlton in 1999 and served as Head of Global Strategic Planning for the firm's worldwide pharmaceutical consulting practice from 1995 to 1999. Mr. Hall was the Director of Corporate Affairs for the United Kingdom and Northern Europe for The Wellcome Foundation Ltd. from 1993 to 1995, which is now part of GSK. Additionally, Mr. Hall worked in market development with Abbott Laboratories Ltd. from 1987 to 1992. From 1992 to 1993 he was an account Director at Shire Hall Communication and was the regional sales manager with Leo Laboratories Ltd. from 1983 to 1985. Mr. Hall trained in Medical Laboratory Sciences at the London Hospital. Mr. Hall co-founded Vitaeris Biopharma Inc. and has served as its Executive Chairman since April 2016. Additionally, Mr. Hall co-founded Arius Technologies Inc., Creatus Sciences Inc. and CRAiLAR Fibre Technologies, Inc and currently serves as a director of these organizations.

### *Shermaine Tilley*

Dr. Tilley has served as a member of our board of directors since June 2009. Dr. Tilley is a Managing Partner at CTI Life Sciences Fund, or CTI LSF, a Montreal-based venture capital fund investing across Canada and the United States. Since joining CTI LSF at its inception in 2006, Dr. Tilley has played a critical role in each of the fund's investments, including Medicago Inc. (a biotechnology company acquired by Mitsubishi Tanabe in 2013) as well as Xagenic Inc. and Zymeworks Inc. Prior to joining CTI LSF, from 2000 to 2005, Dr. Tilley held various positions at Drug Royalty Corporation (now DRI), the world's first private equity firm exclusively focused on royalty transactions in the biotech/pharma space, including, most recently, the position of Senior Vice President in 2005. Before DRC, Dr. Tilley ran and managed a research laboratory, holding faculty positions at the NYU School of Medicine and Public Health Research Institute, New York, from 1985 to 2000 and on the Public Health Research Institute, or PHRI, Board of Directors from 1993 to 1995. Concomitantly with her tenure at NYU School of Medicine and PHRI, she consulted for the NIH Small Business Innovation Research, or SBIR, program in immunology and infectious diseases for 10 years from 1989 to 1998. Dr. Tilley holds a Ph.D. in biochemistry from the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, an MBA from the University of Toronto, and is a member of the Chartered Financial Analyst, or CFA, Society of Toronto. She currently sits on the boards of Xagenic Inc., a biotechnology company, Immunovaccine Inc., PHEMI, Zymeworks Inc. and BIOTECanada, a national biotechnology industry association, and served as a board observer on Enobia Pharma Corp. prior to its acquisition by Alexion Pharmaceuticals, Inc. in 2012.

### *Kerry Blanchard*

Dr. Blanchard has served as a member of our board of directors since June 2015. Dr. Blanchard is currently Eli Lilly & Co.'s Senior Vice-President of Medicines Development Unit and External Innovation. Dr. Blanchard received a BS degree in chemistry in 1977, a Ph.D. in Biochemistry in 1982 and an M.D. in 1985 from Indiana University. He completed a residency in Internal Medicine and fellowships in Hematology and Medical Oncology at the Brigham and Women's Hospital, the Dana Farber Cancer Center, and Harvard Medical School in 1990. Prior to joining Lilly in 2000, he was a tenured Professor of Medicine and Biochemistry & Molecular Biology at Louisiana State University (LSU) Health Sciences Center in Shreveport, Louisiana, holding positions in the LSU School of Medicine from 1992 to 2000. He has played multiple roles in Lilly Research Laboratories including Senior Clinical Research Physician in Program Phase Oncology (2000-2003), Chief Scientific Officer Cancer Discovery (2004-2005), Executive Director of Cancer Discovery & Lilly Systems Biology-Singapore (2005-2006) and Chief Operating Officer/Vice-President of Discovery Research and Vice-President of

## [Table of Contents](#)

Integrative Biology (2006 to 2010). He has served on the Board of Directors of the Lilly Singapore Centre for Drug Discovery and Systems Biology. He is a co-founder and a member of the Board of Directors of the Asian Cancer Research Group, and he serves on the Board of Directors of the Lilly Suzhou Pharmaceutical Company.

### *Dion Madsen*

Mr. Madsen has served as a member of our board of directors since January 2016. Mr. Madsen is the Senior Managing Partner at BDC Capital in the Healthcare Fund and has over 20 years of senior management experience as a financial executive and venture investor. Prior to joining BDC in January 2013, Mr. Madsen was the Founder and Managing Director of Physic Ventures from April 2007 to December 2012, and Managing Director of Unilever Technology Ventures, Unilever's North American corporate venture fund, from March 2005 to April 2007. Prior to Unilever, Mr. Madsen led Chiron Corporation's investor communications, as Director of Investor Relations, from April 2004 to March 2005 and before moving to San Francisco, he spent five years as Partner of RBC Capital Partners' Life Sciences Venture Fund from February 1998 to December 2003. Mr. Madsen currently sits on the Board of Directors of Interface Biologics, Agrisoma Biosciences, Phemi Health Systems, Xagenic and is a board observer at Chromatin. He is also a member of the selection committee of the San Francisco Canadian Technology Accelerator, a founding member of the C100 and has sat on the boards of directors of many venture capital funds and companies in the pharmaceutical and health care industries. He is a CFA charterholder and has a Bachelor of Commerce in Finance and Marketing from the University of Saskatchewan.

### *Lota Zoth*

Ms. Zoth has served as a member of our board of directors since November 2016. Ms. Zoth is a Certified Public Accountant and has served as Chief Financial Officer, Controller and Chief Accountant for various publicly-traded companies. Previously, Ms. Zoth acted as Vice President, Controller & Chief Accounting Officer (from August 2002 to April 2004) and Senior Vice President & Chief Financial Officer (from April 2004 to July 2007) for MedImmune, Inc., a publicly traded biotechnology company, which was acquired by AstraZeneca plc in June 2007. From August 2000 to June 2002, Ms. Zoth acted as Senior Vice President, Controller and Chief Accounting Officer of PSINet, Inc, and led the company through its 2002 restructuring in collaboration with PricewaterhouseCoopers. Ms. Zoth currently serves on the boards of numerous biopharmaceutical companies including Aeras, Orexigen Therapeutics, Inc., NewLink Genetics Corporation, Circassia Pharmaceuticals, plc and Spark Therapeutics, Inc. Previously, Ms. Zoth served on the boards of two biopharmaceutical companies, Hyperion Therapeutics, Inc. (February 2008 to May 2015) and Ikaria, Inc (January 2008 to February 2014). Ms. Zoth is, or has served as, the Audit Committee Chair at each of these companies.

### *Kenneth Hillan*

Dr. Hillan has served as a member of our board of directors since February 2017. Dr. Hillan has served as CEO and a member of the board of directors of Achaogen, Inc., a public biopharmaceutical company, since October 2011. Prior to this, Dr. Hillan served as Achaogen's Chief Medical Officer from April 2011 to October 2011. Prior to joining Achaogen, Dr. Hillan worked at Genentech Inc., a pharmaceutical company and a member of the Roche Group, from August 1994 to March 2011. Dr. Hillan held progressively senior roles at Genentech, most recently holding the position of Senior Vice President & Head of Roche Product Development, Asia Pacific from April 2010 to March 2011, and was responsible for numerous successful drug approvals and led the medical and scientific strategies for Genentech's immunology, tissue growth and repair drug portfolio. Dr. Hillan also served on the board of directors of Relypsa Inc., a publicly traded biotechnology company that was acquired in September 2016 by Galencia AG for \$1.5 billion, from June 2014 to July 2016. Dr. Hillan has an M.B. Ch.B. (Bachelor of Medicine and Surgery) degree from the Faculty of Medicine at the University of Glasgow in the United Kingdom. Dr. Hillan is a Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons, and a Fellow of the Royal College of Pathologists.

*Hollings Renton*

Mr. Renton has served as a member of our board of directors since February 2017. Mr. Renton served as CEO and President of Onyx Pharmaceuticals, Inc. from 1993 to 2008 and was the chairperson of the board of directors of Onyx from 2000 to 2008. Onyx was acquired by Amgen Inc. in 2013 for \$10.4 billion. Before joining Onyx, Mr. Renton was the President and Chief Operating Officer of Chiron Corporation, a pharmaceutical company, from 1991 to 1993. Mr. Renton served in a variety of executive roles at Cetus Corporation from 1983 prior to its acquisition by Chiron in 1991. Mr. Renton currently serves as co-chairperson of the board of directors of Portola Pharmaceuticals Inc. and on the board of directors of AnaptysBio Inc. Previously, Mr. Renton served on the boards of three biopharmaceutical companies, Kythera Biopharmaceuticals (2014 to 2015), Affymax (2009 to 2014) and Rigel Pharmaceuticals (2004 to 2014). Mr. Renton received his M.B.A. from the University of Michigan and his B.S. in Mathematics from Colorado State University.

**Corporate Governance**

Section 310.00 of the NYSE Listed Company Manual generally requires that a listed company’s articles provide for a quorum for any meeting of the holders of the company’s common shares that is sufficiently high to insure a representative vote. Pursuant to the NYSE corporate governance rules we, as a foreign private issuer, have elected to comply with practices that are permitted under Canadian law in lieu of the provisions of Section 310.00. Our articles that will be in force immediately prior to the closing of this offering will provide that a quorum of shareholders is the holders of at least \_\_\_\_\_ % of the shares entitled to vote at the meeting, present in person or represented by proxy, and at least two persons entitled to vote at the meeting, present in person or represented by proxy.

Except as stated above, we intend to comply with the rules generally applicable to U.S. domestic companies listed on the NYSE. We may in the future decide to use other foreign private issuer exemptions with respect to some of the other listing requirements. Following our home country governance practices, as opposed to the requirements that would otherwise apply to a company listed on the NYSE, may provide less protection than is accorded to investors under listing requirements applicable to U.S. domestic issuers.

The Canadian Securities Administrators has issued corporate governance guidelines pursuant to National Policy 58-201–Corporate Governance Guidelines, or the Corporate Governance Guidelines, together with certain related disclosure requirements pursuant to National Instrument 58-101—Disclosure of Corporate Governance Practices, or NI 58-101. The Corporate Governance Guidelines are recommended as “best practices” for issuers to follow. We recognize that good corporate governance plays an important role in our overall success and in enhancing shareholder value and, accordingly, we have adopted, or will be adopting in connection with the closing of this offering, certain corporate governance policies and practices which reflect our consideration of the recommended Corporate Governance Guidelines.

The disclosure set out below includes disclosure required by NI 58-101 describing our approach to corporate governance in relation to the Corporate Governance Guidelines.

**Board Composition and Election of Directors**

*Board Composition*

Our board of directors currently consists of nine members. Under the BCBCA, a director may be removed with or without cause by a resolution passed by a majority of the votes cast by shareholders present in person or by proxy at a meeting and who are entitled to vote. The directors are appointed at the annual general meeting of shareholders and the term of office for each of the directors will expire at the time of our next annual shareholders meeting. Following the continuance of our company under the BCBCA, the director residency requirements in the CBCA will cease to apply. Our articles in effect immediately prior to closing will provide that, between annual general meetings of our shareholders, the directors may appoint one or more additional directors, but the number of additional directors may not at any time exceed one-third of the number of directors who held office at the expiration of the last meeting of our shareholders.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Under the articles, the number of directors of Zymeworks will be set at a minimum of three and a maximum of 10 and the directors are authorized to determine the actual number of directors to be elected from time to time.

Pursuant to the amended and restated voting agreement dated January 7, 2016, or the Voting Agreement, among Zymeworks, the holders of the Class A preferred shares, certain holders of common shares and those shareholders of Zymeworks who agree to become party to the Voting Agreement, or the Voting Agreement Shareholders, each Voting Agreement Shareholder agrees to vote, or cause to be voted, all shares owned, controlled or directed to ensure that the following persons shall be elected to the board of directors of Zymeworks:

- (a) One individual designated by CTI Life Sciences Fund, L.P., currently Dr. Tilley;
- (b) One individual designated by Eli Lilly and Company, Inc. and its Affiliates, currently Dr. Blanchard; and
- (c) One individual designated by BDC Capital Inc., currently Mr. Madsen.

Pursuant to the Voting Agreement, Zymeworks agrees to ensure that the Voting Agreement Shareholders hold, collectively, not less than 66 2/3% of the voting power held by all holders of Zymeworks' capital stock then outstanding. The Voting Agreement, including the board composition and voting rights described therein and noted above, will terminate immediately prior to the consummation of this offering. See "Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions."

We have no formal policy regarding board diversity. Our priority in the selection of our board members is identifying members who will further the interests of our shareholders through his or her established record of professional accomplishment, the ability to contribute positively to the collaborative culture among board members, knowledge of our business and understanding of the competitive landscape.

### **Majority Voting Policy**

In accordance with the requirements of the TSX, we will adopt a "Majority Voting Policy" to the effect that a nominee for election as a director of Zymeworks who does not receive a greater number of votes "for" than votes "withheld" with respect to the election of directors by shareholders will be expected to offer to tender his or her resignation to the Chairman of our board of directors promptly following the meeting of shareholders at which the director was elected. The nominating and corporate governance committee will consider such offer and make a recommendation to our board of directors whether to accept it or not. Our board of directors will promptly accept the resignation unless it determines, in consultation with the nominating and corporate governance committee, that there are exceptional circumstances that should delay the acceptance of the resignation or justify rejecting it. Our board of directors will make its decision and announce it in a press release within 90 days following the meeting of shareholders. A director who tenders a resignation pursuant to our Majority Voting Policy will not participate in any meeting of our board of directors or the nominating and corporate governance committee at which the resignation is considered. Our majority voting policy will not apply for contested meetings at which the number of directors nominated for election is greater than the number of seats available on the board.

### **Director Term Limits and Other Mechanisms of Board Renewal**

Our board of directors has not adopted director term limits or other automatic mechanisms of board renewal. Rather than adopting formal term limits, mandatory age-related retirement policies and other mechanisms of board renewal, the nominating and corporate governance committee of our board of directors will develop a skills and competencies matrix for our board as a whole and for individual directors. The nominating and corporate governance committee will also conduct a process for the assessment of our board of directors, each committee and each director regarding his, her or its effectiveness and contribution, and will report evaluation results to our board of directors on a regular basis.

## **Independence of the Members of the Board of Directors**

### ***Director Independence***

Applicable NYSE rules require a majority of a listed company's board of directors to be comprised of independent directors within one year of listing. Under the policies of the TSX, the board of directors must have at least two independent directors. Under applicable NYSE rules, a director will only qualify as an "independent director" if, in the opinion of the listed company's board of directors, that person does not have a relationship that would interfere with the exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of a director. Under NI 58-101, a director is considered to be independent if he or she is independent within the meaning of National Instrument 52-110-Audit Committees, or NI 52-110. Pursuant to NI 52-110, an independent director is a director who is free from any direct or indirect relationship which could, in the view of our board of directors, be reasonably expected to interfere with a director's independent judgment.

Consistent with these considerations, and based on information provided by each director concerning his or her background, employment and affiliations, our board of directors has affirmatively determined that Nick Bedford, Noel Hall, Dion Madsen, Lota Zoth, Kenneth Hillan and Hollings Renton representing 6 of 9 members of our board of directors, are "independent" as that term is defined under the listing standards of the NYSE and NI-58-101. In making this determination, our board of directors considered the current and prior relationships that each non-employee director has with our company and all other facts and circumstances our board of directors deemed relevant in determining their independence, including the beneficial ownership of our shares by each non-employee director. Dr. Tehrani is not independent by reason of the fact that he is our Chief Executive Officer. Dr. Blanchard and Dr. Tilley are not independent by reason of the fact that they are designated board representatives of our affiliates Eli Lilly & Company and CTI Life Science Fund, L.P., respectively.

### ***Mandate of the Board of Directors***

Our board of directors will hold regularly-scheduled quarterly meetings as well as *ad hoc* meetings from time to time. The independent members of our board of directors will also meet, as required, without the non-independent directors and members of management before or after each regularly scheduled board meeting.

A director who has a material interest in a matter before our board of directors or any committee on which he or she serves is required to disclose such interest as soon as the director becomes aware of it. In situations where a director has a material interest in a matter to be considered by our board of directors or any committee on which he or she serves, such director may be required to absent himself or herself from the meeting while discussions and voting with respect to the matter are taking place. Directors will also be required to comply with the relevant provisions of the BCBCA regarding conflicts of interest.

### ***Meetings of Directors***

Our board of directors is responsible for supervising the management of our business and affairs, including providing guidance and strategic oversight to management. Our board will adopt a formal mandate that will include the following:

- appointing our Chief Executive Officer;
- developing the corporate goals and objectives that our Chief Executive Officer is responsible for meeting and reviewing the performance of our Chief Executive Officer against such corporate goals and objectives;
- taking steps to satisfy itself as to the integrity of our Chief Executive Officer and other executive officers and that our Chief Executive Officer and other executive officers create a culture of integrity throughout the organization;
- reviewing and approving our code of conduct and reviewing and monitoring compliance with the code of conduct and our enterprise risk management processes;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- adopting a strategic planning process to establish objectives and goals for our business and reviewing, approving, and modifying, as appropriate, the strategies proposed by management to achieve such objectives and goals; and
- reviewing and approving material transactions not in the ordinary course of business.

### **Board Committees**

Our board of directors has an audit committee, a compensation committee and a corporate governance committee.

#### ***Compensation Committee***

Our compensation committee currently consists of Ms. Zoth, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, and will be chaired by \_\_\_\_\_. Under SEC and the NYSE rules, there are heightened independence standards for members of the compensation committee. All of our compensation committee members meet this heightened standard and are also independent for purposes of NI 58-101. For a description of the background and experience of each member of our compensation committee, see “Management—Executive Officers and Directors.” The functions of this committee include:

- reviewing and making recommendation with respect to compensation policy and programs and determining and recommending option grants under our incentive stock plan;
- reviewing and recommending to our board of directors the manner in which executive compensation should be tied to corporate goals;
- reviewing and approving annually the corporate goals and objectives applicable to the compensation of the Chief Executive Officer, evaluate at least annually the Chief Executive Officer’s performance in light of those goals and objectives and determine and approve the Chief Executive Officer’s compensation level based on this evaluation;
- making recommendations to our board of directors regarding the compensation of all other executive officers;
- reviewing and making recommendations to our board of directors regarding incentive compensation plans and equity-based plans, which includes the ability to adopt, amend and terminate such plans;
- authority to administer Zymeworks’ non-executive incentive compensation plans and equity-based plans, including designation of the employees to whom the awards are to be granted, the amount of the award or equity to be granted and the terms and conditions applicable to each award or grant, subject to the provisions of each plan; and
- reviewing director compensation for service on our board of directors and board committees at least once a year and to recommend any changes to our board of directors.

Our board of directors will establish a written charter setting forth the purpose, composition, authority and responsibility of our compensation committee consistent with the rules of the NYSE, the SEC and the guidance of the Canadian Securities Administrators.

#### ***Audit Committee***

Our audit committee consists of Ms. Zoth, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. Ms. Zoth serves as the chair of our audit committee and has been identified as an “audit committee financial expert” as that term is defined in the rules and regulations established by the SEC. The members of our audit committee are “financially literate” and “independent” within the meaning of the NYSE and NI 52-110. Ms. Zoth currently serves on the audit committees of three public companies: NewLink Genetics Corporation (NASDAQ), Orexigen Therapeutics, Inc.

## [Table of Contents](#)

(NASDAQ) and Spark Therapeutics, Inc. (NASDAQ). Our board of directors has determined that Ms. Zoth's simultaneous service on those audit committees does not impair her ability to effectively serve on our audit committee. For additional details regarding the relevant education and experience of each member of our audit committee see "Management—Executive Officers and Directors." The principal purpose of our audit committee is to assist our board of directors in discharging its oversight of:

- the quality and integrity of our financial statements and related information;
- the independence, qualifications, appointment and performance of our external auditor;
- our disclosure controls and procedures, internal control over financial reporting and management's responsibility for assessing and reporting on the effectiveness of such controls;
- our compliance with applicable legal and regulatory requirements; and
- our enterprise risk management processes.

Our board of directors will establish a written charter setting forth the purpose, composition, authority and responsibility of our audit committee, consistent with the rules of the NYSE, the SEC and NI 52-110.

Our audit committee has access to all of our books, records, facilities and personnel and may request any information about us as it may deem appropriate. It also has the authority in its sole discretion and at our expense, to retain and set the compensation of outside legal, accounting or other advisors as necessary to assist in the performance of its duties and responsibilities.

Both our independent auditors and internal financial personnel regularly meet privately with the audit committee and have unrestricted access to this committee. KPMG LLP was appointed as our independent registered public accountant by resolution of our board of directors on June 24, 2015. See "Changes in Registrant's Certifying Accountant." Aggregate fees billed by our independent auditors, KPMG LLP for the year ended December 31, 2015 were approximately C\$76,560. Subsequent to KPMG LLP's appointment as our independent auditors, we engaged KPMG LLP to audit our consolidated financial statements as at and for the year ended December 31, 2014.

	Fiscal 2015 (C\$)	Fiscal 2015 (\$)(5)	Fiscal 2014 (C\$)	Fiscal 2014 (\$)(5)
Audit Fees(1)	\$ 76,560	\$ 57,019	\$ 116,175	\$ 86,523
Audit-Related Fees(2)	—	—	—	—
Tax Fees(3)	—	—	—	—
All Other Fees(4)	—	—	—	—
<b>Total Fees Paid</b>	<b>\$ 76,560</b>	<b>\$ 57,019</b>	<b>\$ 116,175</b>	<b>\$ 86,523</b>

(1) Fees for audit service on an accrued basis.

(2) Fees not included in audit fees that are billed by the auditor for assurance and related services that are reasonably related to the performance of the audit review of the our financial statements.

(3) Fees for professional services rendered for tax compliance, tax advice and tax planning.

(4) All other fees billed by the auditor for products and services not included in the foregoing categories.

(5) Canadian dollar amounts have been converted to U.S. dollars based on the historical Canadian to U.S. noon rate of exchange as at December 31, 2016. For further information, see "Exchange Rate Data."

Before being dismissed as our independent registered accountant on June 24, 2015, PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP audited the financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2014. Aggregate fees billed by PricewaterhouseCoopers through the interim period ended March 31, 2015 and for the year ended December 31,

## [Table of Contents](#)

2014 were approximately C\$124,897 and C\$258,693 or \$93,019 and \$192,666, as converted, respectively, as detailed below.

	Fiscal 2015 (C\$)	Fiscal 2015 (\$)(5)	Fiscal 2014 (C\$)	Fiscal 2014 (\$)(5)
Audit Fees(1)	\$ 10,500	\$ 7,820	\$ 70,169	\$ 52,260
Audit-Related Fees(2)	—	—	78,051	58,130
Tax Fees(3)	114,397	85,199	110,473	82,277
All Other Fees(4)	—	—	—	—
Total Fees Paid	<u>\$124,897</u>	<u>\$ 93,019</u>	<u>\$258,693</u>	<u>\$ 192,666</u>

(1) Fees for audit service on an accrued basis.

(2) Fees not included in audit fees that are billed by the auditor for assurance and related services that are reasonably related to the performance of the audit review of our financial statements.

(3) Fees for professional services rendered for tax compliance, tax advice and tax planning.

(4) All other fees billed by the auditor for products and services not included in the foregoing categories.

(5) Canadian dollar amounts have been converted to U.S. dollars based on the historical Canadian to U.S. noon rate of exchange as at December 31, 2016. For further information, see "Exchange Rate Data."

Total fees paid to date to KPMG LLP and PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP for all services relating to the fiscal 2015 and 2014 years were C\$576,325 or \$429,228, as converted.

### ***Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee***

Our nominating and corporate governance committee will be comprised \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, each of whom is independent for purposes of NI 58-101. The nominating and corporate governance committee will be chaired by Mr. Bedford.

Our board of directors will establish a written charter setting forth the purpose, composition, authority and responsibility of our nominating and corporate governance committee. The nominating and corporate governance committee's purpose is to assist our board of directors in:

- identifying individuals qualified to become members of our board of directors;
- selecting or recommending that our board of directors select director nominees for the next annual meeting of shareholders and determining the composition of our board of directors and its committees;
- developing and overseeing a process to assess our board of directors, the Chairman of the board, the committees of the board, the chairs of the committees, individual directors and management; and
- developing and implementing our corporate governance guidelines.

Our board of directors will establish a written charter setting forth the purpose, composition, authority and responsibility of our nominating and corporate governance committee.

In identifying new candidates for our board of directors, the nominating and corporate governance committee will consider what competencies and skills our board of directors, as a whole, should possess and assess what competencies and skills each existing director possesses, considering our board of directors as a group, and the personality and other qualities of each director, as these may ultimately determine the boardroom dynamic.

It will be the responsibility of the nominating and corporate governance committee to regularly evaluate the overall efficiency of our board of directors and our Chairman and all board committees and their chairs. As part of its mandate, the nominating and corporate governance committee will conduct the process for the assessment of our board of directors, each committee and each director regarding his, her or its effectiveness and contribution, and report evaluation results to our board of directors on a regular basis.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Director Attendance**

The following table contains information on the attendance of each director for all of our board of director meetings held since January 1, 2016:

<b>Director</b>	<b>Attendance</b>	
Nick Bedford	9 of 9	100%
Donald Drakeman, Ph.D.(1)	8 of 9	89%
Dion Madsen, B. Comm, CFA	8 of 9	89%
Noel Hall	8 of 9	89%
Ali Tehrani, Ph.D.	9 of 9	100%
Amos Michelson, MBA(2)	4 of 6	67%
Shermaine Tilley, Ph.D., MBA	7 of 9	78%
Kerry Blanchard, Ph.D., M.D.	1 of 9	11%
Lota Zoth, CPA(3)	4 of 4	100%
Hollings Renton(4)	1 of 1	100%
Kenneth Hillan(4)	1 of 1	100%

- (1) Dr. Drakeman stepped down from the board of directors at the February 3, 2017 board of directors meeting. His departure was on good terms and he continues to work with Zymeworks and our board of directors as a special advisor. Dr. Drakeman's attendance as at February 3, 2017 was 89%.
- (2) Mr. Michelson stepped down from the board of directors at the November 9, 2016 board of directors meeting. His departure was on good terms. Mr. Michelson's attendance as at November 9, 2016 was 67%.
- (3) Ms. Zoth joined the board of directors on November 9, 2016.
- (4) Mr. Renton and Dr. Hillan joined the board of directors on February 3, 2017.

### **Code of Business Conduct and Ethics**

We will adopt a Code of Conduct and Ethics, or Code of Conduct, applicable to all of our directors, officers and employees, including our Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, controller or principal accounting officer, or other persons performing similar functions, which is a "code of ethics" as defined in Item 16B of Form 20-F promulgated by the SEC and which is a "code" under NI 58-101. The Code of Conduct will set out our fundamental values and standards of behavior that are expected from our directors, officers and employees with respect to all aspects of our business. The objective of the Code of Conduct will be to provide guidelines for maintaining our integrity, reputation and honesty at all times.

Upon the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part, the full text of the Code of Conduct will be posted on our website at [www.zymeworks.com](http://www.zymeworks.com). The written Code of Conduct will also be filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities on SEDAR at [www.sedar.com](http://www.sedar.com). Information contained on, or that can be accessed through, our website does not constitute a part of this prospectus and is not incorporated by reference herein. If we make any amendment to the Code of Conduct or grant any waivers, including any implicit waiver, from a provision of the code of ethics, we will disclose the nature of such amendment or waiver on our website to the extent required by the rules and regulations of the SEC and the Canadian Securities Administrators. Under Item 16B of the SEC's Form 20-F, if a waiver or amendment of the Code of Conduct applies to our principal executive officer, principal financial officer, principal accounting officer or controller and relates to standards promoting any of the values described in Item 16B(b) of Form 20-F, we will disclose such waiver or amendment on our website in accordance with the requirements of Instruction 4 to such Item 16B.

### **Monitoring Compliance with the Code of Conduct**

Our nominating and corporate governance committee will be responsible for reviewing and evaluating the Code of Conduct at least annually and will recommend any necessary or appropriate changes to our board of

## [Table of Contents](#)

directors for consideration. The nominating and corporate governance committee will assist our board of directors with the monitoring of compliance with the Code of Business Conduct and Ethics, and will be responsible for considering any waivers of the Code of Conduct (other than waivers applicable to members of the nominating and corporate governance committee, which shall be considered by the audit committee, or waivers applicable to our directors or executive officers, which shall be subject to review by our board of directors as a whole).

### **Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation**

None of the members of our compensation committee at any time has been one of our officers or employees. None of our executive officers currently serves, or in the past year has served, as a member of the board of directors or compensation committee of any entity that has one or more executive officers on our board of directors or compensation committee.

### **Position Descriptions**

Our board of directors will adopt a written position description for the Chairman of the board of directors, which sets out the Chairman's key responsibilities, including, among others, duties relating to setting board of director meeting agendas, chairing board of director and shareholder meetings, director development and communicating with shareholders and regulators.

Our board of directors will adopt a written position description for each of our committee chairs which sets out each of the committee chair's key responsibilities, including, among others, duties relating to setting committee meeting agendas, chairing committee meetings and working with the respective committee and management to ensure, to the greatest extent possible, the effective functioning of the committee.

Our board of directors will adopt a written position description for our Chief Executive Officer which sets out the key responsibilities of our Chief Executive Officer, including, among other duties in relation to providing overall leadership, working with the board of directors to develop the strategic direction of the Company and the annual corporate plan and budget, and supervising the day-to-day management of the Company and communicating with shareholders.

### **Orientation and Continuing Education**

Following the closing of this offering, we will implement an orientation program for new directors under which a new director will meet separately with the Chairman of our board of directors, our lead director, if applicable, members of the senior executive team and the secretary.

The chair of each committee will be responsible for coordinating orientation and continuing director development programs relating to the committee's mandate. The Chairman of our board of directors will be responsible for overseeing director continuing education designed to maintain or enhance the skills and abilities of our directors and to ensure that their knowledge and understanding of our business remains current.

## EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

### Introduction

The following section describes the significant elements of our executive compensation program. Our named executive officers for the year ended December 31, 2016 include our principal executive officer and our two other most highly-compensated executive officers in accordance with SEC rules. Three additional “named executive officers” are included below in accordance with the requirements under applicable Canadian securities laws:

- Ali Tehrani, Ph.D., President and Chief Executive Officer;
- Neil Klompas, CPA, CA, Chief Financial Officer;
- Surjit Dixit, Ph.D., Vice President, Technology;
- Diana Hausman, M.D., Chief Medical Officer;
- John Babcook, Senior Vice President Discovery Research; and
- Gordon Ng, Ph.D., former Chief Scientific Officer.

### Overview

#### *Compensation Philosophy*

The goal of our compensation program is to attract, retain and motivate our employees and executives. The compensation committee is responsible for setting our executive compensation and establishing corporate performance objectives. In considering executive compensation, the compensation committee strives to ensure that our total compensation is competitive within the industry in which we operate and supports our overall strategy and corporate objectives. The combination of base salary, annual incentives and long-term incentives that we provide our executive officers is designed to accomplish this. The compensation committee considers the implications of the risks associated with our compensation policies and practices. For additional details regarding the relevant education and experience of each member of our compensation committee see “Management—Executive Officers and Directors.” Our named executive officers and directors are not permitted to purchase financial instruments, including, for greater certainty, prepaid variable forward contracts, equity swaps, collars, or units of exchange funds, that are designed to hedge or offset a decrease in market value of equity securities granted as compensation or held, directly or indirectly, by the named executive officer or director.

#### *Components of Compensation Package*

There are two major components of our executive compensation program:

- Base salary; and
- Variable-performance based compensation, consisting of:
  - annual cash bonuses based on a comparison of individual and corporate performance to pre-set goals and objectives; and
  - long-term incentives, consisting of annual grants of long-term stock options.

### **Determining Compensation**

In second half of year 2015, Radford, part of Aon Hewitt (a business unit of Aon plc), was retained by the compensation committee to conduct a competitive review and assessment of Zymeworks' executive compensation program and recommend go-forward strategies. The compensation committee was involved in and approved of the adoption of the following procedures during Radford's assessment:

- establishing the public company peer group used in the executive compensation assessment;
- reviewing the detailed assessment of Zymeworks' executive compensation program versus the market;
- reviewing and approving executive pay mix; and
- reviewing and approving equity ownership levels.

The compensation committee will utilize these strategies when contemplating future executive compensation matters.

In addition to the compensation services provided to the directors and executive officers, in 2016 Radford was retained to review the salaries, bonuses and equity plan participation of employees below the executive level.

	Executive Compensation Related Fees	Other Fees
2015	\$ 7,224	—
2016	\$ 104,524	\$5,900

### **Base Salary**

Annual base salary is designed to provide a competitive fixed rate of pay recognizing different levels of responsibility and performance within Zymeworks. In determining whether to increase the base salary for a particular executive, our compensation committee in discussions with our Chief Executive Officer (for executive officers other than the Chief Executive Officer) considers a variety of factors, including performance, length of service and criticality of role.

### **Bonus**

The annual cash incentive compensation represents pay at risk — it is only paid out if and to the extent certain goals and objectives are met. The annual cash incentive that each executive is eligible to receive is based on a pre-determined target percentage of his/her base salary. Our board of directors approves performance targets that are tied to the level of achievement of corporate and individual goals. The compensation committee of our board of directors approves the weighting assigned to each goal. For 2016, the corporate and individual weighting was 50% corporate, 50% individual for all executive officers except the Chief Executive Officer (for whom the corporate goal was weighted at 100%). Corporate goals are a combination of strategic and operational goals. In 2016, we had corporate goals tied to IND filings for our product candidates, ZW25 and ZW33, as well as to other business development and corporate finance milestones. In the future, we intend to have corporate goals tied to measures such as revenue and earnings per share targets.

The compensation committee determines performance bonus payments based on the results achieved as compared to targets established for a particular fiscal year.

The compensation committee has the sole discretion to award the amount corresponding to the level of achievement.

### **Long-Term Incentives**

Our stock option plan authorizes us to make grants to eligible recipients of stock options to attract, retain, motivate and reward qualified directors and employees and to enable and encourage such directors and employees to acquire common shares as long term investments.

## [Table of Contents](#)

We set the option exercise price and grant date fair value based on our per-share valuation on the date of grant. For most grants of stock options, 25% of the granted options will vest on the first anniversary of grant date (subject to continued service). On the last day of each month thereafter, a further 1/36 of the total number of remaining granted options will vest. Previous grants are taken into account when considering new option grants.

Please see “— Employee Benefit Plans” for information relating to additional current and future benefit plans.

### **Other Compensation**

Amounts shown in the “All Other Compensation” column in the Summary Compensation Table relate to contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, provincial health care premium, life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan, extended medical benefits premiums, parking charges at our office and fitness plan reimbursement.

### **Summary Compensation Table**

The following table presents the compensation awarded to, earned by or paid to each of our named executive officers for the years ended December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015. We do not have compensation in the form of share-based awards (other than stock options), non-equity incentive plan compensation or non-qualified deferred compensation.

<b>Name and Position</b>	<b>Year</b>	<b>Salary \$(1)</b>	<b>Bonus \$(1)(2)</b>	<b>Option Awards \$(1)(3)</b>	<b>All Other Compensation \$(1)</b>	<b>Total \$</b>
Ali Tehrani, Ph.D. President and Chief Executive Officer	2016	301,747	120,699	1,212,673	14,023(4)	1,649,142
	2015	223,663	55,916	125,717	12,119(5)	417,415
Neil Klompas, CPA, CA Chief Financial Officer	2016	207,451	62,235	519,717	13,115(6)	802,518
	2015	183,779	36,756	125,717	10,889(7)	357,141
Surjit Dixit, Ph.D. Vice President, Technology	2016	199,907	59,972	225,211	12,807(8)	497,897
	2015	173,612	34,722	125,717	10,502(9)	344,553
Diana Hausman, M.D. Chief Medical Officer(14)	2016	233,333	70,000	190,307	16,245(10)	509,885
	2015	—	—	—	—	—
John Babcook Senior Vice President Discovery Research(14)	2016	153,912	49,034	190,307	7,461(11)	400,714
	2015	—	—	—	—	—
Gordon Ng, Ph.D. former Chief Scientific Officer	2016	200,450	69,025	519,717	47,303(12)	836,495
	2015	191,599	38,320	125,717	12,504(13)	368,140

- (1) With the exception of our Chief Medical Officer, 2016 cash compensation amounts for all named executive officers were paid in Canadian dollars and have been converted to U.S. dollars for the purposes of the table. For 2016, the U.S. dollar per Canadian dollar exchange rate used for such conversion was 0.7544, which was the average Bank of Canada exchange rate for the 2016 fiscal year. All option awards, including the option awards granted to our Chief Medical Officer, were paid in Canadian dollars and converted as indicated. Effective as of January 1, 2017, salary for all executive officers is paid in U.S. dollars.
- (2) The amounts reflect the performance bonuses paid in 2017 for performance during 2016, as discussed further above under “Executive Compensation—Overview—Bonus.”
- (3) The amounts set forth in this column reflect the aggregate grant date fair value for option awards computed in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification Topic 718, *Compensation—Stock Compensation*. See the “Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements—Summary of Significant Accounting Policies—Share-based compensation.”

## Table of Contents

- (4) Of the total amount for 2016, (i) \$9,052 represents contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, (ii) \$170 represents provincial health care premium, (iii) \$1,624 represents life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan, (iv) \$1,910 represents extended medical benefits premiums, (v) \$1,267 represents parking charges at our office.
- (5) Of the total amount for 2015, (i) \$6,710 represents contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, (ii) \$324 represents provincial health care premium, (iii) \$1,436 represents life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan, (iv) \$2,335 represents extended medical benefits premiums, (v) \$1,314 represents parking charges at our office.
- (6) Of the total amount for 2016, (i) \$7,520 represents contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, (ii) \$339 represents provincial health care premium, (iii) \$1,624 represents life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan, (iv) \$2,365 represents extended medical benefits premiums, (v) \$1,267 represents parking charges at our office.
- (7) Of the total amount for 2015, (i) \$5,513 represents contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, (ii) \$339 represents provincial health care premium, (iii) \$1,354 represents life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan, (iv) \$2,379 represents extended medical benefits premiums, (v) \$1,314 represents parking charges at our office.
- (8) Of the total amount for 2016, (i) \$7,247 represents contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, (ii) \$339 represents provincial health care premium, (iii) \$1,588 represents life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan, (iv) \$2,365 represents extended medical benefits premiums, (v) \$1,267 represents parking charges at our office.
- (9) Of the total amount for 2015, (i) \$5,208 represents contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, (ii) \$339 represents provincial health care premium, (iii) \$1,262 represents life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan, (iv) \$2,379 represents extended medical benefits premiums, (v) \$1,314 represents parking charges at our office.
- (10) Of the total amount for 2016, (i) \$10,417 represents contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, (ii) \$1,194 represents life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan and (iii) \$4,634 represents extended medical benefits premium.
- (11) Of the total amount for 2016, (i) \$4,617 represents contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, (ii) \$283 represents provincial health care premium, (iii) \$1,232 represents life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan, (iv) \$1,329 represents extended medical benefits premium.
- (12) Of the total amount for 2016, (i) \$6,902 represents contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, (ii) \$339 represents provincial health care premium, (iii) \$1,566 represents life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan, (iv) \$2,365 represents extended medical benefits premiums, (v) \$1,095 represents parking charges at our office, (vi) \$1,937 represents other travel support payments, (vii) \$182 represents fitness benefits and (viii) \$32,917 represents amounts paid pursuant to an arrangement in connection with Dr. Gordon Ng's termination as agreed to in a separation agreement and release, dated November 17, 2016. Dr. Gordon Ng and the Company mutually agreed to terminate their employment relationship on good terms.
- (13) Of the total amount for 2015, (i) \$5,748 represents contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, (ii) \$339 represents provincial health care premium, (iii) \$1,339 represents life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan, (iv) \$2,379 represents extended medical benefits premiums, (v) \$1,204 represents parking charges at our office. (vi) \$1,330 represents other travel support payments and (vii) \$165 represents fitness benefits.
- (14) Dr. Hausman and Mr. Babcook joined the Company in 2016. Therefore, they have no compensation to report for the year ended 2015.

**Outstanding Equity Awards at 2016 Fiscal Year End**

The following table lists all outstanding equity awards held by our named executive officers as of December 31, 2016.

Name	Grant Date(1)	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options # Exercisable	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options # Unexercisable	Option Exercise Price (C\$)	Option Exercise Price (\$)(2)	Option Expiration Date	Value of Unexercised in the Money Options (C\$)(3)	Value of Unexercised in the Money Options (\$)(2)(3)
Ali Tehrani, Ph.D.	1/1/2012	140,000	—	2.25	1.68	12/31/2021	315,000	234,602
	1/1/2013	50,000	—	3.04	2.26	12/31/2022	152,000	113,205
	1/1/2014	37,500	12,500	4.86	3.62	12/31/2023	182,250	135,734
	1/1/2015	28,000	28,000	6.05	4.51	12/31/2024	169,400	126,164
	1/29/2016	—	700,000	5.07	3.78	1/28/2026	—	—
Neil Klompas, CPA, CA	7/1/2007	16,000	—	1.5	1.12	6/30/2017	24,000	17,874
	1/1/2008	49,765	—	1.99	1.48	12/31/2017	99,032	73,756
	7/1/2009	20,000	—	1.99	1.48	6/30/2019	39,800	29,642
	1/1/2012	20,000	—	2.25	1.68	12/31/2021	45,000	33,515
	1/1/2013	50,000	—	3.04	2.26	12/31/2022	152,000	113,205
	1/1/2014	37,500	12,500	4.86	3.62	12/31/2023	182,250	135,734
	1/1/2015	28,000	28,000	6.05	4.51	12/31/2024	169,400	126,164
	1/29/2016	—	300,000	5.07	3.78	1/28/2026	—	—
Surjit Dixit, Ph.D.	7/1/2007	16,000	—	1.5	1.12	6/30/2017	24,000	17,874
	1/1/2008	3,957	—	1.99	1.48	12/31/2017	7,874	5,864
	7/1/2009	65,000	—	1.99	1.48	6/30/2019	129,350	96,336
	1/1/2011	10,000	—	1.99	1.48	12/31/2020	19,900	14,821
	1/1/2012	10,000	—	2.25	1.68	12/31/2021	22,500	16,757
	1/1/2013	50,000	—	3.04	2.26	12/31/2022	152,000	113,205
	1/1/2014	37,500	12,500	4.86	3.62	12/31/2023	182,250	135,734
	1/1/2015	28,000	28,000	6.05	4.51	12/31/2024	169,400	126,164
	1/29/2016	—	130,000	5.07	3.78	1/28/2026	—	—
Diana Hausman, M.D.(4)	11/9/2016	—	58,955	8.69	6.47	11/8/2026	—	—
John Babcook(4)	11/9/2016	—	63,062	8.69	6.47	11/8/2026	—	—
Gordon Ng, Ph.D.(5)	1/1/2012	39,000	—	2.25	1.68	10/31/2017	87,750	65,353
	1/1/2013	50,000	—	3.04	2.26	10/31/2017	152,000	113,205
	1/1/2014	50,000	—	4.86	3.62	10/31/2017	243,000	180,979
	1/1/2015	56,000	—	6.05	4.51	10/31/2017	338,800	252,327
	1/29/2016	75,000	—	5.07	3.78	10/31/2017	380,250	283,198

- (1) Options vest and become exercisable with respect to (i) 25% of the underlying shares one year after the grant date and (ii) the remainder of the underlying shares in 36 equal monthly installments following the first anniversary of the grant date.
- (2) Canadian dollar amounts have been converted to U.S. dollars based on the historical Canadian to U.S. noon rate of exchange as at December 31, 2016. For further information, see “Exchange Rate Data.”
- (3) These figures represent the number of vested and exercisable options multiplied by the applicable option exercise price.
- (4) Dr. Hausman and Mr. Babcook joined the Company in 2016. Therefore, they have no equity awards to report prior to 2016.
- (5) Dr. Gordon Ng and the Company mutually agreed to terminate their employment relationship on good terms and pursuant to a separation agreement and release, dated November 17, 2016.

**Incentive Plan Awards—Value Vested or Earned During the Year**

The following table indicates, for each of the named executive officers, a summary of the value of the option-based awards expected to be vested in accordance with their terms during the year ending December 31, 2016.

<u>Name</u>	<u>Option-based awards— Value vested during the year (\$)</u>
Ali Tehrani, Ph.D.	75,626
Neil Klompas, CPA, CA	75,626
Surjit Dixit, Ph.D.	75,626
Diana Hausman, M.D.	—
John Babcock	—
Gordon Ng, Ph.D.	57,458

(1) Dr. Hausman joined the Company in 2016. Therefore, she has no vested awards to report for the year ended 2016.

(2) Mr. Babcock joined the Company in 2016. Therefore, he has no vested awards to report for the year ended 2016.

**Executive Employment Arrangements and Termination and Change in Control Benefits**

On December 13, 2007, we entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Ali Tehrani setting forth the terms and conditions of his employment as our President and Chief Executive Officer, which provided for his initial base salary and which includes, among other things, provisions regarding confidentiality, ownership of developments, non-competition and non-solicitation, as well as eligibility for our incentive plans. On January 1, 2014 and January 17, 2017, we entered into amending employment agreements with Dr. Tehrani. The revised termination and change of control provisions under Dr. Tehrani's current agreement are set out in detail below.

On January 25, 2007, we entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Neil Klompas, our current Chief Financial Officer, setting forth the terms and conditions of his employment as our Director of Finance & Operations, which provided for his initial base salary and initial equity award, and which includes, among other things, provisions regarding confidentiality, ownership of developments, non-competition and non-solicitation, as well as eligibility for our incentive plans. On October 23, 2007 and January 1, 2014, we entered into amending agreements which increased Mr. Klompas' vacation entitlement and on January 17, 2017, we entered into a further amending employment agreement with Mr. Klompas. The revised termination and change of control provisions under Mr. Klompas' new agreement are set out in detail below.

On July 1 2007, we entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Surjit Dixit, our current Vice President, Technology, setting forth the terms and conditions of his employment as a Molecular Simulation Scientist, which provided for his initial base salary and initial equity award, and which includes, among other things, provisions regarding confidentiality, ownership of developments, non-competition and non-solicitation, as well as eligibility for our incentive plans. Dr. Dixit's employment agreement also specifies, in the case of termination of employment other than for cause, Dr. Dixit will be entitled to one month notice, or the equivalent base salary, and an additional one month notice, or the equivalent base salary, for each additional completed year of service, up to a total maximum of six months. On October 23, 2007, we entered into an amending agreement, which increased Dr. Dixit's holiday entitlement and on January 17, 2017, we entered into a further amending employment agreement with Dr. Dixit. The revised termination and change of control provisions under Dr. Dixit's new agreement are set out in detail below.

On June 1, 2016, we entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Diana Hausman setting forth the terms and conditions of her employment as our Chief Medical Officer, which provided for her initial base salary and initial equity award, and which includes, among other things, provisions regarding confidentiality, ownership of developments, non-competition and non-solicitation, as well as eligibility for our incentive plans. Dr. Hausman's employment agreement also specifies, in the case of termination of employment other than for cause, Dr. Hausman will be entitled to twelve months notice, or the equivalent base salary, or a combination thereof

## [Table of Contents](#)

should termination occur within the first year of employment. Following the first year of employment, Dr. Hausman will be entitled to one month notice, or the equivalent base salary, and an additional one month notice, or the equivalent base salary, for each additional completed year of service, up to a total maximum of eighteen months. On January 18, 2017, we entered into an amending employment agreement with Dr. Hausman. The terms of the new change of control provision under this agreement are set out in detail below.

On March 18, 2016, we entered into an employment agreement with Mr. John Babcock setting forth the terms and conditions of his employment as our Senior Vice President Discovery Research, which provided for his initial base salary and initial equity award, and which includes, among other things, provisions regarding confidentiality, ownership of developments, non-competition and non-solicitation, as well as eligibility for our incentive plans. On January 17, 2017, we entered into an amending employment agreement with Mr. Babcock. The revised termination and change of control provisions under Mr. Babcock's new agreement are set out in detail below.

On November 9, 2016, the compensation committee of the board of directors approved amendments to the employment agreements of our named executive officers. We executed new employment agreements with our named executive officers reflecting these amendments on January 17, 2017 and, for Dr. Hausman, on January 18, 2017. The amendments modify the not-for-cause severance provisions for all named executive officers other than our Chief Medical Officer, Dr. Hausman. Under the new not-for-cause-termination severance formula, during the first three years of employment, these named executive officers are entitled to 12 months of written notice or payment in lieu of notice equal to their base salary and all other benefits that would be payable during such notice period. Commencing in the fourth year of employment, these named executive officers are entitled to an additional one month notice, or the equivalent base salary, for each additional completed year of service, up to a total maximum of eighteen months.

These amendments also contain severance provisions specific to change of control events. Under these amendments, if our Chief Executive Officer is terminated without cause within twelve months following a change of control, he shall receive up to twenty four months of payment equal to his base salary, all other benefits that would be payables during that period and full vesting acceleration of all unvested stock options or other equity grants made as at that date. If any other named executive officer is terminated without cause within twelve months following a change of control, he or she shall receive up to eighteen months of payment equal to his or her base salary, all other benefits that would be payables during that period and full vesting acceleration of all unvested stock options or other equity grants made as at that date.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The table below shows the estimated amounts of the termination payments and benefits that will be made to our named executive officers upon the termination of their employment, if such termination were to occur immediately following the completion of this offering. These amounts represent the payments and benefits under the terms of the revised employment agreements.

<u>Name and Principal Position</u>	<u>Event</u>	<u>Severance (\$)(1)</u>	<u>Options (\$)(3)</u>	<u>Other Payments (C\$(4)</u>	<u>Other Payments (\$)(2)(4)</u>	<u>Total (\$)</u>
Dr. Ali Tehrani President and Chief Executive Officer	Termination other than for cause	517,500		24,417	18,185	
	Termination following a change of control event (double trigger)	690,000		32,587	24,270	
Neil Klompas Chief Financial Officer	Termination other than for cause	371,250		24,417	18,185	
	Termination following a change of control event (double trigger)	371,250		24,417	18,185	
Dr. Surjit Dixit Vice President, Technology	Termination other than for cause	322,050		24,417	18,185	
	Termination following a change of control event (double trigger)	322,050		24,417	18,185	
Dr. Diana Hausman Chief Medical Officer	Termination other than for cause	400,000		—	nil	
	Termination following a change of control event (double trigger)	600,000		—	45,954	
Mr. John Babcook Senior Vice President, Discovery Research	Termination other than for cause	204,800		16,248	12,101	
	Termination following a change of control event (double trigger)	307,200		24,417	18,185	

- (1) Severance payments are calculated based on the executive's base salary, which, for all executive officers is paid in U.S. dollars, effective as of January 1, 2017.
- (2) Canadian dollar amounts have been converted to U.S. dollars based on the historical Canadian to U.S. noon rate of exchange as at December 31, 2016. For further information, see "Exchange Rate Data."
- (3) The value of accelerated vesting of options above is calculated based on the assumed initial public offering price of \$        per share, the midpoint of the price range set forth on the cover page of this prospectus.
- (4) Amounts shown in the "Other Payments" column relate to contributions to our registered retirement savings plan, provincial health care premium, life insurance premiums through our group extended benefit plan and extended medical benefits premiums. For all executive officers, with the exception of the Chief Medical Officer, these amounts are paid in Canadian dollars.

On January 1, 2012, we entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Gordon Ng, our former Chief Scientific Officer, setting forth the terms and conditions of his employment as our Vice President, Preclinical Research & Development, which provided for his initial base salary and initial equity award, and which includes, among other things, provisions regarding confidentiality, ownership of developments, non-competition and non-solicitation, as well as eligibility for our incentive plans. Dr. Gordon Ng and the Company mutually agreed to terminate their employment relationship on good terms and pursuant to a separation agreement and release, dated November 17, 2016. He received his regular pay up to and including this day, and also received accrued and outstanding vacation pay up to this day. Per the terms of the separation agreement and release signed by Dr. Ng, he shall receive salary and benefits continuation (excluding Life, AD&D, Critical Illness, and Long Term

## [Table of Contents](#)

Disability coverage) for a period of 14 months from the date of termination until January 17, 2018. Also per the terms of the separation agreement and release, the Company has agreed to pay Dr. Ng the year-end bonus for the year ending December 31, 2016. Dr. Ng's vested options (270,000) remain exercisable up to October 31, 2017. His unvested options expired effective November 10, 2016.

### **Director Compensation**

The written charter of our compensation committee provides that the committee will review compensation for members of our board of directors on at least an annual basis, taking into account their responsibilities and time commitment and information regarding the compensation paid at peer companies. The compensation committee will make recommendations to our board of directors with respect to changes to our approach to director compensation as it considers appropriate.

In 2016, none of our members of our board of directors received equity compensation.

Each member of our board of directors is entitled to reimbursement for reasonable travel and other expenses incurred in connection with attending board meetings and meetings for any committee on which he or she serves.

### **Employee Benefit Plans**

Our executive officers receive medical, dental, life insurance and other benefits generally made available to all of its employees.

#### ***Pension Benefits***

We do not have any qualified or non-qualified defined benefit pension plans.

#### ***Non-qualified Deferred Compensation***

We do not have any non-qualified defined contribution plans or other deferred compensation plans.

#### ***Registered Retirement Savings Plan***

Our executives resident in Canada are eligible along with all other employees resident in Canada to participate in Zymeworks registered retirement savings plan, or RRSP, matching program. Under this program, Zymeworks matches the amount contributed by the executives into a group RRSP plan up to a pre-determined percentage of annual salary. Upon the formal approval of the compensation committee of the board of directors on November 9, 2016, Zymeworks began matching executives' contributions to the group RRSP up to 5.5% of annual salary, with company matching contributions not to exceed 50% of the annual RRSP contribution limit set by the Canada Revenue Agency in any given year.

#### ***401(k) Plan***

Zymeworks Biopharmaceuticals Inc. executives resident in the United States are eligible along with all other U.S.-based employees to participate in a 401(k) plan. Under this plan, Zymeworks Biopharmaceuticals Inc. matches the amount contributed by the executives into a 401(k) plan up to a predetermined percentage of annual salary. Upon the formal approval of the compensation committee of the board of directors on November 9, 2016, Zymeworks began matching executives' contributions to 401(k) plan up to 5.5% of annual salary, with company matching contributions not to exceed the annual personal and Age 50 Catch Up contribution limit (if applicable) set by the Internal Revenue Service in any given year.

***Stock Option Plan***

Our stock option plan is administered by our compensation committee and provides for the grant of incentive stock options within the meaning of Section 422 of the Internal Revenue Code, non-statutory stock options, restricted stock and other stock-based awards. Our employees, officers, directors and consultants are eligible to receive awards under our stock option plan. Upon an acquisition of us, the exercisability of options or the vesting of restricted stock awards issued under the stock option plan will be accelerated. In addition, the our board of directors will make appropriate provisions for the continuation of awards by us or substitution of awards by the surviving or acquiring entity.

As of December 31, 2016, under our stock option plan, there were options to purchase an aggregate of 4,572,175 common shares outstanding at a weighted-average exercise price of C\$4.90 per share, (or \$3.65 per share, as converted).

Immediately prior to completion of this offering we intend to approve a new employee stock option plan, or the New Plan. Upon completion of this offering, no further awards will be issued under the existing stock option plan. Any common shares subject to awards under our existing stock option plan that expire, terminate, or are otherwise surrendered, canceled, forfeited or repurchased without having been fully exercised, or resulting in any common shares being issued, will become available for issuance under the New Plan, up to a specified number of shares.

## CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

In addition to the compensation arrangements discussed under “Management,” the following is a description of the material terms of those transactions with related parties to which we are party and which we are required to disclose pursuant to the disclosure rules of the SEC and the Canadian Securities Administrators.

### Investor Rights Agreement

We entered into an investor rights agreement with certain holders of our common and preferred shares, including shares held by Lilly, Celgene and CTI, on January 7, 2016 that provides for registration rights, customary rights provided to major investors including rights to certain future equity issuances, notification rights, information rights and other similar rights and ongoing covenants. All of these rights and covenants, other than the registration rights and certain notification rights, will terminate immediately prior to the completion of this offering. The registration rights will continue following this offering and will terminate for any particular holder with registration rights on the earlier of the fifth anniversary of the completion of this offering or at such time following this offering when (i) all securities held by that holder may be sold pursuant to Rule 144 under the Securities Act or (ii) upon the occurrence of a Deemed Liquidation event, as such term is defined in our current articles of incorporation and, following our continuance to British Columbia, our articles. Upon the completion of this offering, the holders of an aggregate of \_\_\_\_\_ common shares, or their permitted transferees, will be entitled to rights with respect to the registration of these shares under the Securities Act six months after the effectiveness of the registration. See “Description of Share Capital — Registration Rights” for additional information regarding registration rights.

### Voting Agreement

We entered into a voting agreement with certain holders of our common and preferred shares, including Lilly, Celgene and CTI, on January 7, 2016 that provides for customary rights provided to major investors including rights regarding the election and number of directors on our board of directors, drag-along rights in the event of a sale and other similar rights. All of these rights will terminate upon the completion of this offering.

### Right of First Refusal and Co-Sale Agreement

We entered into a right of first refusal and co-sale agreement, or ROFR, with certain shareholders of our common and preferred shares, including Lilly, Celgene, CTI and certain of our directors and officers, on January 7, 2016. This agreement provides us with the right, but not the obligation, to purchase the equity securities of these shareholders before such equity securities can be offered for sale to a third party on the same terms and conditions. If we do not exercise our right of first refusal, each shareholder subject to the ROFR may elect to exercise similar rights on a *pro rata* basis before such equity securities can be offered for sale to a third party on the same terms and conditions. All of these rights will terminate upon the completion of this offering.

### CDRD Ventures Inc. (CVI)

A loan agreement was signed by Kairos Therapeutics on January 2, 2014 to receive up to \$1,700,000 from CVI, in the form of expenses paid on their behalf. The loan was non-interest bearing with a security interest in favor of CVI in all of their present and after-acquired personal property, and was due on December 18, 2016. Prior to our acquisition of Kairos on March 18, 2016, Kairos repaid the loan on December 23, 2015 with the funds received our initial investment in Kairos on December 23, 2015. Our investment in Kairos was made using proceeds from the sale of our Class A preferred shares. Prior to our acquisition, Kairos also received certain personnel services from CVI at no charge since its inception.

Upon our acquisition of Kairos, CVI, a Kairos shareholder, received Zymeworks common shares and became a Zymeworks shareholder. For more information see our consolidated financial statements and the related notes included elsewhere in this prospectus.

### **Indemnification Agreements and Directors' and Officers' Liability Insurance**

We carry directors' and officers' liability insurance for our directors and officers. Currently, this insurance covers the liabilities of our directors and officers up to a maximum claim of US\$10 million (less a deductible of up to US\$10,000 payable by the Company depending on the nature of the claim) for each loss at an annual premium of US\$17,360. We believe this level of coverage is appropriate for a biopharmaceutical company at our stage of development.

We have entered into indemnification agreements with each of our current directors and officers. The indemnification agreements generally require that we indemnify and hold the indemnitees harmless to the greatest extent permitted by law for liabilities arising out of the indemnitees' service to us as directors and officers, if the indemnitees acted honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of the Company and, with respect to criminal and administrative actions or other non-civil proceedings that are enforced by monetary penalty, if the indemnitee had reasonable grounds to believe that his or her conduct was lawful. The indemnification agreements also provide for the advancing of defense expenses to the indemnitees by us.

### **Equity Awards**

Since our inception, we have granted equity awards to our officers. We describe our equity plans under "Executive Compensation."

### **Indebtedness of Directors, Executive Officers and Employees**

None of our directors, executive officers, employees, former directors, former executive officers or former employees, and none of their associates, is indebted to us or another entity whose indebtedness is the subject of a guarantee, support agreement, letter of credit or other similar agreement or understanding provided by us.

### **Participation in this Offering**

At our request, the underwriters have reserved up to 2.5% of the common shares being offered by this prospectus for sale at the initial public offering price to our directors, officers, employees and other individuals associated with us and members of their families. We do not know if these persons will choose to purchase all or any portion of these reserved shares, but any purchases they do make will reduce the number of shares available to the general public. Any reserved shares not so purchased will be offered by the underwriters to the general public on the same terms as the other common shares. See "Underwriting—Directed Share Program."

### **Employment Agreements**

We have entered into employment agreements with certain of our executive officers and key employees. For more information regarding these agreements and arrangements, see "Management."

### **Policy on Future Related Party Transactions**

All future transactions between us and our officers, directors, principal shareholders and their affiliates will be approved by the audit committee, or a similar committee consisting of entirely independent directors, according to the terms of our Code Conduct.

### **Requirements under the Business Corporations Act (British Columbia)**

Pursuant to the BCBCA, directors and officers are required to act honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of the company. Under the BCBCA, subject to certain limited exceptions, a director who holds

## [Table of Contents](#)

a disclosable interest in a material contract or transaction into which we have entered or propose to enter shall not vote on any directors' resolution to approve the contract or transaction. A director or officer has a disclosable interest in a material contract or transaction if the director or officer:

- is a party to the contract or transaction;
- is a director or officer, or an individual acting in a similar capacity, of a party to the contract or transaction; or
- has a material interest in a party to the contract or transaction.

Generally, as a matter of practice, directors or officers who have disclosed a material interest in any contract or transaction that our board of directors is considering will not take part in any board discussion respecting that contract or transaction. If such directors were to participate in the discussions, they would abstain from voting on any matters relating to matters in which they have disclosed a disclosable interest.

### **Interests of Management and Others in Material Transactions**

Other than as described elsewhere in this prospectus, there are no material interests, direct or indirect, of any of our directors or executive officers, any shareholder that beneficially owns, or controls or directs (directly or indirectly), more than 10% of any class or series of our outstanding voting securities, or any associate or affiliate of any of the foregoing persons, in any transaction within the three years before the date hereof that has materially affected or is reasonably expected to materially affect us or any of our subsidiaries. See "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations", "Business" and Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions."

## PRINCIPAL SHAREHOLDERS

The following table indicates information as of December 31, 2016 regarding the beneficial ownership of our common shares, after giving effect to the sale of common shares offered in this offering, for:

- each person who is known by us to beneficially own more than 5% of our common shares;
- each named executive officer;
- each of our directors; and
- all of our directors and executive officers as a group.

The number of shares beneficially owned and the percentage of shares beneficially owned are based on 43,882,226 common shares after giving effect to the automatic conversion of all outstanding Class A convertible preferred shares as of December 31, 2016, which will occur immediately prior to the consummation of this offering, into an aggregate of 12,554,665 common shares. Percentage ownership of our common shares after this offering (assuming no exercise of the underwriters' over-allotment option to purchase additional shares) reflects our sale of shares in this offering. Unless otherwise indicated in the footnotes to the table, and subject to community property laws where applicable, the following persons have sole voting and investment control with respect to the shares beneficially owned by them. In accordance with SEC rules, if a person has a right to acquire beneficial ownership of any common shares on or within 60 days of December 31, 2016, upon conversion or exercise of outstanding securities or otherwise, the shares are deemed beneficially owned by that person and are deemed to be outstanding solely for the purpose of determining the percentage of our shares that person beneficially owns. These shares are not included in the computations of percentage ownership for any other person. As of December 31, 2016, we had 31,327,561 record holders of our common shares, with 23,252,837 record holders in Canada, representing 74% of our outstanding common shares, and 5,645,019 record holders in the United States, representing 18% of our outstanding common shares. Furthermore, as of December 31, 2016, we had 12,554,665 record holders of our Class A preferred shares, with 6,948,470 record holders in Canada, representing 55% of our outstanding preferred shares, and 4,585,787 record holders in the United States, representing 37% of our outstanding preferred shares.

The table below does not reflect any shares that may be purchased by our directors, executive officers or significant shareholders pursuant to our directed share program. See "Underwriting — Directed Share Program."

Except as otherwise indicated, the address of each of the persons in this table is 540-1385 West 8<sup>th</sup> Avenue, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada V6H 3V9.

## Table of Contents

Name and Address of Beneficial Owner	Shares Beneficially Owned Prior to the Offering	Percentage of Shares Beneficially Owned	
		Before Offering	After Offering
<b>5% and Greater Shareholders:</b>			
Eli Lilly and Company(1)	7,719,520	16.3%	%
CTI Life Sciences Fund, L.P.(2)	6,420,651	13.5	
Mr. Ian Ihnatowycz(3)	3,738,082	7.9	
Celgene Alpine Investment Co. LLP(4)	2,673,301	5.6	
<b>Directors and Named Executive Officers:</b>			
John Babcook(5)	1,555,566	3.3	
Nick Bedford(6)	421,503	*	
Kerry Blanchard, Ph.D., M.D.(7)	—	—	
Surjit Dixit, Ph.D.(8)	273,207	*	
Donald Drakeman, Ph.D.(9)	109,000	*	
Noel Hall(10)	292,593	*	
Diana Hausman, M.D.(11)	—	—	
Jennifer Kaufman-Shaw, Ph.D., LL.B.(12)	44,790	*	
Neil Klompas, CPA, CA(13)	323,597	*	
Dion Madsen, B.Comm, CFA(14)	—	—	
Amos Michelson, MBA(15)	2,115,985	4.5	
Gordon Ng, Ph.D.(16)	270,000	*	
Ali Tehrani, Ph.D.(17)	1,231,529	2.1	
Shermaine Tilley, Ph.D., MBA(18)	—	—	
Lota Zoth, CPA(19)	—	—	
Kenneth Hillan(20)	—	—	
Hollings Renton(21)	—	—	
All executive officers and directors as a group (16 persons)	6,661,938	14.1%	%

\* Less than one percent

- (1) Consists of 5,276,591 common shares and 2,442,929 preferred shares held by Eli Lilly and Company. The address of the entity is Lilly Corporate Center, Indianapolis, Indiana 46285, USA. The shares stated above are held directly by Eli Lilly and Company. Derica W. Rice may be deemed to have sole investment and dispositive power over the shares held by Eli Lilly and Company. Voting decisions with respect to shares are made by Bronwen Mantlo. Ms. Mantlo and Mr. Rice disclaim beneficial ownership of such shares, except to the extent of any pecuniary interest therein.
- (2) Consists of 4,359,532 common shares, 1,781,119 preferred shares and 280,000 common share warrants. The address for this entity is 1 Place Ville-Marie, Suite 1635, Montréal, Québec, Canada H3B 2B6. The shares stated above are held directly by CTI Life Sciences Fund L.P. CTI Partner L.P. is the general partner of CTI Life Sciences Fund L.P., and may be deemed to have voting, investment and dispositive power over the shares held by CTI Life Sciences Fund L.P. The managers of CTI Partner L.P. are Ken Pastor, Jean-François Leprince and Dr. Shermaine Tilley. Investment and voting decisions with respect to the shares held by CTI Life Sciences Fund L.P. are made by the managers of CTI Partner L.P. collectively. Ken Pastor, Jean-François Leprince and Dr. Shermaine Tilley disclaim beneficial ownership of these shares, except to the extent of any pecuniary interest therein.
- (3) Consists of 3,120,798 common shares held by Advanced Biotechnologies Venture Fund (VCC) Inc. and 617,284 common shares held by First Generation Capital Inc., each of which are beneficially owned, controlled or directed, directly or indirectly by Mr. Ian Ihnatowycz.
- (4) Consists of 1,652,893 common shares and 1,020,408 preferred shares. The address for the entity is 86 Morris Avenue, Summit, NJ 07901, USA. The shares stated above are beneficially owned Celgene Alpine Investment Company III, LLC, a wholly owned subsidiary of Celgene Corporation. Celgene Corporation may be deemed to have voting, investment and dispositive power over the shares held by

## Table of Contents

Celgene Alpine Investment Co. LLP. Celgene Corporation disclaims beneficial ownership of these shares, except to the extent of any pecuniary interest therein.

- (5) Consists of 1,555,566 common shares held personally and nil common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016.
- (6) Consists of 294,628 common shares held jointly with Stania Bedford, and 126,875 common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016.
- (7) Consists of nil common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016. Dr. Blanchard, a member of our board of directors, is Senior Vice-President of Medicines Development Unit and External Innovation of Eli Lilly & Co. Dr. Blanchard has no voting or investment power over and disclaims beneficial ownership of the securities held by Eli Lilly & Co. Dr. Blanchard's business address is c/o Lilly China, 21F, 1 Corporate Ave, 222 Hu Bin Road, Shanghai, China 200021.
- (8) Consists of 273,207 common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016.
- (9) Consists of 109,000 common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016. Dr. Drakeman stepped down from the board of directors at the February 3, 2017 board of directors meeting. His departure was on good terms and he remains involved as a special advisor to the Company.
- (10) Consists of 88,396 of common shares held by Noel Hall, 95,197 common shares held by Sandra MacPherson and 109,000 common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016.
- (11) Consists of nil common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016.
- (12) Consists of 44,790 common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016.
- (13) Consists of 323,597 common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016.
- (14) Mr. Madsen, a member of our board of directors, is a Senior Managing Partner at BDC Capital Inc. Mr. Madsen has no voting or investment power over and disclaims beneficial ownership of securities held by BDC Capital Inc. Mr. Madsen's business address is c/o Suite 2100, 505 Burrard St., Vancouver, BC, V7X 1M3.
- (15) Consists of 1,688,237 common shares held by Advanced Biotechnologies Venture Fund (VCC) II Inc. and 399,748 common shares held by JNKS (2006) Investments Ltd. and 28,000 common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016. Mr. Michelson stepped down from the board of directors at the November 9, 2016 board of directors meeting. His departure was on good terms.
- (16) Consists of 270,000 common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016.
- (17) Consists of 611,000 common shares held personally and 146,029 common shares held by Charissa Tehrani, and 474,500 common shares issuable upon the exercise of options exercisable within 60 days after December 31, 2016.
- (18) Dr. Tilley, a member of our board of directors, is a Partner at CTI Life Sciences Fund, L.P. CTI Partner L.P. is the general partner of CTI Life Sciences Fund L.P., and may be deemed to have voting, investment and dispositive power over the shares held by CTI Life Sciences Fund L.P. The managers of CTI Partner L.P. are Ken Pastor, Jean-François Leprince and Dr. Tilley. Investment and voting decisions with respect to the shares held by CTI Life Sciences Fund L.P. are made by the managers of CTI Partner L.P. collectively. Ken Pastor, Jean-François Leprince and Dr. Tilley disclaim beneficial ownership of these shares, except to the extent of any pecuniary interest therein. Dr. Tilley's business address is c/o CTI Life Sciences Fund, L.P., Place Ville-Marie, Suite 1635, Montréal, Québec, Canada H3B 2B6.
- (19) Ms. Zoth, a member of our board of directors, does not own or possess voting or investment power over any securities of our company.
- (20) Dr. Hillan, a member of our board of directors, does not own or possess voting or investment power over any securities of our company.
- (21) Mr. Renton, a member of our board of directors, does not own or possess voting or investment power over any securities of our company.

## DESCRIPTION OF SHARE CAPITAL

### General

The following is a summary of the material rights of our common shares and preferred shares, as contained in our new notice of articles and articles and any amendments thereto, that will be in effect upon completion of the offering. This summary is not a complete description of the share rights associated with our common shares and preferred shares. For more detailed information, please see the forms of our BCBCA notice of articles and articles that will be in effect immediately prior to the closing of this offering, which are filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

Immediately prior to the closing of this offering we will cause all of our outstanding Class A preferred shares to convert into an aggregate of 12,554,665 common shares. Each Class A preferred share is convertible at any time at the option of the holder into common shares on a 1:1 basis, subject to certain adjustments.

Immediately prior to the closing of this offering, our authorized share capital will consist of an unlimited number of common shares, each without par value, and an unlimited number of preferred shares, issuable in series, each without par value. Immediately following the closing of this offering, we expect to have            issued and outstanding common shares (            common shares if the underwriters' over-allotment option is exercised in full) and no preferred shares outstanding. Immediately following the closing of this offering we also expect to have            outstanding vested and unvested options granted pursuant to our equity incentive plans to acquire common shares, options available for grant under our equity incentive plans to acquire common shares and outstanding warrants to acquire 984,081 common shares and no preferred shares.

### Share Capital

#### *Outstanding Shares*

As a result, upon closing of this offering, based on the common shares and preferred shares outstanding as of December 31, 2016, our authorized share capital will consist of an unlimited number of common shares, each without par value, of which 43,882,226 will be issued and outstanding, and an unlimited number of preferred shares, issuable in series, each without par value, none of which will be issued and outstanding.

As of December 31, 2016, we had 2,184,871 common shares issuable pursuant to exercisable outstanding stock options, 2,387,304 common shares issuable pursuant to outstanding options that are not currently exercisable, 280,000 common shares issuable upon the exercise of outstanding common share warrants, 704,081 common shares issuable upon the exercise of an outstanding Class A preferred share warrant, and we had approximately 142 holders of record of our common shares.

#### *Voting Rights*

Under our new articles that will be in effect immediately prior to the closing of this offering, the holders of our common shares will be entitled to one vote for each common share held on all matters submitted to a vote of the shareholders, including the election of directors. Our notice of articles and articles to be in effect immediately prior to the completion of this offering do not provide for cumulative voting rights. Because of this, the holders of a plurality of the common shares entitled to vote in any election of directors can elect all of the directors standing for election, if they should so choose.

#### *Dividends*

Subject to priority rights that may be applicable to any then outstanding preferred shares, holders of our common shares are entitled to receive dividends, as and when declared by our board of directors in their absolute discretion out of legally available funds. For more information, see the section titled "Dividend Policy."

## [Table of Contents](#)

### ***Liquidation***

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, holders of our common shares will be entitled to share ratably in the net assets legally available for distribution to shareholders after the payment of all of our debts and other liabilities and the satisfaction of any liquidation preference granted to the holders of any then outstanding new preferred shares.

### ***Rights and Preferences***

Our common shares contain no pre-emptive or conversion rights and have no provisions for redemption or repurchase for cancellation, surrender or sinking or purchase funds. There are no provisions in our notice of articles and articles that will be in effect prior to the closing of this offering requiring holders of common shares to contribute additional capital. The rights, preferences and privileges of the holders of our common shares are subject to and may be adversely affected by, the rights of the holders of any series of new preferred shares that our board of directors may designate and we may issue in the future.

### ***Fully Paid and Nonassessable***

All of our outstanding common shares are, and the common shares to be issued pursuant to this offering, when paid for, will be fully paid and nonassessable.

### **New Preferred Shares**

Upon or immediately prior to the closing of this offering, our articles will be amended to delete all references to our Class A preferred shares. Under our new notice of articles and articles that will be in effect upon the closing of this offering, our board of directors will have the authority to issue, without further action by our shareholders, an unlimited number of new preferred shares, issuable in one or more series, and subject to the provisions of the BCBCA to fix such rights, preferences, privileges, restrictions and conditions thereon, including dividend and voting rights, as our board of directors may determine, and such rights, preferences and privileges, including dividend, voting rights and rights relating to the distribution of our assets in the event of liquidation, dissolution or winding up of our affairs, whether, voluntary or involuntary, or any other distribution of our assets among our shareholders for the purpose of winding up our affairs, may be superior to those of our common shares. The issuance of new preferred shares, while providing flexibility in connection with possible acquisitions and other corporate purposes, could adversely affect the voting power of holders of common shares and the likelihood that such holders will receive dividend payments and payments upon liquidation. In addition, the issuance of new preferred shares could, among other things, have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in control of our company or other corporate action and could adversely affect the market price of our common shares and the voting and other rights of the holders of our common shares.

Upon closing of this offering, no new preferred shares will be outstanding, and we have no present plan to issue any new preferred shares.

### **Registration Rights**

Upon the completion of this offering, the holders of an aggregate of 31,492,303 of our common shares, which includes common shares issuable upon conversion of our Class A preferred shares, or their permitted transferees, are entitled to rights with respect to the registration of these shares under the Securities Act for resale to the public. These shares are referred to as registrable securities. All of these rights are provided under the terms of our investor rights agreement between us and the holders of these shares, and include demand registration rights and “piggyback” registration rights, in each case as described below.

***Form F-1 or Form S-1 Demand Registration Rights.*** At any time after six months from the effective date of this offering, subject to certain limitations, the holders of a majority of the registrable securities (as such term

## [Table of Contents](#)

is defined in the investor rights agreement) then outstanding (the “initiating holders”) have the right to demand that we file a Form F-1 or Form S-1 registration statement, as applicable, covering the registration of all or any portion of the registrable securities then outstanding and having an aggregate price to the public of not less than \$10 million. We will not be required to effect a registration if our board of directors, in its good faith judgment, determines that it would be detrimental to us and our shareholders for such registration statement to be effected at such time, in which case we have the right to defer such filing for up to 120 days following receipt of the demand request from the holders.

**Form F-3 or Form S-3 Demand Registration Rights.** At any time after we become eligible to file a registration statement on Form S-3 or Form F-3, any holder or holders of registrable securities for which a Form S-3 or Form F-3 is available may require us to file such a registration statement having an aggregate price to the public of not less than \$2 million. We are not obligated to file more than six Form S-3 or Form F-3 registration statements and no more than two Form S-3 or Form F-3 registration statements in a twelve month period.

**Piggyback Registration Rights.** Subject to certain limitations, if at any time we file a registration statement for a public offering of any of our securities, other than a demand registration, including this offering, the holders of registrable securities will have the right to include all or any part of their registrable securities in the registration statement. The underwriters of any underwritten offering will have the right to limit the number of shares having registration rights to be included in the registration statement to an amount not below 25% of the total number of shares included in the registration statement.

**Registration Expenses.** We are generally required to bear the reasonable expenses of all registrations, including the expense of a single counsel to the holders of each registration. However, we will not be required to pay for underwriting commissions or expenses in connection with the exercise of demand and piggyback registration rights and we will not be required to bear the expenses in connection with the exercise of demand and piggyback registration rights of a registration if the request is subsequently withdrawn at the request of the selling shareholders.

## Corporate Governance

Under the BCBCA, we will be required to hold a general meeting of our shareholders at least once every year at a time and place determined by our board of directors, provided that the meeting must not be held later than 15 months after the preceding annual general meeting. The BCBCA requires that meetings of shareholders shall be held at any place within British Columbia as our board of directors may from time to time determine. A notice to convene a meeting, specifying the date, time and location of the meeting must be sent to shareholders, to each director and the auditor not less than 21 days prior to the meeting or such other minimum period as required by the applicable securities laws. Under the BCBCA, shareholders entitled to notice of a meeting may waive or reduce the period of notice for that meeting, provided applicable securities laws requirements are met.

Pursuant to the new articles that will be in effect prior to the completion of the offering, all business transacted at a special meeting of shareholders, except business relating to the conduct of our voting at the meeting, and all business transacted at an annual meeting of shareholders, except business relating to the conduct of our voting at the meeting, consideration of the financial statements, consideration of any director or auditor’s report, election of directors, setting or changing of the number of directors, and appointment of the auditor, remuneration of the auditor, business arising out of a report of the directors not requiring the passage of a special resolution, and any other business which, under the articles or BCBCA, may be translated at a meeting of shareholders without prior notice of the business being given to the shareholders, is deemed to be special business. Notice of a meeting of shareholders at which special business is to be transacted shall (a) state the nature of that business in sufficient detail to permit the shareholder to form a reasoned judgment thereon; and (b) if the special business includes considering, ratifying, adopting or authorizing any document, or the signing of any document, have attached to it the document or state that such document is available for inspection.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Under the BCBCA, our board of directors has the power at any time to call a special meeting of our shareholders. In addition, the holders of not less than 5% of our shares that carry the right to vote at a meeting sought to be held can also requisition our board of directors to call a meeting of our shareholders for the purposes stated in the requisition. If our board of directors does not call the meeting within 21 days after receiving the requisition, our shareholders can call the meeting and the expenses reasonably incurred by such shareholders in requisitioning, calling and holding the meeting must be reimbursed by us.

Those entitled to vote at a meeting are entitled to attend meetings of our shareholders. Every shareholder entitled to vote may appoint a proxyholder to attend the meeting in the manner and to the extent authorized and with the authority conferred by the proxy. Directors, auditors, legal counsels, secretary (if any), and any other persons invited by the chair of the meeting or with the consent of those at the meeting are entitled to attend any meeting of our shareholders but will not be counted in quorum or be entitled to vote at the meeting unless he or she or it is a shareholder or proxyholder entitled to vote at the meeting.

### **Certain Takeover Bid Requirements**

Unless such offer constitutes an exempt transaction, an offer made by a person, an “offeror”, to acquire outstanding shares of a Canadian entity that, when aggregated with the offeror’s holdings (and those of persons or companies acting jointly with the offeror), would constitute 20% or more of the outstanding shares in a class, would be subject to the take-over provisions of Canadian securities laws. The foregoing is a limited and general summary of certain aspects of applicable securities law in the provinces and territories of Canada, all in effect as of the date hereof.

In addition to those takeover bid requirements noted above, the acquisition of our shares may trigger the application of statutory regimes including among others, the Investment Canada Act (Canada) and the Competition Act (Canada).

Limitations on the ability to acquire and hold our common shares may be imposed by the Competition Act (Canada). This legislation permits the Commissioner of Competition, or the Commissioner, to review any acquisition of control over or of a significant interest in us. This legislation grants the Commissioner jurisdiction, for up to one year, to challenge this type of acquisition before the Canadian Competition Tribunal on the basis that it would, or would be likely to, substantially prevent or lessen competition in any market in Canada.

This legislation also requires any person who intends to acquire our common shares to file a notification with the Canadian Competition Bureau if certain financial thresholds are exceeded and if that person (and their affiliates) would hold more than 20% of our common shares. If a person already owns 20% or more of our common shares, a notification must be filed when the acquisition of additional shares would bring that person’s holdings to over 50%. Where a notification is required, the legislation prohibits completion of the acquisition until the expiration of a statutory waiting period, unless the Commissioner provides written notice that he does not intend to challenge the acquisition.

There is no limitation imposed by Canadian law or our articles on the right of non-residents to hold or vote our common shares, other than those imposed by the Investment Canada Act.

The Investment Canada Act requires any person that is a “non-Canadian” (as defined in the Investment Canada Act) who acquires control of an existing Canadian business, where the acquisition of control is not a reviewable transaction, to file a notification with Industry Canada. The Investment Canada Act generally prohibits the implementation of a reviewable transaction unless, after review, the relevant minister is satisfied that the investment is likely to be of net benefit to Canada. Under the Investment Canada Act, the acquisition of control of us (either through the acquisition of our common shares or all or substantially all our assets) by a non-Canadian who is a World Trade Organization member country investor, including a U.S. investor, would be reviewable only if the enterprise value of our business was equal to or greater than a specified amount. The

## [Table of Contents](#)

specified amount for 2016 was C\$600 million. The threshold amount will increase to C\$800 million in enterprise value on April 24, 2017 and C\$1 billion in enterprise value on April 24, 2019.

The acquisition of a majority of the voting interests of an entity is deemed to be acquisition of control of that entity. The acquisition of less than a majority but one-third or more of the voting shares of a corporation or an equivalent undivided ownership interest in the voting shares of a corporation is presumed to be an acquisition of control of that corporation unless it can be established that, on the acquisition, the corporation is not controlled in fact by the acquirer through the ownership of voting shares. The acquisition of less than one-third of the voting shares of a corporation is deemed not to be an acquisition of control of that corporation. Certain transactions in relation to our common shares would be exempt from review by the Investment Canada Act including:

- the acquisition of our common shares by a person in the ordinary course of that person's business as a trader or dealer in securities;
- the acquisition of control of us in connection with the realization of security granted for a loan or other financial assistance and not for any purpose related to the provisions of the Investment Canada Act; and
- the acquisition of control of us by reason of an amalgamation, merger, consolidation or corporate reorganization following which ultimate direct or indirect control in fact of us, through the ownership of our voting shares, remains unchanged.

Under the national security regime in the Investment Canada Act, review on a discretionary basis may also be undertaken by the federal government in respect of a much broader range of investments by a non-Canadian to "acquire, in whole or in part, or to establish an entity carrying on all or any part of its operations in Canada." The relevant test is whether such an investment by a non-Canadian could be "injurious to national security." The Minister of Innovation, Science and Economic Development has broad discretion to determine whether an investor is a non-Canadian and may be subject to national security review. Review on national security grounds is at the discretion of the federal government and may occur on a pre- or post-closing basis.

There is no law, governmental decree or regulation in Canada that restricts the export or import of capital or which would affect the remittance of dividends or other payments by us to non-Canadian holders of our common shares or preferred shares, other than withholding tax requirements.

Neither our notice of articles to be in effect upon the completion of this offering nor articles to be in effect upon the completion of this offering contain any change of control limitations with respect to a merger, acquisition or corporate restructuring that involves us.

This summary is not a comprehensive description of relevant or applicable considerations regarding such requirements and, accordingly, is not intended to be, and should not be interpreted as, legal advice to any prospective purchaser and no representation with respect to such requirements to any prospective purchaser is made. Prospective investors should consult their own Canadian legal advisors with respect to any questions regarding securities law in the provinces and territories of Canada.

### **Actions Requiring a Special Majority**

Under the new articles that will be in effect prior to the completion of the offering, certain corporate actions require the approval of a special majority of shareholders, meaning holders of shares representing not less than \_\_\_\_\_% of those votes cast in respect of a shareholder vote addressing such matter. Those items requiring the approval of a special majority generally relate to fundamental changes with respect to our business, and include among others, resolutions: (i) amending our articles; (ii) approving an amalgamation; (iii) approving a continuance; and (iv) providing for a sale, lease or exchange of all or substantially all of our property.

### **Advance Notice Procedures and Shareholder Proposals**

Under the BCBCA, shareholders may make proposals for matters to be considered at the annual general meeting of shareholders. Such proposals must be sent to us in advance of any proposed meeting by delivering a

## [Table of Contents](#)

timely written notice in proper form to our registered office in accordance with the requirements of the BCBCA. The notice must include information on the business the shareholder intends to bring before the meeting.

In addition, our articles that will be in effect upon the closing of this offering, require that shareholders provide us with advance notice of their intention to nominate any persons, other than those nominated by management, for election to our board of directors at a meeting of shareholders.

These provisions could have the effect of delaying until the next shareholder meeting the nomination of certain persons for director that are favored by the holders of a majority of our outstanding voting securities.

### **Ownership and Exchange Controls**

There is currently no law, governmental decree or regulation in Canada that restricts the export or import of capital, or which would affect the remittance of dividends, interest or other payments by us to non-resident holders of our common shares, other than withholding tax requirements, as discussed below under “United States and Canadian Income Tax Considerations — Certain Canadian Federal Income Tax Information.”

There is currently no limitation imposed by Canadian law or our notice of articles or articles that will be in effect prior to closing on the right of non-residents to hold or vote our common shares, other than those imposed by the Investment Canada Act and the Competition Act (Canada). These acts will generally not apply except where a control of an existing Canadian business or company, which has Canadian assets or revenue over a certain threshold, is acquired and will not apply to trading generally of securities listed on a stock exchange.

### **Listing**

We have applied to list our common shares on the NYSE and, we intend to apply to list our common shares on the TSX, under the symbol “ZYME.”

### **Transfer Agent, Registrar and Auditor**

Upon the closing of this offering, the transfer agent and registrar for our common shares in the United States will be Computershare Trust Company, N.A. at its principal office in Canton, Massachusetts, and in Canada will be Computershare Investor Services Inc. at its principal office in Toronto, Ontario.

KPMG LLP, located at 777 Dunsmuir St, Vancouver, British Columbia V7Y 1K4 is our independent registered public accounting firm and has been appointed as our independent auditor.

### **Options to Purchase Shares**

The following table sets forth the aggregate number of options to purchase our common shares upon completion of the offering:

<b>Category</b>	<b>Number Of Options To Acquire Common Shares</b>	<b>Exercise Price(C\$) (1)</b>	<b>Exercise Price(\$) (2)</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>
All Of Our Executive Officers And Past Executive Officers, And All Of Our Directors And Past Directors, As A Group (23 in total)	3,258,758	\$4.55	\$ 3.39	From July 1, 2017 to November 9, 2026
All Other Of Our Employees And Past Employees, As A Group (144 in total)	1,313,417	\$5.75	\$ 4.28	From February 4, 2017 to November 9, 2026

(1) Represents the weighted-average exercise price of all outstanding options to purchase our common shares, whether vested or unvested.

(2) Canadian dollar amounts have been converted to U.S. dollars based on the historical Canadian to U.S. noon rate of exchange as at December 31, 2016. For further information, see “Exchange Rate Data.”

## [Table of Contents](#)

### Prior Sales

The following table summarizes issuances of our common shares and securities convertible or exchangeable into common shares during the 12-month period preceding the date of this Prospectus.

<u>Date of Issuance</u>	<u>Type of Security</u>	<u>Number of Securities Issued</u>	<u>Issuance/ Exercise Price per Security(C\$)</u>	<u>Issuance/ Exercise Price per Security(\$)</u>	<u>Issuance/ Exercise Price per Security(C\$)</u>	<u>Issuance/ Exercise Price per Security(\$)</u>
February 6, 2017	Stock Options	47,500	9.47	7.05	9.47	7.05
February 3, 2017	Stock Options	598,117	9.47	7.05	9.47	7.05
February 2, 2017	Stock Options	440,500	9.47	7.05	9.47	7.05
January 6, 2017	Stock Options	22,000	9.49	7.07	9.49	7.07
November 9, 2016	Stock Options	595,855	8.69	6.47	8.69	6.47
September 19, 2016	Common Shares	721,445	6.89	5.13	6.89	5.13
June 2, 2016	Warrants	704,081	—	4.90	—	4.90
April 11, 2016	Common Shares	10,000	1.99	1.48	1.99	1.48
March 22, 2016	Common Shares	833	3.04	2.26	3.04	2.26
March 18, 2016	Common Shares	3,628,572	6.89	5.13	6.89	5.13
February 29, 2016	Stock Options	165,000	5.07	3.78	5.07	3.78

- (1) Canadian dollar amounts have been converted to U.S. dollars based on the historical Canadian to U.S. noon rate of exchange as at December 31, 2016. For further information, see “Exchange Rate Data.”

## SHARES ELIGIBLE FOR FUTURE SALE

Prior to this offering, there was no public market for our common shares. Future sales of our common shares in the public market, or the availability for sale of substantial amounts of our common shares in the public market, could adversely affect prevailing market prices and could impair our ability to raise equity capital in the future. Upon closing of this offering, we will have outstanding common shares and no preferred shares. All of the common shares issued in this offering will be freely transferable by persons other than our “affiliates” without restriction or further registration under the Securities Act. Sales of substantial numbers of our shares in the public market could adversely affect prevailing market prices of our common shares. While we have applied to list our common shares on the NYSE and, we intend to apply to list our common shares on the TSX, we cannot assure you that a regular trading market will develop in our common shares. The common shares issuable upon the conversion of the Class A preferred shares that will be held by our existing shareholders upon closing of this offering will be available for sale in the public market after the expiration or waiver of the lock-up arrangements described below, subject to limitations imposed by U.S. and Canadian securities laws on resale by our affiliates.

### Rule 144

In general, under Rule 144 of the Securities Act as currently in effect, beginning 90 days after the date of this prospectus, an “affiliate” who has beneficially owned our shares for a period of at least six months is entitled to sell within any three-month period a number of shares that does not exceed the greater of either 1% of the then outstanding shares or the average weekly trading volume of our shares on the NYSE during the four calendar weeks preceding the filing with the SEC of a notice on Form 144 with respect to such sale. Such sales under Rule 144 of the Securities Act are also subject to prescribed requirements relating to the manner of sale, notice and availability of current public information about us.

Under Rule 144, a person who is not deemed to have been an affiliate of ours at any time during the 90 days preceding a sale, and who has beneficially owned the shares proposed to be sold for at least six months, including the holding period of any prior holder other than an affiliate, is entitled to sell such shares without restriction, provided we have been in compliance with our reporting requirements under the Exchange Act for 90 days preceding such sale. To the extent that our affiliates sell their shares, other than pursuant to Rule 144 or a registration statement, the purchaser’s holding period for the purpose of effecting a sale under Rule 144 commences on the date of transfer from the affiliate.

### Rule 701

In general, under Rule 701 of the Securities Act as currently in effect, each of our employees or directors who acquire our common shares from us in connection with a compensatory stock plan or other written agreement executed prior to the closing of this offering is eligible to resell such shares in reliance on Rule 144, but without compliance with some of the restrictions, including the holding period, contained in Rule 144.

### Regulation S

Regulation S provides generally that sales made in offshore transactions are not subject to the registration or prospectus-delivery requirements of the Securities Act.

### Canadian Resale Restrictions

Any sale of any of our shares which constitutes a “control distribution” under Canadian securities laws (generally a sale by a person or a group of persons holding more than 20% of the voting rights attached to our outstanding voting securities) will be subject to restrictions under applicable Canadian securities laws in addition to those restrictions noted above, unless the sale is qualified under a prospectus filed with Canadian securities

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

regulatory authorities or if prior notice of the sale is filed with the Canadian securities regulatory authorities at least seven days before any sale and there has been compliance with certain other requirements and restrictions regarding the manner of sale, payment of commissions, reporting and availability of current public information about us and compliance with applicable Canadian securities laws.

### **Lock-up Agreements**

For a description of the lock-up arrangements that we and our shareholders have entered into in connection with this offering, see “Underwriting.”

### **Form S-8 Registration Statement**

Following the completion of this offering, we intend to file a registration statement on Form S-8 to register our common shares subject to stock options outstanding as reserved for issuance under our stock option plan. The registration statement will become effective automatically upon filing. Common shares issued upon exercise of a stock option and registered pursuant to the Form S-8 registration statement, subject to vesting provisions, Rule 144 volume limitations applicable to our affiliates, and the lock-up agreements described under “Underwriting”, be available for sale in the open market immediately.

## TAXATION

The following is, as of the date of this prospectus, a general summary of the principal Canadian federal income tax considerations under the *Income Tax Act* (Canada), or the Canadian Tax Act, generally applicable to an investor who acquires common shares pursuant to this offering and who, for the purposes of the Canadian Tax Act and at all relevant times, deals at arm's length with the Company and the underwriters, is not affiliated with the Company or the underwriters and who acquires and holds the common shares as capital property, or a Holder. Generally, the common shares will be considered to be capital property to a Holder thereof provided that the Holder does not use the common shares in the course of carrying on a business of trading or dealing in securities and such Holder has not acquired them in one or more transactions considered to be an adventure or concern in the nature of trade.

This summary does not apply to a Holder (i) that is a "financial institution" for the purposes of the mark-to-market rules contained in the Canadian Tax Act; (ii) that is a "specified financial institution" as defined in the Canadian Tax Act; (iii) an interest in which would be a "tax shelter investment" as defined in the Canadian Tax Act; (iv) that has made a functional currency reporting election under the Canadian Tax Act; or (v) that has or will enter into a "derivative forward agreement" or a "synthetic disposition arrangement", as those terms are defined in the Canadian Tax Act, with respect to the common shares. **Such Holders should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the consequences of acquiring common shares.**

Additional considerations, not discussed herein, may be applicable to a Holder that (i) is a corporation resident in Canada and (ii) is (or does not deal at arm's length for the purposes of the Canadian Tax Act with a corporation resident in Canada that is), or becomes as part of a transaction or event or series of transactions or events that includes the acquisition of the common shares, controlled by a corporation that is not resident in Canada for purposes of the "foreign affiliate dumping" rules in section 212.3 of the Canadian Tax Act. **Such Holders should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the consequences of acquiring common shares.**

This summary is based upon the current provisions of the Canadian Tax Act and the regulations thereunder, or the Regulations, in force as of the date hereof and the Company's understanding of the current published administrative and assessing practices of the Canada Revenue Agency, or the CRA. This summary takes into account all specific proposals to amend the Canadian Tax Act and the Regulations publicly announced by or on behalf of the Minister of Finance (Canada) prior to the date hereof, or the Tax Proposals, and assumes that the Tax Proposals will be enacted in the form proposed, although no assurance can be given that the Tax Proposals will be enacted in their current form or at all. This summary does not otherwise take into account any changes in law or in the administrative policies or assessing practices of the CRA, whether by legislative, governmental or judicial decision or action, nor does it take into account or consider any provincial, territorial or foreign income tax considerations, which considerations may differ significantly from the Canadian federal income tax considerations discussed in this summary.

This summary is of a general nature only, is not exhaustive of all possible Canadian federal income tax considerations and is not intended to be, nor should it be construed to be, legal or tax advice to any particular Holder. This summary does not address the deductibility of interest expense incurred or paid by a Holder that has borrowed money in connection with the acquisition of common shares pursuant to this offering. **Holdings should consult their own tax advisors with respect to their particular circumstances.**

All amounts in a currency other than the Canadian dollar relevant in computing a Holder's liability under the Canadian Tax Act with respect to the acquisition, holding or disposition of common shares must generally be converted into Canadian dollars using the daily noon rate (or, beginning on March 1, 2017, the single daily exchange rate) quoted by the Bank of Canada for the day on which the amount arose or such other rate of exchange that is acceptable to the CRA.

## **Residents of Canada**

The following section of this summary applies to a Holder who, for the purposes of the Canadian Tax Act, is or is deemed to be resident in Canada at all relevant times, or a Canadian Resident Holder. Certain Canadian Resident Holders whose common shares might not constitute capital property may in certain circumstances make an irrevocable election permitted by subsection 39(4) of the Canadian Tax Act to deem the common shares, and every other “Canadian security” as defined in the Canadian Tax Act, held by such Canadian Resident Holder, in the taxation year of the election and each subsequent taxation year to be capital property. Canadian Resident Holders should consult their own tax advisors regarding this election.

### ***Dividends***

Dividends received or deemed to be received on the common shares will be included in computing a Canadian Resident Holder’s income. In the case of an individual (other than certain trusts), such dividends will be subject to the gross-up and dividend tax credit rules normally applicable in respect of “taxable dividends” received from “taxable Canadian corporations” (each as defined in the Canadian Tax Act). An enhanced dividend tax credit will be available to individuals in respect of “eligible dividends” designated by the Company to the Canadian Resident Holder in accordance with the provisions of the Canadian Tax Act.

Dividends received or deemed to be received by a corporation that is a Canadian Resident Holder on the common shares must be included in computing its income but generally will be deductible in computing its taxable income. In certain circumstances, subsection 55(2) of the Canadian Tax Act will treat a taxable dividend received by a Canadian Resident Holder that is a corporation as proceeds of disposition or a capital gain. A Canadian Resident Holder that is a corporation should consult its own tax advisors having regard to its own circumstances. A Canadian Resident Holder that is a “private corporation” as defined in the Canadian Tax Act and certain other corporations controlled, by or for the benefit of an individual (other than a trust) or a related group of individuals (other than trusts) generally will be liable to pay a 38<sup>1</sup>/<sub>3</sub>% refundable tax under Part IV of the Canadian Tax Act on dividends received or deemed to be received on the common shares to the extent such dividends are deductible in computing taxable income. Such refundable tax will generally be refunded to a corporate Canadian Resident Holder at the rate of 38 <sup>1</sup>/<sub>3</sub>% of taxable dividends paid while it is a private corporation.

### ***Dispositions of Common Shares***

Upon a disposition (or a deemed disposition) of a common share, a Canadian Resident Holder generally will realize a capital gain (or a capital loss) equal to the amount by which the proceeds of disposition of such common share, net of any reasonable costs of disposition, are greater (or are less) than the adjusted cost base of such common share to the Canadian Resident Holder. The tax treatment of capital gains and capital losses is discussed in greater detail below under the subheading “Capital Gains and Capital Losses.”

The adjusted cost base to a Canadian Resident Holder of a common share acquired pursuant to this offering will be averaged with the adjusted cost base of any other of the Company’s common shares held by such Canadian Resident Holder as capital property for the purposes of determining the Canadian Resident Holder’s adjusted cost base of each common share.

### ***Capital Gains and Capital Losses***

Generally, a Canadian Resident Holder is required to include in computing its income for a taxation year one-half of the amount of any capital gain (a “taxable capital gain”) realized in the year. Subject to and in accordance with the provisions of the Canadian Tax Act, a Canadian Resident Holder is required to deduct one-half of the amount of any capital loss (an “allowable capital loss”) realized in a taxation year from taxable capital gains realized in the year by such Canadian Resident Holder. Allowable capital losses in excess of taxable capital

## [Table of Contents](#)

gains may be carried back and deducted in any of the three preceding taxation years or carried forward and deducted in any following taxation year against taxable capital gains realized in such year to the extent and under the circumstances described in the Canadian Tax Act.

The amount of any capital loss realized on the disposition or deemed disposition of common shares by a Canadian Resident Holder that is a corporation may be reduced by the amount of dividends received or deemed to have been received by it on such shares or shares substituted for such shares to the extent and in the circumstances specified by the Canadian Tax Act. Similar rules may apply where a Canadian Resident Holder that is a corporation is a member of a partnership or beneficiary of a trust that owns such shares or that itself is a member of a partnership of a beneficiary of a trust that owns such shares. Canadian Resident Holders to whom these rules may be relevant should consult their own tax advisors.

A Canadian Resident Holder that is throughout the relevant taxation year a “Canadian-controlled private corporation” as defined in the Canadian Tax Act may also be liable to pay an additional refundable tax on its “aggregate investment income” for the year which will include taxable capital gains. The rate of the refundable tax is 10 2/3% for taxation years beginning after 2015 and is a pro-ratio of 10 2/3% and 6 2/3% for taxation years beginning before 2016 and ending after 2015. Such refundable tax will generally be refunded to a corporate Canadian Resident Holder at the rate of 38 1/3% of taxable dividends paid while it is a private corporation.

### ***Minimum Tax***

Capital gains realized and dividends received by a Canadian Resident Holder that is an individual or a trust, other than certain specified trusts, may give rise to minimum tax under the Canadian Tax Act. Such Canadian Resident Holders should consult their own advisors with respect to the application of minimum tax.

### **Non-Residents of Canada**

The following section of this summary is generally applicable to a Holder who, for the purposes of the Canadian Tax Act, and at all relevant times: (i) has not been and will not be deemed to be resident in Canada; and (ii) does not use or hold the common shares in, or in the course of, carrying on a business, or part of a business, in Canada, each a Non-Canadian Holder. Special rules, which are not discussed in this summary, may apply to a Non-Canadian Holder that is an insurer carrying on business in Canada and elsewhere or that is an “authorized foreign bank” as defined in the Canadian Tax Act. Such a Non-Canadian Holder should consult its own tax advisors.

### ***Dividends***

Dividends on the common shares paid or credited or deemed to be paid or credited to a Non-Canadian Holder will be subject to Canadian withholding tax at the rate of 25% on the gross amount of the dividend unless such rate is reduced by the terms of an applicable tax treaty. Under the Canada-United States Income Tax Convention (1980), or the Treaty, as amended, the rate of withholding tax on dividends paid or credited to a Non-Canadian Holder who is resident in the U.S. for purposes of the Treaty, is entitled to the full benefits under the Treaty and beneficially owns the dividend, or a U.S. Holder, is generally limited to 15% of the gross amount of the dividend (or 5% in the case of a U.S. Holder that is a corporation beneficially owning at least 10% of the Company’s voting shares). Not all persons who are residents of the U.S. for purposes of the Treaty will qualify for the benefits of the Treaty. Non-Canadian Holders that are resident in the U.S. are advised to consult their tax advisors in this regard. The rate of withholding tax on dividends is also reduced under other bilateral income tax treaties or conventions to which Canada is a signatory.

### ***Dispositions of Common Shares***

A Non-Canadian Holder generally will not be subject to tax under the Canadian Tax Act in respect of a capital gain realized on the disposition or deemed disposition of a common share, nor will capital losses arising

## [Table of Contents](#)

therefrom be recognized under the Canadian Tax Act, unless the common share constitutes “taxable Canadian property” to the Non-Canadian Holder thereof for purposes of the Canadian Tax Act, and the gain is not exempt from Canadian federal income tax pursuant to the terms of an applicable tax treaty.

Provided the common shares are listed on a “designated stock exchange”, as defined in the Canadian Tax Act (which currently includes the TSX and NYSE), at the time of disposition, the common shares generally will not constitute taxable Canadian property of a Non-Canadian Holder at that time, unless at any time during the 60 month period immediately preceding the disposition the following two conditions are met concurrently: (i) the Non-Canadian Holder, persons with whom the Non-Canadian Holder did not deal at arm’s length, partnerships in which the Non-Canadian Holder or persons with whom the Non-Canadian Holder did not deal at arm’s length held a membership interest (either directly or indirectly through one or more partnerships), or the Non-Canadian Holder together with all such persons, owned 25% or more of the Company’s issued shares of any class or series of the Company’s shares; and (ii) more than 50% of the fair market value of such shares was derived directly or indirectly from one, or any combination of, real or immovable property situated in Canada, “Canadian resource properties” (as defined in the Canadian Tax Act), “timber resource properties” (as defined in the Canadian Tax Act) or an option, an interest or right in such property, whether or not such property exists. Notwithstanding the foregoing, a common share may otherwise be deemed to be taxable Canadian property to a Non-Canadian Holder for purposes of the Canadian Tax Act.

Provided that the common shares are listed at the time of their disposition or deemed disposition on a “recognized stock exchange” (which currently includes the TSX and the NYSE), as defined in the Canadian Tax Act, a Non-Canadian Holder that disposes of common shares that are taxable Canadian property will not be required to satisfy the obligations imposed under section 116 of the Canadian Tax Act and, as such, the purchaser of such shares will not be required to withhold any amount on the purchase price paid. An exemption from such requirements may also be available in respect of such disposition if the common shares are “treaty exempt property,” as defined in the Canadian Tax Act.

A Non-Canadian Holder’s capital gain (or capital loss) in respect of common shares that constitute or are deemed to constitute taxable Canadian property (and are not “treaty-protected property” as defined in the Canadian Tax Act) will generally be computed and included in income in the manner described above under the subheadings “Residents of Canada—Dispositions of Common Shares” and “Residents of Canada—Capital Gains and Capital Losses”.

Non-Canadian Holders whose common shares may be taxable Canadian property should consult their own tax advisors.

### **Certain United States Income Tax Considerations For United States Holders**

The following discussion summarizes the anticipated material U.S. federal income tax consequences of the ownership and disposition of the common shares. It applies only to U.S. Holders (as defined below) that acquire and hold the common shares as capital assets (generally, property held for investment purposes) and is of a general nature. This summary should not be construed to constitute legal or tax advice to any particular U.S. Holder.

This section does not apply to U.S. Holders subject to special rules, including, without limitation, brokers, dealers in securities or currencies, traders in securities that elect to use a mark-to-market method of accounting for securities holdings, tax-exempt organizations, insurance companies, banks, thrifts and other financial institutions, persons liable for alternative minimum tax, persons that hold an interest in an entity that holds the common shares, persons that will own, or will have owned, directly, indirectly or constructively 10% or more (by vote or value) of the Company’s equity, persons that hold the common shares as part of a hedging, integration, conversion or constructive sale transaction or a straddle, or persons whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar.

## [Table of Contents](#)

This discussion does not purport to be a complete analysis of all of the potential U.S. federal income tax considerations that may be relevant to U.S. Holders in light of their particular circumstances. Further, it does not address any aspect of foreign, state, local or estate or gift taxation or the 3.8% surtax imposed on certain net investment income. **Each prospective investor should consult its own tax advisor as to the U.S. federal, state, local, foreign and any other tax consequences of the purchase, ownership and disposition of the common shares.**

This discussion is based on the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code, its legislative history, U.S. Treasury Regulations, Internal Revenue Service, or the IRS, rulings, published court decisions, and the income tax treaty between the United States and Canada, or the Convention, all as in effect as of the date hereof, and any of which may be repealed, revoked or modified (possibly with retroactive effect) so as to result in U.S. federal income tax consequences different from those discussed below. This summary is applicable to U.S. Holders who are residents of the United States for purposes of the Convention and who qualify for the full benefits of the Convention.

A “U.S. Holder” is a beneficial owner of the common shares who, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, is a citizen or individual resident of the United States, a corporation (or other entity that is classified as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes) that is created or organized in or under the laws of the United States or any State thereof or the District of Columbia, an estate whose income is subject to U.S. federal income tax regardless of its source, or a trust (i) if a U.S. court can exercise primary supervision over the trust’s administration and one or more U.S. persons are authorized to control all substantial decisions of the trust, or (ii) that validly elects to be treated as a U.S. person for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

If a partnership or other pass-through entity holds the common shares of the Company, the U.S. federal income tax treatment of a partner, beneficiary, or other stakeholder will generally depend on the status of that person and the tax treatment of the pass-through entity. A partner, beneficiary, or other stakeholder in a pass-through entity holding the common shares should consult its own tax advisor with regard to the U.S. federal income tax treatment of its investment in the common shares.

### ***The Common Shares***

#### *Distributions*

Subject to the passive foreign investment company, or PFIC, rules discussed below, the gross amount of any distribution received by a U.S. Holder with respect to the common shares (including amounts withheld to pay Canadian withholding taxes) will be included in the gross income of the U.S. Holder as a dividend to the extent attributable to the Company’s current or accumulated earnings and profits, as determined under U.S. federal income tax principles. The Company does not intend to calculate its earnings and profits under U.S. federal income tax rules. Accordingly, U.S. Holders should expect that a distribution generally will be treated as a dividend for U.S. federal income tax purposes. Unless the Company is treated as a PFIC for the taxable year in which it pays a distribution or in the prior taxable year (see “Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules” below), the Company believes that it may qualify as a “qualified foreign corporation,” in which case distributions treated as dividends and received by non-corporate U.S. Holders may be eligible for a preferential tax rate. Distributions on the common shares generally will not be eligible for the dividends received deduction available to U.S. Holders that are corporations.

The amount of any dividend paid in Canadian dollars (including amounts withheld to pay Canadian withholding taxes) will equal the U.S. dollar value of the Canadian dollars calculated by reference to the exchange rate in effect on the date the dividend is received by the U.S. Holder, regardless of whether the Canadian dollars are converted into U.S. dollars. A U.S. Holder will have a tax basis in the Canadian dollars equal to their U.S. dollar value on the date of receipt. If the Canadian dollars received are converted into U.S. dollars on the date of receipt, the U.S. Holder should generally not be required to recognize foreign currency gain

or loss in respect of the distribution. If the Canadian dollars received are not converted into U.S. dollars on the date of receipt, a U.S. Holder may recognize foreign currency gain or loss on a subsequent conversion or other disposition of the Canadian dollars. Such gain or loss will be treated as U.S. source ordinary income or loss.

A U.S. Holder may be entitled to deduct or credit Canadian withholding tax imposed on dividends paid to a U.S. Holder, subject to applicable limitations in the Code. For purposes of calculating a U.S. Holder's foreign tax credit, dividends received by such U.S. Holder with respect to the common shares of a foreign corporation generally constitute foreign source income. However, and subject to certain exceptions, a portion of the dividends paid by a foreign corporation will be treated as U.S. source income for U.S. foreign tax credit purposes, in proportion to its U.S. source earnings and profits, if U.S. persons own, directly or indirectly, 50% or more of the voting power or value of the foreign corporation's common shares. If a portion of any dividends paid with respect to the common shares are treated as U.S. source income under these rules, it may limit the ability of a U.S. Holder to claim a foreign tax credit for any Canadian withholding taxes imposed in respect of such dividend. Dividends distributed by us will generally constitute "passive category" income for U.S. foreign tax credit purposes. The rules governing the foreign tax credit are complex. U.S. Holders are urged to consult their own tax advisors regarding the availability of the foreign tax credit under their particular circumstances, including the impact of, and any exception available to, the special income sourcing rule described in this paragraph.

#### *Sale, Exchange or Other Taxable Disposition*

Subject to the discussion below under "Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules," a U.S. Holder will recognize a capital gain or loss on the sale, exchange or other taxable disposition of the common shares in an amount equal to the difference between the amount realized for the common shares and the U.S. Holder's adjusted tax basis in the common shares. Capital gains of non-corporate U.S. Holders derived with respect to capital assets held for more than one year are eligible for reduced rates of taxation. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to limitations. Any capital gain or loss recognized by a U.S. Holder generally will be treated as U.S. source gain or loss for U.S. foreign tax credit purposes.

#### *Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules*

A foreign corporation will be considered a PFIC for any taxable year in which (1) 75% or more of its gross income is "passive income" under the PFIC rules or (2) 50% or more of the average quarterly value of its assets produce (or are held for the production of) "passive income." For this purpose, "passive income" generally includes interest, dividends, certain rents and royalties, and certain gains. Royalties derived in the active conduct of a trade or business by a corporation in the licensing of property developed or created through its own officers or staff of employees is generally excluded from passive income, and interest, dividends, rents and royalties received from a related person (within the meaning of the PFIC rules) are excluded from passive income to the extent such payments are properly allocable to the active income of such related person. Moreover, for purposes of determining if the foreign corporation is a PFIC, if the foreign corporation owns, directly or indirectly, at least 25%, by value, of the shares of another corporation, it will be treated as if it holds directly its proportionate share of the assets and receives directly its proportionate share of the income of such other corporation. If a corporation is treated as a PFIC with respect to a U.S. Holder for any taxable year, the corporation will continue to be treated as a PFIC with respect to that U.S. Holder in all succeeding taxable years, regardless of whether the corporation continues to meet the PFIC requirements in such years, unless certain elections are made.

The determination as to whether a foreign corporation is a PFIC is based on the application of complex U.S. federal income tax rules, which are subject to differing interpretations, and the determination will depend on the composition of the income, expenses and assets of the foreign corporation from time to time and the nature of the activities performed by its officers and employees. The Company believes that it was not classified as a PFIC for the taxable year ending December 31, 2016. However, the Company cannot provide any assurance regarding its PFIC status for the future taxable years given that the determination of PFIC status is fact-intensive and made on

## [Table of Contents](#)

an annual basis. Neither the Company's U.S. counsel nor U.S. tax advisor expresses any opinion with respect to the Company's PFIC status or with respect to the Company's expectations regarding its PFIC status.

If the Company is classified as a PFIC, a U.S. Holder that does not make any of the elections described below would be required to report any gain on the disposition of common shares as ordinary income, rather than as capital gain, and to compute the tax liability on the gain and any "Excess Distribution" (as defined below) received in respect of common shares as if such items had been earned ratably over each day in the U.S. Holder's holding period (or a portion thereof) for the common shares. The amounts allocated to the taxable year during which the gain is realized or distribution is made, and to any taxable years in such U.S. Holder's holding period that are before the first taxable year in which the Company is treated as a PFIC with respect to the U.S. Holder, would be included in the U.S. Holder's gross income as ordinary income for the taxable year of the gain or distribution. The amount allocated to each other taxable year would be taxed as ordinary income in the taxable year during which the gain is realized or distribution is made at the highest tax rate in effect for the U.S. Holder in that other taxable year and would be subject to an interest charge as if the income tax liabilities had been due with respect to each such prior year. For purposes of these rules, gifts, exchanges pursuant to corporate reorganizations and use of common shares as security for a loan may be treated as a taxable disposition of the common shares. An "Excess Distribution" is the amount by which distributions during a taxable year in respect of a common share exceed 125% of the average amount of distributions in respect thereof during the three preceding taxable years (or, if shorter, the U.S. Holder's holding period for the common shares).

Certain additional adverse tax rules will apply to a U.S. Holder for any taxable year in which the Company is treated as a PFIC with respect to such U.S. Holder and any of the Company's subsidiaries is also treated as a PFIC (a "Subsidiary PFIC"). In such a case, the U.S. Holder will generally be deemed to own its proportionate interest (by value) in any Subsidiary PFIC and be subject to the PFIC rules described above with respect to the Subsidiary PFIC regardless of such U.S. Holder's percentage ownership in the Company.

The adverse tax consequences described above may be mitigated if a U.S. Holder makes a timely "qualified electing fund" election (a "QEF election") with respect to its interest in the PFIC. Consequently, if the Company is classified as a PFIC, it would likely be advantageous for a U.S. Holder to elect to treat the Company as a "qualified electing fund" (a "QEF") with respect to such U.S. Holder in the first year in which it holds common shares. If a U.S. Holder makes a timely QEF election with respect to the Company, the electing U.S. Holder would be required in each taxable year that the Company is considered a PFIC to include in gross income (i) as ordinary income, the U.S. Holder's pro rata share of the ordinary earnings of the Company and (ii) as capital gain, the U.S. Holder's pro rata share of the net capital gain (if any) of the Company, whether or not the ordinary earnings or net capital gain are distributed. An electing U.S. Holder's basis in common shares will be increased to reflect the amount of any taxed but undistributed income. Distributions of income that had previously been taxed will result in a corresponding reduction of basis in the common shares and will not be taxed again as distributions to the U.S. Holder.

A QEF election made with respect to the Company will not apply to any Subsidiary PFIC; a QEF election must be made separately for each Subsidiary PFIC (in which case the treatment described above would apply to such Subsidiary PFIC). If a U.S. Holder makes a timely QEF election with respect to a Subsidiary PFIC, it would be required in each taxable year to include in gross income its pro rata share of the ordinary earnings and net capital gain of such Subsidiary PFIC, but may not receive a distribution of such income. Such a U.S. Holder may, subject to certain limitations, elect to defer payment of current U.S. federal income tax on such amounts, subject to an interest charge (which would not be deductible for U.S. federal income tax purposes if the U.S. Holder were an individual).

If the Company determines that it, and any subsidiary in which the Company owns, directly or indirectly, more than 50% of such subsidiary's total aggregate voting power, is likely a PFIC in any taxable year, the Company intends to make available to U.S. Holders, upon request and in accordance with applicable procedures, a "PFIC Annual Information Statement" with respect to the Company and any such subsidiary for such taxable year. The "PFIC Annual Information Statement" may be used by U.S. Holders for purposes of complying with the reporting requirements applicable to a QEF election with respect to the Company and any Subsidiary PFIC.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The U.S. federal income tax on any gain from the disposition of common shares or from the receipt of Excess Distributions may be greater than the tax if a timely QEF election is made. It is recommended that, if the Company were to be classified as a PFIC, a U.S. Holder make a QEF election with respect to the Company and any Subsidiary PFIC.

Alternatively, if the Company were to be classified as a PFIC, a U.S. Holder could also avoid certain of the rules described above by making a mark-to-market election (instead of a QEF election), provided the common shares are treated as regularly traded on a qualified exchange or other market within the meaning of the applicable Treasury regulations. However, a U.S. Holder will not be permitted to make a mark-to-market election with respect to a Subsidiary PFIC. U.S. Holders should consult their own tax advisers regarding the potential availability and consequences of a mark-to-market election, as well as the advisability of making a protective QEF election in case the Company is classified as a PFIC in any taxable year.

During any taxable year in which the Company or any Subsidiary PFIC is treated as a PFIC with respect to a U.S. Holder, that U.S. Holder must file IRS Form 8621. U.S. Holders should consult their own tax advisers concerning annual filing requirements.

### ***Required Disclosure with Respect to Foreign Financial Assets***

Certain U.S. Holders are required to report information relating to an interest in the common shares, subject to certain exceptions (including an exception for common shares held in accounts maintained by certain financial institutions), by attaching a completed IRS Form 8938, Statement of Specified Foreign Financial Assets, with their tax return for each year in which they hold an interest in the common shares. U.S. Holders are urged to consult their own tax advisors regarding information reporting requirements relating to their ownership of the common shares.

## UNDERWRITING

Citigroup Global Markets Inc., Barclays Capital Inc. and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC are acting as joint book-running managers of this offering and as representatives of the underwriters named below. Subject to the terms and conditions stated in the underwriting agreement dated the date of this prospectus, each underwriter named below has severally agreed to purchase, and we have agreed to sell to that underwriter, on or before \_\_\_\_\_, 2017, the number of common shares set forth opposite the underwriter's name in the following table at the initial public offering price, payable in cash to us against delivery.

<u>Underwriters</u>	<u>Number of Common Shares</u>
Citigroup Global Markets Inc.	
Barclays Capital Inc.	
Wells Fargo Securities, LLC	
Canaccord Genuity Inc.	
Cormark Securities (USA) Limited	
Total	

The underwriting agreement provides that the obligations of the underwriters to purchase the common shares included in this offering are subject to approval of legal matters by counsel and to other conditions, and may be terminated at any time before the closing of this offering at their discretion on the basis of their assessment of the state of the financial markets or upon the occurrence of certain stated events. The underwriters are obligated to purchase all the common shares (other than those covered by the over-allotment option to purchase additional common shares described below) if they purchase any of the common shares.

The offering is being made concurrently in the United States and in each of the provinces and territories of Canada. The common shares will be offered in the United States through certain of the underwriters listed above, either directly or indirectly, through their respective U.S. broker-dealer affiliates or agents. The common shares will be offered in each of the provinces and territories of Canada through certain of the underwriters or their Canadian affiliates who are registered to offer the common shares for sale in such provinces and territories, or through such other registered dealers as may be designated by the underwriters. Subject to applicable law, the underwriters may offer the common shares outside of the United States and Canada. The common shares are being offered in the United States and Canada in U.S. dollars.

Common shares sold by the underwriters to the public will initially be offered at the initial public offering price set forth on the cover of this prospectus. Any common shares sold by the underwriters to securities dealers may be sold at a discount from the initial public offering price not to exceed \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per share. If all the common shares are not sold at the initial offering price, the underwriters may change the offering price and the other selling terms. Any such reduction in the offering price or the other selling terms will not affect the proceeds received by us, and the compensation realized by the underwriters will be decreased by the amount that the aggregate offering price paid by the purchasers for the common shares is less than the gross proceeds paid by the underwriters to us. The representatives have advised us that the underwriters do not intend to make sales to discretionary accounts.

We have granted to the underwriters an option, exercisable for 30 days from the date of this prospectus, to purchase up to \_\_\_\_\_ additional common shares at the initial public offering price less the underwriting discount. The underwriters may exercise this option solely for the purpose of covering over-allotments, if any, made in connection with the public offering of the common shares offered by this prospectus. To the extent the option is exercised, each underwriter must purchase a number of additional common shares approximately proportionate to that underwriter's initial purchase commitment. Any common shares issued or sold under the option will be issued and sold on the same terms and conditions as the other common shares that are the subject of this offering.

## [Table of Contents](#)

We, our officers, directors and holders of substantially all of our securities have agreed that, subject to specified limited exceptions, for a period of 180 days from the date of this prospectus, we and they will not, without the prior written consent of the representatives, dispose of or hedge any common shares or any securities convertible into or exchangeable for our common shares. The representatives, in their sole discretion, may release any of the securities subject to these lock-up agreements at any time, which, in the case of officers and directors, shall be with notice, which, in the case of officers and directors, shall be with notices.

Prior to this offering, there has been no public market for our common shares. Consequently, the initial public offering price for the common shares will be determined by negotiations between us and the representatives. Among the factors considered in determining the initial public offering price will be our results of operations, our current financial condition, our future prospects, our markets, the economic conditions in and future prospects for the industry in which we compete, our management and currently prevailing general conditions in the equity securities markets, including current market valuations of publicly traded companies considered comparable to our company. We cannot assure however, that the price at which the common shares will sell in the public market after this offering will not be lower than the initial public offering price or that an active trading market in our common shares will develop and continue after this offering.

We have applied to have our common shares listed on the NYSE and, we intend to apply to list our common shares on the TSX, under the symbol "ZYME." Listing will be subject to us fulfilling all of the listing requirements of the NYSE and the TSX.

The following table shows the underwriting discounts and commissions that we are to pay to the underwriters in connection with this offering. These amounts are shown assuming both no exercise and full exercise of the underwriters' over-allotment option to purchase additional common shares.

	Paid by Zymeworks Inc.	
	No Exercise	Full Exercise
Per share	\$	\$
Total	\$	\$

We estimate that our portion of the total expenses of this offering will be \$ . We have also agreed to reimburse the underwriters for certain FINRA-related and other expenses incurred by them in connection with this offering in an amount up to \$ .

In addition, we have separately agreed to pay MTS Securities, LLC, or MTS, a financial advisory fee upon the completion of this offering of \$400,000. MTS is also being paid an initial retainer of \$50,000 and up to \$100,000 in reimbursement of legal fees. MTS is not acting as an underwriter and will not sell or offer to sell any securities or identify, solicit or engage directly with potential investors. In addition, MTS will not underwrite or purchase any of the offered securities or otherwise participate in any such undertaking.

In connection with the offering, the underwriters may purchase and sell common shares in the open market. Purchases and sales in the open market may include short sales, purchases to cover short positions, which may include purchases pursuant to the underwriters' over-allotment option to purchase additional common shares, and stabilizing purchases.

- Short sales involve secondary market sales by the underwriters of a greater number of common shares than they are required to purchase in the offering.
- "Covered" short sales are sales of common shares in an amount up to the number of common shares represented by the underwriters' over-allotment option to purchase additional common shares.

## Table of Contents

- “Naked” short sales are sales of common shares in an amount in excess of the number of common shares represented by the underwriters’ over-allotment option to purchase additional common shares.
- Covering transactions involve purchases of common shares either pursuant to the underwriters’ over-allotment option to purchase additional common shares or in the open market in order to cover short positions.
  - To close a naked short position, the underwriters must purchase common shares in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of the common shares in the open market after pricing that could adversely affect investors who purchase in the offering.
  - To close a covered short position, the underwriters must purchase common shares in the open market or must exercise their over-allotment option to purchase additional common shares. In determining the source of common shares to close the covered short position, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the price of common shares available for purchase in the open market as compared to the price at which they may purchase common shares through the underwriters’ over-allotment option to purchase additional common shares.
- Stabilizing transactions involve bids to purchase common shares so long as the stabilizing bids do not exceed a specified maximum.

Purchases to cover short positions and stabilizing purchases, as well as other purchases by the underwriters for their own accounts, may have the effect of preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of the common shares. They may also cause the price of the common shares to be higher than the price that would otherwise exist in the open market in the absence of these transactions. The underwriters may conduct these transactions on the NYSE and the TSX, in the over-the-counter market or otherwise. If the underwriters commence any of these transactions, they may discontinue them at any time.

Neither we nor any of the underwriters make any representation or prediction as to the direction or magnitude of any effect that the transactions described above may have on the price of our common shares. The underwriters are not obliged to engage in these activities and if commenced, any of these activities may be discontinued at any time.

In accordance with Canadian securities laws, the underwriters may not, throughout the period of distribution, bid for or purchase the common shares. Exceptions, however, exist where the bid or purchase is not made to create the appearance of active trading in, or rising prices of, the common shares. These exceptions include a bid or purchase permitted under the articles that will be in effect prior to closing of the offering and rules of applicable Canadian securities regulatory authorities and the TSX, including the Universal Market Integrity Rules for Canadian Marketplaces, relating to market stabilization and passive market making activities and a bid or purchase made for and on behalf of a customer where the order was not solicited during the period of distribution. Subject to the foregoing and applicable laws, in connection with the offering and pursuant to the first exception mentioned above, the underwriters may over-allot or effect transactions that stabilize or maintain the market price of the common shares at levels other than those which might otherwise prevail on the open market. Any of the foregoing activities may have the effect of preventing or slowing a decline in the market price of the common shares. They may also cause the price of the common shares to be higher than the price that would otherwise exist in the open market in the absence of these transactions. The underwriters may conduct these transactions on the NYSE, the TSX, in the OTC market or otherwise. If the underwriters commence any of these transactions, they may discontinue them at any time.

## **Relationships**

The underwriters are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. The underwriters and their respective affiliates have in

## [Table of Contents](#)

the past performed commercial banking, investment banking and advisory services for us from time to time for which they have received customary fees and reimbursement of expenses and may, from time to time, engage in transactions with and perform services for us in the ordinary course of their business for which they may receive customary fees and reimbursement of expenses. In the ordinary course of their various business activities, the underwriters and their respective affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (which may include bank loans and credit default swaps) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers and may at any time hold long and short positions in such securities and instruments. Such investments and securities activities may involve securities and instruments of ours or our affiliates. The underwriters and their affiliates may also make investment recommendations and publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or financial instruments and may hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and short positions in such securities and instruments.

We have agreed to indemnify the underwriters against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act and the applicable Canadian securities laws or to contribute to payments the underwriters may be required to make because of any of those liabilities.

### **Directed Share Program**

At our request, the underwriters have reserved up to 2.5% of the shares for sale at the initial public offering price to persons who are directors, officers, employees and other individuals associated with us and members of their families. The number of shares available for sale to the general public will be reduced by the number of directed shares purchased by participants in the program. The sales will be made by Citigroup Global Markets Inc. in the United States and Canaccord Genuity Corp. in Canada. Except for certain of our officers, directors and employees who have entered into lock-up agreements referred to above, each person buying shares through the directed share program has agreed that, for a period of 180 days from the date of this prospectus, he or she will not, without the prior written consent of the representatives, dispose of or hedge any shares or any securities convertible into or exchangeable for our common stock with respect to shares purchased in the program. For certain officers, directors and employees purchasing shares through the directed share program, the lock-up agreements referred to above shall govern with respect to their purchases. The representatives in their sole discretion may release any of the securities subject to these lock-up agreements at any time, which, in the case of officers and directors, shall be with notice. Any directed shares not purchased will be offered by the underwriters to the general public on the same basis as all other shares offered. We have agreed to indemnify the underwriters against certain liabilities and expenses, including liabilities under the Securities Act, in connection with the sales of the directed shares.

### **Selling Restrictions**

Other than in the United States and each of the provinces and territories of Canada, no action has been taken by us that would permit a public offering of the common shares offered by this prospectus in any jurisdiction where action for that purpose is required. The common shares offered by this prospectus may not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, nor may this prospectus or any other offering material or advertisements in connection with the offer and sale of any such common shares be distributed or published in any jurisdiction, except under circumstances that will result in compliance with the applicable rules and regulations of that jurisdiction. Persons into whose possession this prospectus comes are advised to inform themselves about and to observe any restrictions relating to the offering and the distribution of this prospectus. This prospectus does not constitute an offer to sell or a solicitation of an offer to buy any common shares offered by this prospectus in any jurisdiction in which such an offer or a solicitation is unlawful.

### ***Notice to Prospective Investors in the European Economic Area***

In relation to each member state of the European Economic Area that has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a relevant member state), with effect from and including the date on which the Prospectus

## [Table of Contents](#)

Directive is implemented in that relevant member state (the relevant implementation date), an offer of common shares described in this prospectus may not be made to the public in that relevant member state other than:

- to any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive;
- to fewer than 100 or, if the relevant member state has implemented the relevant provision of the 2010 PD Amending Directive, 150 natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the Prospectus Directive), as permitted under the Prospectus Directive, subject to obtaining the prior consent of the relevant Dealer or Dealers nominated by us for any such offer; or
- in any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive,

provided that no such offer of common shares shall require us or any underwriter to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive.

For purposes of this provision, the expression an “offer of securities to the public” in any relevant member state means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the common shares to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe for the common shares, as the expression may be varied in that member state by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive in that member state, and the expression “Prospectus Directive” means Directive 2003/71/EC (and amendments thereto, including the 2010 PD Amending Directive, to the extent implemented in the relevant member state) and includes any relevant implementing measure in the relevant member state. The expression 2010 PD Amending Directive means Directive 2010/73/EU.

The sellers of the common shares have not authorized and do not authorize the making of any offer of common shares through any financial intermediary on their behalf, other than offers made by the underwriters with a view to the final placement of the common shares as contemplated in this prospectus. Accordingly, no purchaser of the common shares, other than the underwriters, is authorized to make any further offer of the common shares on behalf of the sellers or the underwriters.

### ***Notice to Prospective Investors in the United Kingdom***

This prospectus is only being distributed to, and is only directed at, persons in the United Kingdom that are qualified investors within the meaning of Article 2(1)(e) of the Prospectus Directive that are also (i) investment professionals falling within Article 19(5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005, as amended (the “Order”) and/or (ii) high net worth entities falling within Article 49(2)(a) to (d) of the Order and other persons to whom it may lawfully be communicated (each such person being referred to as a “relevant person”).

This prospectus and its contents are confidential and should not be distributed, published or reproduced (in whole or in part) or disclosed by recipients to any other persons in the United Kingdom. Any person in the United Kingdom that is not a relevant person should not act or rely on this document or any of its contents.

### ***Notice to Prospective Investors in France***

Neither this prospectus nor any other offering material relating to the common shares described in this prospectus has been submitted to the clearance procedures of the *Autorité des Marchés Financiers* or of the competent authority of another member state of the European Economic Area and notified to the *Autorité des Marchés Financiers*. The common shares have not been offered or sold and will not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, to the public in France. Neither this prospectus nor any other offering material relating to the common shares has been or will be:

- released, issued, distributed or caused to be released, issued or distributed to the public in France; or
- used in connection with any offer for subscription or sale of the common shares to the public in France.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Such offers, sales and distributions will be made in France only:

- to qualified investors (*investisseurs qualifiés*) or to a restricted circle of investors (*cercle restreint d'investisseurs*), in each case investing for their own account, all as defined in, and in accordance with articles L.411-2, D.411-1, D.411-2, D.734-1, D.744-1, D.754-1 and D.764-1 of the French *Code monétaire et financier*;
- to investment services providers authorized to engage in portfolio management on behalf of third parties; or
- in a transaction that, in accordance with article L.411-2-II-1°-or-2°-or 3° of the French *Code monétaire et financier* and article 211-2 of the General Regulations (*Règlement Général*) of the *Autorité des Marchés Financiers*, does not constitute a public offer (*appel public à l'épargne*).

The common shares may be resold directly or indirectly, only in compliance with articles L.411-1, L.411-2, L.412-1 and L.621-8 through L.621-8-3 of the French *Code monétaire et financier*.

### ***Notice to Prospective Investors in Hong Kong***

No securities have been offered or sold, and no securities may be offered or sold, in Hong Kong, by means of any document, other than to persons whose ordinary business is to buy or sell shares or debentures, whether as principal or agent; or to professional investors, as defined in the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571) of Hong Kong ("SFO") and any rules made under that Ordinance; or in other circumstances which do not result in the document being a prospectus, as defined in the Companies Ordinance (Cap. 32) of Hong Kong ("CO") or which do not constitute an offer or invitation to the public for the purpose of the CO or the SFO. No document, invitation or advertisement relating to the securities has been issued or may be issued or may be in the possession of any person for the purpose of issue (in each case whether in Hong Kong or elsewhere), which is directed at, or the contents of which are likely to be accessed or read by, the public of Hong Kong (except if permitted under the securities laws of Hong Kong) other than with respect to securities which are or are intended to be disposed of only to persons outside Hong Kong or only to professional investors, as defined in the SFO and any rules made under that Ordinance.

This prospectus has not been registered with the Registrar of Companies in Hong Kong. Accordingly, this prospectus may not be issued, circulated or distributed in Hong Kong, and the securities may not be offered for subscription to members of the public in Hong Kong. Each person acquiring the securities will be required, and is deemed by the acquisition of the securities, to confirm that he is aware of the restriction on offers of the securities described in this prospectus and the relevant offering documents and that he is not acquiring, and has not been offered any securities in circumstances that contravene any such restrictions.

### ***Notice to Prospective Investors in Japan***

The offering has not been and will not be registered under the Financial Instruments and Exchange Law of Japan (Law No. 25 of 1948 of Japan, as amended), or FIEL, and the initial purchaser will not offer or sell any securities, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to, or for the benefit of, any resident of Japan (which term as used herein means any person resident in Japan, including any corporation or other entity organized under the laws of Japan), or to others for re-offering or resale, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to, or for the benefit of, any resident of Japan, except pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of, and otherwise in compliance with, the FIEL and any other applicable laws, regulations and ministerial guidelines of Japan.

### ***Notice to Prospective Investors in Singapore***

This prospectus has not been and will not be lodged or registered as a prospectus with the Monetary Authority of Singapore. Accordingly, this prospectus and any other document or material in connection with the offer or sale, or invitation for subscription or purchase, of the common shares may not be circulated or distributed, nor may the common shares be offered or sold, or be made the subject of an invitation for

## Table of Contents

subscription or purchase, whether directly or indirectly, to persons in Singapore other than (i) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the Securities and Futures Act, Chapter 289 of Singapore (the “SFA”), (ii) to a relevant person pursuant to Section 275(1), or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A), and in accordance with the conditions specified in Section 275, of the SFA, or (iii) otherwise pursuant to, and in accordance with the conditions of, any other applicable provision of the SFA.

Where the common shares are subscribed or purchased under Section 275 of the SFA by a relevant person which is:

- a corporation (which is not an accredited investor (as defined in Section 4A of the SFA)) the sole business of which is to hold investments and the entire share capital of which is owned by one or more individuals, each of whom is an accredited investor; or
- a trust (where the trustee is not an accredited investor) whose sole purpose is to hold investments and each beneficiary of the trust is an individual who is an accredited investor, securities (as defined in Section 239(1) of the SFA) of that corporation or the beneficiaries’ rights and interest (howsoever described) in that trust shall not be transferred within six months after that corporation or that trust has acquired the common shares pursuant to an offer made under Section 275 of the SFA except:
  - to an institutional investor or to a relevant person defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA, or to any person arising from an offer referred to in Section 275(1A) or Section 276(4)(i)(B) of the SFA;
  - where no consideration is or will be given for the transfer;
  - where the transfer is by operation of law;
  - as specified in Section 276(7) of the SFA; or
  - as specified in Regulation 32 of the Securities and Futures (Offers of Investments) (Shares and Debentures) Regulations 2005 of Singapore.

### ***Notice to Prospective Investors in Australia***

This prospectus is not a disclosure document for the purposes of Australia’s Corporations Act 2001 (Cth) of Australia, or Corporations Act, has not been lodged with the Australian Securities & Investments Commission and is only directed to the categories of exempt persons set out below. Accordingly, if you receive this prospectus in Australia:

You confirm and warrant that you are either:

- a “sophisticated investor” under section 708(8)(a) or (b) of the Corporations Act;
- a “sophisticated investor” under section 708(8)(c) or (d) of the Corporations Act and that you have provided an accountant’s certificate to the Company which complies with the requirements of section 708(8)(c)(i) or (ii) of the Corporations Act and related regulations before the offer has been made;
- a person associated with the Company under Section 708(12) of the Corporations Act; or
- a “professional investor” within the meaning of section 708(11)(a) or (b) of the Corporations Act.

To the extent that you are unable to confirm or warrant that you are an exempt sophisticated investor, associated person or professional investor under the Corporations Act any offer made to you under this prospectus is void and incapable of acceptance.

You warrant and agree that you will not offer any of the securities issued to you pursuant to this prospectus for resale in Australia within 12 months of those securities being issued unless any such resale offer is exempt from the requirement to issue a disclosure document under Section 708 of the Corporations Act.

**EXPENSES RELATED TO THIS OFFERING**

The following table sets forth the costs and expenses, other than underwriting discounts and commissions, payable by us in connection with the offer and sale of our common shares in this offering. All amounts listed below are estimates except the SEC registration fee and FINRA filing fee.

<u>Itemized expense</u>	<u>Amount</u>
SEC registration fee	\$
Canadian securities regulatory filing fees	
NYSE listing fee	
TSX listing fee	
FINRA filing fee	
Printing and engraving expenses	
Transfer agent and registrar fees	
Legal fees and expenses	
Accounting fees and expenses	
Public Relations fees	\$
Total	

## LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the common shares being offered by this prospectus and other legal matters concerning this offering relating to Canadian law will be passed upon for us by Blake, Cassels & Graydon LLP. Certain legal matters in connection with this offering relating to U.S. law will be passed upon for us by Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom LLP. Certain legal matters in connection with this offering will be passed upon for the underwriters by McCarthy Tétrault LLP, with respect to Canadian law, and by Cooley LLP, with respect to U.S. law. As of the date of this prospectus, the partners and associates of Blake, Cassels & Graydon LLP, as a group, beneficially own, directly or indirectly, less than 1% of our common shares, and the partners and associates of McCarthy Tétrault LLP, as a group, beneficially own, directly or indirectly, less than 1% of our common shares.

**EXPERTS**

The consolidated financial statements of Zymeworks Inc. as of December 31, 2014 and 2015 and for the years then ended have been included herein in reliance on the report of KPMG LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, appearing elsewhere herein, and upon authority of said firm as experts in auditing and accounting. KPMG LLP is independent with respect to us within the meaning of the Rules of Professional Conduct of the Institute of Chartered Professional Accountants of British Columbia and under all relevant U.S. professional and regulatory standards, including PCAOB Rule 3520.

The financial statements of Kairos Therapeutics Inc. as of March 31, 2015 and December 31, 2015 and for the year ended March 31, 2015 and the nine months ended December 31, 2015 have been included herein in reliance on the report of KPMG LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, appearing elsewhere herein, and upon authority of said firm as experts in auditing and accounting.

## CHANGES IN REGISTRANT'S CERTIFYING ACCOUNTANT

On June 24, 2015, PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, or the Former Accountant, was dismissed as our independent registered public accounting firm. We approved the appointment of KPMG LLP, or the New Accountant, as our independent registered public accountant. At the recommendation of the audit committee of the board of directors, the resolution to change accountants was approved by our shareholders on June 24, 2015.

The Former Accountant's audit report on the financial statements of the Company for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014 contained no adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion, nor was it qualified or modified as to uncertainty, audit scope or accounting principles.

During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014, and through the interim period ended March 31, 2015 and the date of the Former Accountant's dismissal, June 24, 2015, there were no "disagreements" (as such term is defined in Item 16F of Form 20-F) with the Former Accountant on any matter of accounting principles or practices, financial statement disclosure, or auditing scope or procedures, which disagreements if not resolved to the satisfaction of the Former Accountant would have caused them to make reference thereto in their reports on the financial statements for such periods.

During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014, and through the interim period ended March 31, 2015 and the date of the Former Accountant's dismissal, June 24, 2015, there were no "reportable events" (as such term is defined in Item 16F of Form 20-F). We authorized the Former Accountant to respond fully and without limitation to all requests of the New Accountant concerning all matters related to the audited period by the Former Accountant.

Prior to retaining the New Accountant, we did not consult with the New Accountant regarding either: (i) the application of accounting principles to a specified transaction, either contemplated or proposed, or the type of audit opinion that might be rendered on the Company's financial statements; or (ii) any matter that was the subject of a "disagreement" or a "reportable event" (as those terms are defined in Item 16F of Form 20-F).

We have provided a copy of the above statements to the Former Accountant and requested that it furnish us with a letter addressed to the SEC stating whether or not they agree with the above disclosure. A copy of that letter, dated \_\_\_\_\_, is filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

Subsequent to their appointment as our independent auditors, we engaged the New Accountant to audit our consolidated financial statements as at and for the year ended December 31, 2014.

## WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form F-1 under the Securities Act, including relevant exhibits and schedules, with respect to the common shares to be sold in this offering. This prospectus, which constitutes a part of the registration statement, does not contain all of the information contained in the registration statement. You should read the registration statement and its exhibits for further information with respect to us and the common shares. Some of these exhibits consist of documents or contracts that are described in this prospectus in summary form. You should read the entire document or contract for the complete terms. You may read and copy the registration statement and its exhibits at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street N.E., Room 1580, Washington, D.C. 20549. You may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. In addition, the SEC maintains an internet website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov), from which you can electronically access the registration statement and its exhibits.

After this offering, we will be subject to the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act applicable to foreign private issuers. As a foreign private issuer, the SEC's rules do not require us to deliver proxy statements or to file quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, among other things. However, we plan to produce quarterly financial reports and furnish them to the SEC not later than 45 days after the end of each of the first three quarters of our fiscal year and to file our annual report on Form 20-F not later than 90 days after the end of our fiscal year. In addition, our "insiders" are not subject to the SEC's rules regarding insider reporting and prohibiting short-swing trading under Section 16 of the Exchange Act.

We will also be subject to the full informational requirements of the securities commissions in all provinces and territories of Canada. You are invited to read and copy any reports, statements or other information, other than confidential filings, that we intend to file with the Canadian provincial and territorial securities commissions. These filings are also electronically available from the Canadian System for Electronic Document Analysis and Retrieval (SEDAR) (<http://www.sedar.com>), the Canadian equivalent of the SEC's Electronic Document Gathering And Retrieval System. Documents filed on SEDAR are not, and should not be considered, part of this prospectus.

We also maintain a website at [www.zymeworks.com](http://www.zymeworks.com). Information contained in, or accessible through, our website is not a part of this prospectus, and the inclusion of our website address in this prospectus is an inactive textual reference.

[Table of Contents](#)

**INDEX TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**Zymeworks Inc.**

<a href="#">Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</a>	F-2
<a href="#">Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2014 and 2015 and September 30, 2016 (unaudited) and September 30, 2016 pro forma (unaudited)</a>	F-3
<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Changes in Redeemable Convertible Preferred Shares, Special Shares and Shareholders' Equity for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015 and the nine months ended September 30, 2016 (unaudited)</a>	F-4
<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Loss and Comprehensive Loss for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015 and the nine months ended September 30, 2015 (unaudited) and 2016 (unaudited)</a>	F-5
<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015 and the nine months ended September 30, 2015 (unaudited) and 2016 (unaudited)</a>	F-6
<a href="#">Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</a>	F-7

**Unaudited Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements**

<a href="#">Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Statement of Loss for the year ended December 31, 2015 (unaudited) and the nine months ended September 30, 2016 (unaudited)</a>	F-47
<a href="#">Notes to Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Statements of Loss</a>	F-49

**Kairos Therapeutics Inc.**

<a href="#">Independent Auditors' Report</a>	F-53
<a href="#">Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2015 and March 31, 2015</a>	F-54
<a href="#">Statements of Loss and Comprehensive Loss for nine months ended December 31, 2015 and for the year ended March 31, 2015</a>	F-55
<a href="#">Statements of Changes in Shareholder's Equity (Deficiency) for the nine months ended December 31, 2015 and for the year ended March 31, 2015</a>	F-56
<a href="#">Statements of Cash Flows for the nine months ended December 31, 2015 and for the year ended March 31, 2015</a>	F-57
<a href="#">Notes to the Financial Statements</a>	F-58

**REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

The Board of Directors and Shareholders of Zymeworks Inc.:

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Zymeworks Inc. (the “Company”) as of December 31, 2014 and 2015, and the related consolidated statements of changes in redeemable convertible preferred shares, special shares and shareholders’ equity, loss and comprehensive loss and cash flows for the years then ended. These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Zymeworks Inc. as of December 31, 2014 and 2015, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years then ended in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

/s/ KPMG LLP

Chartered Professional Accountants

January 31, 2017

Vancouver, Canada

**ZYMEWORKS INC.**  
**Consolidated Balance Sheets**  
(Expressed in thousands of U.S. dollars except share and per share data)

	December 31,		September 30,	Pro-Forma
	2014	2015	2016 (unaudited)	September 30, 2016 (unaudited)
<b>Assets</b>				
Current assets:				
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 46,835	\$ 11,519	\$ 27,944	
Short-term investments	—	3,641	23,872	
SR&ED receivables	2,733	759	495	
Accounts receivables	302	1,506	2,227	
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	176	254	1,803	
Total current assets	50,046	17,679	56,341	
Deferred financing fees	—	360	284	
Acquired in-process research and development	—	—	19,932	
Goodwill	—	—	12,016	
Equity investment	—	4,185	—	
Long-term prepaid assets	—	—	1,495	
Property and equipment, net	503	781	3,198	
Intangible assets, net	132	144	96	
Deferred tax assets	—	—	5,127	
Total assets	<u>\$ 50,681</u>	<u>\$ 23,149</u>	<u>\$ 98,489</u>	
<b>Liabilities, redeemable convertible preferred shares, and shareholders' equity</b>				
Current liabilities:				
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	\$ 2,870	\$ 4,791	\$ 5,366	
Warrant liabilities	—	—	4,785	
Deferred revenue	8,002	—	—	
Other current liabilities	33	60	983	
Total current liabilities	10,905	4,851	11,134	
Long-term debt	—	—	3,732	
Deferred tax liability	—	16	5,143	
Other long term liabilities	13	43	95	
Total liabilities	10,918	4,910	20,104	
Research collaboration and licensing agreements (note 13)				
Commitments and Contingencies (note 16)				
Subsequent events (note 17)				
Redeemable convertible preferred shares, 15,306,123 authorized shares, no par value: 12,554,665 shares issued and outstanding at September 30, 2016 (December 31, 2014 and December 31, 2015 nil)	—	—	58,860	
<b>Shareholders' equity:</b>				
Common shares, unlimited authorized shares, no par value: 31,327,561, 26,966,711 and 26,518,175 shares issued and outstanding at September 30, 2016, December 31, 2015 and December 31, 2014, respectively	81,725	83,605	106,595	
Warrants	333	333	—	
Additional paid-in capital	3,529	4,882	6,102	
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(1,072)	(6,659)	(6,659)	
Accumulated deficit	(44,752)	(63,922)	(86,513)	
Total shareholders' equity	39,763	18,239	19,525	
Total liabilities, redeemable convertible preferred shares and shareholders' equity	<u>\$ 50,681</u>	<u>\$ 23,149</u>	<u>\$ 98,489</u>	

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements*

ZYMEWORKS INC.

Consolidated Statements of Changes in Redeemable Convertible Preferred Shares, Special Shares and Shareholders' Equity  
(Expressed in thousands of U.S. dollars except share data)

	Special shares		Redeemable Convertible Class A Preferred shares		Common shares			Accumulated deficit	Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	Additional paid-in capital	Total shareholders' equity
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Warrants				
Balance at December 31, 2013	3,341,824	\$ 1	—	\$ —	12,428,867	\$ 27,256	\$ —	\$ (31,810)	\$ 113	\$ 2,955	\$ (1,486)
Issuance of common shares	—	—	—	—	9,700,753	46,745	—	—	—	—	46,745
Share issue costs and issue of warrants	—	—	—	—	—	(736)	333	—	—	—	(403)
Issuance of common shares on exercise of options	—	—	—	—	29,023	55	—	—	—	—	55
Issuance of common shares on conversion of convertible debt	—	—	—	—	4,359,532	8,405	—	—	—	—	8,405
Cancellation of special shares	(3,341,824)	(1)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Share-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	574	574
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(12,942)	—	—	(12,942)
Foreign currency translation	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(1,185)	—	(1,185)
Balance at December 31, 2014	—	\$ —	—	—	26,518,175	\$ 81,725	\$ 333	\$ (44,752)	\$ (1,072)	\$ 3,529	\$ 39,763
Issuance of common shares	—	—	—	—	367,500	1,797	—	—	—	—	1,797
Share issue costs	—	—	—	—	—	(45)	—	—	—	—	(45)
Issuance of common shares on exercise of options	—	—	—	—	81,036	128	—	—	—	—	128
Share-based compensation	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1,353	1,353
Net loss	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(19,170)	—	—	(19,170)
Foreign currency translation	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(5,587)	—	(5,587)
Balance at December 31, 2015	—	\$ —	—	—	26,966,711	\$ 83,605	\$ 333	\$ (63,922)	\$ (6,659)	\$ 4,882	\$ 18,239
Issuance of redeemable convertible preferred shares (unaudited)	—	—	12,554,665	61,518	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Share issue costs (unaudited)	—	—	—	(2,658)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Issuance of common shares for Kairos Acquisition (unaudited)	—	—	—	—	4,350,017	22,973	—	—	—	—	22,973
Issuance of common shares on exercise of options (unaudited)	—	—	—	—	10,833	17	—	—	—	—	17
Fair value adjustments upon reclassification of options to liabilities (unaudited)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(124)	—	(127)	(251)
Share-based compensation (unaudited)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1,347	1,347
Fair value adjustment upon reclassification of warrants to liabilities (unaudited)	—	—	—	—	—	—	(333)	65	—	—	(268)
Net loss (Unaudited)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(22,532)	—	—	(22,532)
Balance at September 30, 2016 (unaudited)	—	\$ —	12,554,665	\$ 58,860	31,327,561	\$ 106,595	\$ —	\$ (86,513)	\$ (6,659)	\$ 6,102	\$ 19,525

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements

**ZYMEWORKS INC.**  
**Consolidated Statements of Loss and Comprehensive Loss**  
(Expressed in thousands of U.S. dollars except share and per share data)

	Year Ended December 31,		Nine Months Ended September 30,	
	2014	2015	2015 (unaudited)	2016 (unaudited)
Revenue				
Research and developmental collaborations	\$ 1,670	\$ 9,660	\$ 8,221	\$ 8,777
Operating expenses:				
Research and development (note 18)	12,622	24,654	16,417	27,898
Government grants and credits	(2,149)	(251)	—	—
	10,473	24,403	16,417	27,898
General and administrative (note 18)	3,945	5,217	3,846	7,437
Total operating expenses	14,418	29,620	20,263	35,335
Loss from operations	(12,748)	(19,960)	(12,042)	(26,558)
Other income and expenses				
Interest and other expense	(9)	(18)	(16)	(749)
Change in fair value of warrant liabilities	—	—	—	(747)
Accretion on convertible debt and long-term debt	(293)	—	—	(380)
Interest and other income	116	324	267	238
Foreign exchange (loss) / gain	(8)	518	546	1,273
Equity loss on investment	—	—	—	(98)
Gain on fair value of equity investment	—	—	—	177
Impairment on acquired IPR&D	—	—	—	(768)
Total other income and expenses	(194)	824	797	(1,054)
Loss before income taxes	(12,942)	(19,136)	(11,245)	(27,612)
Income tax expense	—	(34)	—	(327)
Deferred income tax benefit	—	—	—	5,407
Net loss	\$ (12,942)	\$ (19,170)	\$ (11,245)	\$ (22,532)
Basic and diluted loss per common share	(0.74)	(0.71)	(0.42)	(0.75)
Weighted-average number of outstanding shares—basic and diluted	17,479,680	26,888,906	26,863,879	30,085,263
Pro forma basic and diluted loss per common share (unaudited)		(0.71)		(0.53)
Pro forma weighted-average number of outstanding shares—basic and diluted (unaudited)		26,888,906		42,365,008
Other Comprehensive Loss:				
Foreign currency translation adjustment	(1,185)	(5,587)	(4,958)	—
Total comprehensive loss	\$ (14,127)	\$ (24,757)	\$ (16,203)	\$ (22,532)

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements*

**ZYMEWORKS INC.**  
**Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows**  
**(Expressed in thousands of U.S. dollars)**

	<u>Year Ended December 31,</u>		<u>Nine Months Ended September 30,</u>	
	<u>2014</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2016</u>
			<u>(unaudited)</u>	<u>(unaudited)</u>
<b>Cash flows from operating activities:</b>				
Loss for the period	\$ (12,942)	\$ (19,170)	\$ (11,245)	\$ (22,532)
Items not involving cash:				
Depreciation of property and equipment	275	280	210	330
Depreciation of intangible assets	137	214	160	74
Equity loss on investment	—	—	—	98
Gain on fair value of equity investment	—	—	—	(177)
Accretion on convertible debt and long-term debt	293	—	—	380
Share-based compensation	574	1,389	1,135	1,730
Income tax (expense) and deferred income tax recovery	—	34	—	(5,407)
Impairment on acquired IPR&D	—	—	—	768
Change in fair value of warrant liabilities	—	—	—	747
<b>Changes in non-cash operating working capital:</b>				
Accounts receivables	(279)	(1,363)	(266)	(142)
SR&ED receivables	(316)	1,660	2,197	491
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(16)	(116)	6	(3,043)
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	(1,744)	2,417	(560)	(239)
Deferred revenue	7,002	(7,515)	(8,002)	—
Income taxes payable	—	—	—	273
Net cash used in operating activities	<u>\$ (7,016)</u>	<u>\$ (22,170)</u>	<u>\$ (16,365)</u>	<u>\$ (26,649)</u>
<b>Cash flows from financing activities:</b>				
Issuance of common shares from private placement, net of issuance costs	46,341	1,752	1,752	—
Issuance of preferred shares from private placement, net of issuance costs	—	—	—	58,860
Share issuance costs—preferred shares	—	—	—	—
Issuance of common shares on exercise of options	55	128	117	17
Debt financing	—	—	—	6,953
Deferred financing fees	—	(360)	(125)	246
Capital lease payments	(9)	(4)	(6)	(5)
Net cash provided by financing activities	<u>\$ 46,387</u>	<u>\$ 1,516</u>	<u>\$ 1,738</u>	<u>\$ 66,071</u>
<b>Cash flows from investing activities:</b>				
Short-term investments	—	(4,310)	(4,310)	(20,033)
Acquisition of property and equipment	(80)	(626)	(522)	(2,745)
Acquisition of intangible assets	(201)	(227)	(207)	(26)
Acquisition of equity investments	—	(4,038)	—	—
Cash acquired from Kairos, net of cash consideration	—	—	—	78
Net cash used in investing activities	<u>\$ (281)</u>	<u>\$ (9,201)</u>	<u>\$ (5,039)</u>	<u>\$ (22,726)</u>
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	(1,244)	(5,461)	(4,382)	(271)
Net change in cash and cash equivalents	37,846	(35,316)	(24,048)	16,425
Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of period	8,989	46,835	46,835	11,519
Cash and cash equivalents, end of period	<u>\$ 46,835</u>	<u>\$ 11,519</u>	<u>\$ 22,787</u>	<u>\$ 27,944</u>
<i>Supplemental disclosure of non-cash investing and finance items:</i>				
Deferred financing fees in accounts payable and accrued liabilities	—	—	178	284
Class A Preferred Shares Warrant issued in connection with debt	—	—	—	3,770

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of these financial statements*

**Zymeworks Inc.**  
**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**1. Nature of Operations**

Zymeworks Inc. (the “Company” or “Zymeworks”) was incorporated on September 8, 2003 under the laws of the Canada Business Corporations Act. On October 22, 2003, the Company was registered as an extra-provincial company under the Company Act (British Columbia). Zymeworks is a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company dedicated to the discovery, development and commercialization of next-generation biotherapeutics, initially focused on the treatment of cancer.

Since its inception, the Company has devoted substantially all of its resources to research and development activities, including developing its therapeutic platforms, identifying and developing potential product candidates and undertaking preclinical studies as well as providing general and administrative support, business planning, raising capital and protecting its intellectual property.

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies**

***Basis of Presentation and Principles of Consolidation***

The consolidated financial statements of the Company have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America (“U.S. GAAP”). The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of Zymeworks Inc. and its wholly owned subsidiaries, Zymeworks Biopharmaceuticals Inc., which was incorporated in the State of Washington on December 5, 2014, and Zymeworks Biochemistry Inc. (formerly Kairos Therapeutics Inc. (“Kairos”)), which was acquired on March 18, 2016. Kairos’ financial statements have been consolidated within the Company’s unaudited interim condensed consolidated financial statements from the date of acquisition. All inter-company accounts and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation.

All amounts expressed in the consolidated financial statements of the Company and the accompanying notes thereto are expressed in thousands of U.S. dollars, except for per share data and where otherwise indicated. References to “\$” are to U.S. dollars and reference to “C\$” are to Canadian dollars.

***Use of Estimates***

The preparation of the financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP requires the Company to make estimates and judgments in certain circumstances that affect the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, revenue and expenses, and related disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities. In preparing these consolidated financial statements, management has made its best estimates and judgments of certain amounts included in the financial statements, giving due consideration to materiality. On an ongoing basis, the Company evaluates its estimates, including those related to revenue recognition, government grants and credits, equity investment, share-based compensation, accrual of expenses, preclinical study accruals, valuation allowance for deferred taxes and other contingencies. Management bases its estimates on historical experience or on various other assumptions that it believes to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could differ from these estimates.

***Unaudited Interim Financial Information***

The accompanying unaudited interim consolidated balance sheet as of September 30, 2016, the consolidated statements of changes in redeemable convertible preferred shares, special shares and shareholders’ equity for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and the statements of loss and comprehensive loss and cash flows for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, and the related interim information contained within the notes to the consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with the rules and regulations of the

## [Table of Contents](#)

Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) for interim financial information. In the opinion of management, the unaudited interim consolidated financial statements reflect all adjustments, consisting only of normal and recurring adjustments, necessary for the fair presentation of the Company’s financial position at September 30, 2016 and results of its operations and its cash flows for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015. The results for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015 are not necessarily indicative of future results. All references to September 30, 2016 or to the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015 in the notes to the consolidated financial statements are unaudited.

### ***Unaudited Pro Forma Consolidated Balance Sheet Presentation***

The unaudited pro forma consolidated balance sheet as of September 30, 2016, reflects the automatic conversion of the outstanding shares of redeemable convertible Class A preferred shares into common shares and the automatic conversion of the redeemable convertible Class A preferred share warrants into common share warrants as though the completion of the Company’s initial public offering (“IPO”) had occurred on September 30, 2016. In addition, the pro forma consolidated balance sheet information assumes the reclassification of the redeemable convertible Class A preferred share warrant liability to additional paid-in capital upon its conversion to a common share warrant. The unaudited pro forma consolidated balance sheet does not assume any proceeds from the proposed IPO.

### ***Changes in Significant Accounting Policies***

#### *Foreign currency translation and functional currency conversion*

Prior to January 1, 2016, the Company’s functional currency was the Canadian dollar.

The Company reassessed its functional currency and determined as at January 1, 2016, its functional currency changed from the Canadian dollar to the U.S. dollar based on management’s analysis of the changes in the primary economic environment in which the Company operates. The change in functional currency is accounted for prospectively from January 1, 2016 and prior year financial statements have not been restated for the change in functional currency.

For periods prior to January 1, 2016, the effects of exchange rate fluctuations on translating foreign currency monetary assets and liabilities into Canadian dollars were included in the statement of loss and comprehensive loss as foreign exchange gain/loss. Revenue and expense transactions were translated into the U.S. dollar reporting currency at the average exchange rate during the period, and assets and liabilities were translated at end of period exchange rates, except for equity transactions, which were translated at historical exchange rates. Translation gains and losses from the application of the U.S. dollar as the reporting currency while the Canadian dollar was the functional currency are included as part of the cumulative foreign currency translation adjustment, which is reported as a component of shareholders’ equity under accumulated other comprehensive loss.

For periods commencing January 1, 2016, monetary assets and liabilities denominated in foreign currencies are translated into U.S. dollars using exchange rates in effect at the balance sheet date. Opening balances related to non-monetary assets and liabilities are based on prior period translated amounts, and non-monetary assets and non-monetary liabilities incurred after January 1, 2016 are translated at the approximate exchange rate prevailing at the date of the transaction. Revenue and expense transactions are translated at the approximate exchange rate in effect at the time of the transaction. Foreign exchange gains and losses are included in the statement of loss and comprehensive loss as foreign exchange gain (loss).

The functional currency of Zymeworks Biopharmaceuticals Inc. and Zymeworks Biochemistry Inc. is also the U.S. dollar.

#### *Net income (loss) per share*

The Company follows the two-class method when computing net income (loss) per common share as the Company issued redeemable convertible Class A preferred shares in January 2016 that meet the definition of

## [Table of Contents](#)

participating securities. The two-class method determines net income (loss) per share for each class of common and participating securities according to dividends declared or accumulated and participation rights in undistributed earnings. The two-class method requires income available to common shareholders for the period to be allocated between common and participating securities based upon their respective rights to receive dividends as if all income for the period had been distributed. The Company's redeemable convertible Class A preferred shares contractually entitle the holders of such shares to participate in dividends, but do not contractually require the holders of such shares to participate in losses of the Company. Accordingly, in periods in which the Company reports a net loss or a net loss attributable to common shareholders resulting from preferred share dividends, net losses are not allocated to participating securities. The Company reported a net loss attributable to common shareholders for all the periods presented.

### *Liability classified awards*

For awards accounted for under Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 718 "Compensation—Stock Options" ("ASC 718"), with an exercise price which is not denominated in: (a) the currency of a market in which a substantial portion of the Company's equity securities trades, (b) the currency in which the individual's pay is denominated, or (c) the Company's functional currency, are required to be classified as liabilities. For awards accounted for under ASC 815 "Derivatives and Hedging" ("ASC 815"), any warrant or option that provides for an exercise price which is not denominated in the Company's functional currency are required to be classified as liabilities.

Upon the change of the functional currency from Canadian dollars to U.S. dollars effective January 1, 2016, certain options previously classified as equity awards with total fair value of \$251 and common share warrants previously classified as equity awards with a total fair value of \$268 have been reclassified as liability awards. Under ASC 815, upon the change in classification, the change in fair value of the options and common share warrants while they were classified as equity is recorded as an adjustment to the accumulated deficit.

Liability classified awards are subsequently measured at fair value at each balance sheet date until exercised or cancelled, with changes in fair value recognized as compensation cost or additional paid-in capital (ASC 718 awards) or other income expense (ASC 815 awards) for the period. Under ASC 718, when an award is reclassified from equity to liability, if at the reclassification date the original vesting conditions are expected to be satisfied, then the minimum amount of compensation cost to be recognized is based on the grant date fair value of the original award. Fair value changes below this minimum amount are recorded in additional paid-in capital. Fair value is calculated using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. The Black-Scholes option pricing model uses various inputs to measure fair value, including estimated fair value of the Company's underlying common shares at the grant date, expected term, estimated volatility, risk-free interest rate and expected dividend yields of the Company's common shares.

### *Cash and cash equivalents*

The Company considers all highly liquid investments purchased with maturities of three months or less at the date of acquisition to be cash equivalents. Cash and cash equivalents consist primarily of money market funds and are stated at cost, which approximates fair value.

### *Short-term investments*

The Company's short-term investments consist of guaranteed investment certificates with original maturities exceeding three months and less than one year. The carrying value of these investments are recorded at cost plus accrued interest, which approximates their fair value.

### *Accounts receivable*

Accounts receivable are reported in the consolidated balance sheets at outstanding amounts, net of any provisions for uncollectible amounts. At all periods presented, the company has no allowance for doubtful accounts.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Company evaluates the collectability of accounts receivable on a regular basis based upon various factors including the financial condition and payment history of customers, an overall review of collections experience on other accounts and economic factors or events expected to affect future collections experience.

### ***Deferred financing costs***

Deferred financing fees as of December 31, 2015 consist of legal and other professional fees directly attributable to the redeemable convertible Class A preferred share financing that was completed in 2016. These fees were deferred as of December 31, 2015 and subsequently were charged against the gross proceeds from the financing in 2016.

Deferred financing fees as of September 30, 2016 consist of incremental legal and accounting fees directly attributable to the potential IPO. These fees will be offset against the IPO proceeds upon the consummation of the offering. In the event the offering is terminated, deferred financing fees will be expensed.

The Company has also deferred financing costs which represent the unamortized costs incurred on issuance of the Company's credit facility. Amortization of deferred financing costs on the credit facility is provided on the effective interest rate method over the term of the facility based on amounts available under the facility. Deferred financing costs related to the issuance of debt are presented in the consolidated balance sheet as a direct reduction of the carrying amount of the long-term debt.

### ***Equity investment***

An equity investment is when the Company has significant influence over an investee. Significant influence is the power to participate in the financial and operating policy decisions of the investee, but does not extend to control or joint control over those policies.

The results and assets and liabilities of an equity investment are incorporated in the consolidated financial statements using the equity method of accounting. Under the equity method, an investment in an entity is initially recognised at cost (including directly related transaction costs) and adjusted thereafter to recognize the Company's share of the profit or loss and other comprehensive income of the equity investment.

Any excess of the cost of the investment over the Company's share of the net fair value of the identifiable assets and liabilities of the investee is recognized as goodwill, which is included within the carrying amount of the investment. The Company periodically reviews its equity investment for other-than-temporary declines in market value when there is an event or change in circumstances that indicates the carrying value may not be recoverable. Any decline that is not expected to be recovered is considered other than temporary and an impairment charge is recorded as a reduction in the carrying value of the investment. From the investment date to December 31, 2015, there were no impairment charges related to the equity investment.

### ***Segment information***

The Company currently operates in one operating segment. Operating segments are defined as components of an enterprise about which separate discrete information is available for the chief operating decision maker, or decision making group, in deciding how to allocate resources and assessing performance. The Company views its operations and manages its business in one segment, which is developing antibody-based therapeutics for oncology, autoimmunity and inflammation indications.

### ***Property and equipment***

Property and equipment are stated at cost. Upon retirement or sale, the cost of assets disposed of and the related accumulated depreciation are removed from the accounts and any resulting gain or loss is credited or charged to operations. Repairs and maintenance costs are expensed as incurred.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Company records depreciation using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the capital assets as follows:

<u>Asset Class</u>	<u>Rate</u>
Computer equipment	3 years
Office equipment	3 years
Furniture and fixtures	5 years
Laboratory equipment	7 years
Leasehold improvements	Shorter of the initial lease term or useful life

Property and equipment, acquired or disposed of during the year, are depreciated proportionately for the period they are in use.

### ***Patents and intellectual property costs***

The costs of acquiring patents and of prosecuting and maintaining intellectual property rights are expensed as incurred to general and administrative due to the uncertainty surrounding the drug development process and the uncertainty of future benefits. Patents and intellectual property acquired from third parties are capitalized and amortized over the remaining life of the patent. No patent or intellectual property costs have been capitalized to date.

### ***Impairment of long-lived assets***

The Company assesses the recoverability of its long-lived assets whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset may not be recoverable. Recoverability of the long-lived asset is measured by a comparison of the carrying amount of the asset to future undiscounted net cash flows expected to be generated by the asset or asset group. If carrying value exceeds the sum of undiscounted cash flows, the Company then determines the fair value of the underlying asset group. Any impairment to be recognized is measured by the amount by which the carrying amount of the asset group exceeds the estimated fair value of the asset group. Assets to be disposed of are reported at the lower of the carrying amount or fair value, less costs to sell. As of December 31, 2015 and 2014, the Company determined that there were no impaired assets and had no assets held-for-sale.

### ***Government grants and credits***

Government grants are recognized where there is reasonable assurance that the grant will be received and all attached conditions will be complied with. Reimbursements of eligible costs pursuant to government assistance programs are recorded as a reduction of research and development costs when the related costs have been incurred and there is reasonable assurance regarding collection of the claim.

Grant claims not settled by the balance sheet date are recorded as receivables. The determination of the amount of the claim, and hence the receivable amount, requires management to make calculations based on its interpretation of eligible expenditures in accordance with the terms of the programs. The reimbursement claims submitted by the Company are subject to review by the relevant government agencies. Although the Company has used its best judgment and understanding of the related program agreements in determining the receivable amount, it is possible that the amounts could increase or decrease by a material amount in the near term dependent on the review and audit by the government agency.

The Company participates in the Scientific Research and Experimental Development (“SR&ED”) Program, a federal tax incentive program that encourages Canadian businesses to conduct research and development in Canada. The benefits of investment tax credits for scientific research and development expenditures are recognized in the year the qualifying expenditure is made provided there is reasonable assurance of recoverability. This investment tax credit reduces the carrying cost of research and development expenditures.

***Research and development costs***

Research and development expenses include costs that the Company incurs for its own and for the Company's strategic partners' research and development activities. Research and development expenditures are expensed as incurred. These costs primarily consist of employee related expenses, including salaries and benefits, expenses incurred under agreements with contract research organizations on our behalf, investigative sites and consultants that conduct the Company's clinical trials, the cost of acquiring and manufacturing clinical trial materials and other allocated expenses, share-based compensation expense, and costs associated with nonclinical activities and regulatory approvals.

***Revenue Recognition***

The Company recognizes revenue when all of the following criteria are met: persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, the fee is fixed or determinable, delivery or performance has substantially completed and collectability is reasonably assured.

The Company's revenues are primarily derived from research and development agreements with strategic partners for the research and development of therapeutics products. The terms of the agreements may include non-refundable signing and licensing fees, research funding, milestone payments and royalties on any product sales derived from strategic arrangements.

The Company analyzes agreements with more than one element, or deliverable, based on the guidance in ASC 605-25, Revenue Recognition – Multiple Element Arrangements ("ASC 605-25). Each required deliverable is evaluated to determine whether it qualifies as a separate unit of accounting. A delivered item or items are considered a separate unit of accounting if they have value to the collaborator or licensee on a stand-alone basis and, if the agreement includes a general right of return, the delivery or performance of undelivered items is considered probable and within the control of the Company.

In assessing whether an item or items have stand-alone value, the Company considers if the deliverable or deliverables have been sold separately on a stand-alone basis. Additional factors considered include research capabilities of the strategic partner or licensee, the availability of the associated expertise in the general market place, whether the delivered item or items can be used for their intended purpose without receipt of the remaining item(s), whether the value of the delivered item(s) is dependent on the undelivered item(s) and whether there are other vendors that can provide the undelivered item(s).

Arrangement consideration that is fixed or determinable is allocated at the inception of the agreement to all identified units of accounting based on the relative estimated selling prices in accordance with the selling price hierarchy. The selling price of each deliverable is determined using vendor specific objective evidence of selling prices, if it exists; otherwise, third-party evidence of selling prices. If neither vendor specific objective evidence nor third-party evidence exists, the Company uses its best estimate of the selling price for each deliverable. Management may be required to exercise considerable judgment in estimating the selling prices of identified units of accounting under its agreements. The arrangement consideration otherwise allocable to delivered units is limited to the amount that is not contingent on the delivery of additional items or fulfillment of other performance conditions.

When the Company determines that a license and the related therapeutic platform have stand-alone value to the licensee, these items are considered a unit of accounting and arrangement consideration allocated to this unit of accounting is recognized upon delivery of the therapeutic platform. When research services related to the transfer of the technical information are required, then the license, the applicable research services, and therapeutic platform are considered a unit of accounting and the Company must determine the period over which the performance obligations will be performed, which generally relates to the period the research services will be performed, and over which revenue is recognized. If the Company cannot reasonably estimate the timing and the level of effort to complete its performance obligations under the arrangement, then revenue under the arrangement is recognized on a straight-line basis over the period the Company is expected to complete its performance obligations.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Company recognizes other research support payments as revenue upon the performance of activities which are eligible for research support payments from its strategic partners, in accordance with the respective licensing and collaboration agreements.

The Company analyzes milestones based on the guidance in ASC 605-28, Revenue Recognition – Milestone Method (“ASC 605-28”). The Company evaluates milestone payments on an individual basis and recognizes revenue from non-refundable milestone payments when the earnings process is complete and the payment is reasonably assured. Non-refundable milestone payments related to arrangements under which the Company has continuing performance obligations are recognized as revenue upon achievement of the associated milestone, provided that the milestone event is substantive and its achievability was not reasonably assured at the inception of the agreement.

A milestone event is considered substantive if (i) the milestone is commensurate with either (a) the Company’s performance to achieve the milestone or (b) the enhancement of the value of the delivered item(s) as a result of a specific outcome resulting from the Company’s performance to achieve the milestone; (ii) it relates solely to past performance and (iii) it is reasonable relative to all of the deliverables and payment terms (including other potential milestone consideration) within the arrangement. If any portion of the milestone payment does not relate to the Company’s performance, does not relate solely to past performance or is refundable or adjustable based on future performance, the milestone is not considered to be substantive.

Certain milestones in the agreements do not meet the ASC 605-28 definition of a milestone because achievement of the milestone solely depends on the performance of the licensee. Any revenue from these contingent payments is subject to an allocation of arrangement consideration and is recognized over the remaining period of performance obligations, if any, relating to the arrangement. If there are no remaining performance obligations under the arrangement at the time the contingent payment is triggered, the contingent payment is recognized as revenue in full upon the triggering event occurring.

Options for future deliverables are considered substantive if, at the inception of the arrangement, the Company is at risk as to whether the licensee will choose to exercise the option. Factors that the Company considers in evaluating whether an option is substantive include the overall objective of the arrangement, the benefit the licensee might obtain from the arrangement without exercising the option, the cost to exercise the option and the likelihood that the option will be exercised. For arrangements under which an option is considered substantive, the Company does not consider the item underlying the option to be a deliverable at the inception of the arrangement and the associated option fees are not included in the initial consideration, assuming the option is not priced at a significant and incremental discount. Conversely, for arrangements under which an option is not considered substantive or if an option is priced at a significant and incremental discount, the Company would consider the item underlying the option to be a deliverable at the inception of the arrangement and a corresponding amount would be included in the initial consideration.

Royalty revenue will be recognized upon the sale of the related products provided the Company has no remaining performance obligations under the arrangement.

The Company periodically enters into contract amendments and subsequent contracts with the same entity. Contracts that amend the terms of existing agreements are treated in substance as one arrangement. Subsequent contracts that contain unrelated deliverables are accounted for as separate arrangements. The factors considered by the Company when determining if a deliverable in one agreement is unrelated to a deliverable in another agreement include assessing if the different deliverables in each agreement are closely interrelated or interdependent in terms of design, technology and function, if the fee in one agreement is impacted by the performance in another agreement, and is a deliverable in one agreement essential to the functionality of a deliverable in another agreement.

***Income taxes***

The Company accounts for income taxes using an asset and liability approach that requires the recognition of deferred tax assets and liabilities for the expected future tax consequences of events that have been recognized in the Company's financial statements or tax returns. In estimating future tax consequences, the Company generally considers all expected future events other than enactments of and changes in the tax law or rates. The measurement of deferred tax assets is reduced, if necessary, by the extent of the valuation allowance. The Company uses a two-step approach to determine whether an uncertain tax position should be recorded, consisting of a "more-likely-than-not" recognition criteria, and a measurement attribute that measures a given tax position as the largest amount of tax benefits that are more than 50% likely of being realized upon ultimate settlement.

Interest and tax penalties are expensed as incurred and nil has been incurred to date.

***Stock-based compensation***

The Company recognizes stock-based compensation expense on share awards granted to employees and members of the board of directors based on their estimated grant date fair value using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. This Black-Scholes option pricing model uses various inputs to measure fair value, including estimated fair value of the Company's underlying common share at the grant date, expected term, estimated volatility, risk-free interest rate and expected dividend yields of the Company's common shares. The Company recognizes stock-based compensation expense, net of estimated forfeitures, in the consolidated statements of loss and comprehensive loss on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period. The Company applies an estimated forfeiture rate derived from historical employee termination behavior. If the actual number of forfeitures differs from those estimated by management, adjustments to compensation expense may be required in future periods.

Stock options granted to individual service providers who are not employees are measured on the date of performance using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model and the awards are periodically remeasured as the underlying options vest. The fair value of the stock-based awards is amortized over the vesting period.

***Redeemable convertible Class A preferred share warrant liability***

The redeemable convertible Class A preferred share warrants are classified as liabilities and recorded at their estimated fair value as they contain a down-round provision and because the shares underlying the warrants may obligate the Company to transfer assets to the holders at a future date under certain circumstances, such as a deemed liquidation event. The warrants are subject to re-measurement at each balance sheet date and the change in fair value, if any, is included in other income (expense). The Company will continue to adjust the liability for changes in fair value until the earlier of (i) exercise or expiration of the warrants, or (ii) the completion of an IPO, at which time, all redeemable convertible Class A preferred share warrants will be converted into common share warrants and the related redeemable convertible Class A preferred share warrant liability will be reclassified to additional paid-in capital.

***Business combination and goodwill***

Acquisitions of businesses are accounted for using the acquisition method. The consideration of a business combination is measured, at the date of the exchange, as the aggregate of the fair value of assets given, liabilities incurred or assumed and equity instruments issued by the Company to the former owners of the acquiree in exchange for control of the acquiree. Acquisition related costs incurred for the business combination are expensed. The acquiree's identifiable assets, liabilities and contingent liabilities are recognized at their fair value at the acquisition date.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Goodwill arising on acquisition is recognized as an asset and initially measured at cost, being the excess of the consideration of the acquisition over the Company's interest in the fair value of the net identifiable assets, liabilities and contingent liabilities recognized. If the Company's interest in the fair value of the acquiree's net identifiable assets, liabilities and contingent liabilities exceeds the cost of the acquisition, the excess is recognized in earnings or loss immediately. Goodwill will be evaluated for impairment on an annual basis or more frequently if an indicator of impairment is present. Goodwill is subject to a two-step impairment test. The first step compares the fair value of the reporting unit to its carrying amount, which includes the goodwill. When the fair value of a reporting unit exceeds its carrying amount, goodwill of the reporting unit is considered not to be impaired, and the second step of the impairment test is unnecessary. If the carrying amount exceeds the implied fair value of the reporting unit, the second step measures the amount of the impairment loss. If the carrying amount exceeds the fair value of the goodwill, an impairment loss is recognized equal to that excess.

### ***Acquired In-process research and development***

The in-process research and development intangible asset ("IPR&D") arose from the acquisition of Kairos on March 18, 2016 (note 5). IPR&D is classified as indefinite-lived and is not amortized. IPR&D becomes definite-lived upon the completion or abandonment of the associated research and development efforts. Intangible assets with finite useful lives are amortized on a straight-line basis over their estimated useful lives, which are the respective patent terms. Amortization begins when intangible assets with finite lives are put into use. Indefinite-lived intangible assets will be evaluated for impairment on an annual basis or more frequently if an indicator of impairment is present. For definite-lived intangibles, if there is a major event indicating that the carrying value of intangible assets may be impaired, then management will perform an impairment test. When an impairment test is performed, if the carrying value exceeds the recoverable value, based on discounted future cash flows, then such assets are written down to their fair values. All research and development costs incurred subsequent to the acquisition are immediately expensed as incurred.

The costs incurred in establishing and maintaining patents for intellectual property developed internally are expensed in the period incurred.

### ***Financial instruments***

#### ***Fair value of financial instruments***

The Company measures certain financial instruments and other items at fair value.

To determine the fair value, the Company uses the fair value hierarchy for inputs used in measuring fair value that maximizes the use of observable inputs and minimizes the use of unobservable inputs by requiring that the most observable inputs be used when available. Observable inputs are inputs market participants would use to value an asset or liability and are developed based on market data obtained from independent sources. Unobservable inputs are inputs based on assumptions about the factors market participants would use to value an asset or liability. The three levels of inputs that may be used to measure fair value are as follows:

- Level 1 inputs are quoted market prices for identical instruments available in active markets.
- Level 2 inputs are inputs other than quoted prices included within Level 1 that are observable for the asset or liability either directly or indirectly. If the asset or liability has a contractual term, the input must be observable for substantially the full term. An example includes quoted market prices for similar assets or liabilities in active markets.
- Level 3 inputs are unobservable inputs for the asset or liability and will reflect management's assumptions about market assumptions that would be used to price the asset or liability.

Assets and liabilities are classified based on the lowest level of input that is significant to the fair value measurements. Changes in the observability of valuation inputs may result in a reclassification of levels for certain securities within the fair value hierarchy.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Company's financial instruments consist of cash and cash equivalents, short-term investments, accounts receivable, accounts payable and accrued liabilities and warrants.

The carrying values of cash and cash equivalents, short-term investments, accounts receivable and accounts payable and accrued liabilities approximate their fair values due to the immediate or short-term maturity of these financial instruments.

As quoted prices for the warrants and liability classified stock options are not readily available, the Company has used a Black-Scholes pricing model to estimate fair value. These are level 3 inputs as defined above.

The following tables present information about the Company's assets and liabilities that are measured at fair value on a recurring basis, and indicates the fair value hierarchy of the valuation techniques used to determine such fair value:

	<u>September 30, 2016 (unaudited)</u>	<u>Level 1</u>	<u>Level 2</u>	<u>Level 3</u>
<b>Assets</b>				
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 27,944	\$27,944	\$ —	\$ —
Short term investments	23,872	23,872	—	—
<b>Total</b>	<u>\$ 51,816</u>	<u>\$51,816</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>
<b>Liabilities</b>				
Liability classified stock options	(664)	—	—	(664)
Warrant liabilities	(4,785)	—	—	\$(4,785)
<b>Total</b>	<u>\$ (5,449)</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$(5,449)</u>
	<u>December 31, 2015</u>	<u>Level 1</u>	<u>Level 2</u>	<u>Level 3</u>
<b>Assets</b>				
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 11,519	\$11,519	\$ —	\$ —
Short term investments	3,641	3,641	—	—
<b>Total</b>	<u>\$ 15,160</u>	<u>\$15,160</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>
<b>Liabilities</b>				
Liability classified stock options	\$ (36)	\$ —	\$ —	\$ (36)
<b>Total</b>	<u>\$ (36)</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ (36)</u>
	<u>December 31, 2014</u>	<u>Level 1</u>	<u>Level 2</u>	<u>Level 3</u>
<b>Assets</b>				
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 46,835	\$46,835	\$ —	\$ —
<b>Total</b>	<u>\$ 46,835</u>	<u>\$46,835</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>
<b>Liabilities</b>				
Liability classified stock options	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
<b>Total</b>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>

[Table of Contents](#)**Net income (loss) per share**

Basic net income (loss) per share attributable to common shareholders (which equals net loss for all periods presented) is computed by dividing the net income (loss) attributable to common shareholders by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding for the period. Diluted net income (loss) attributable to common shareholders is computed by adjusting net income (loss) attributable to common shareholders to reallocate undistributed earnings based on the potential impact of dilutive securities, including outstanding redeemable convertible Class A preferred shares, convertible debentures, stock options and warrants. Diluted net income (loss) per share attributable to common shareholders is computed by dividing the diluted net income (loss) attributable to common shareholders by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding for the period, including potential dilutive common shares assuming the dilutive effect of outstanding instruments. The if-converted method is used to determine the dilutive effect of the Company's redeemable convertible Class A preferred shares, convertible debentures and warrants. The treasury stock method is used to determine the dilutive effect of the Company's stock option grants. For the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015 and for the nine months ended September 30, 2015 and 2016, redeemable convertible Class A preferred shares, convertible debentures, stock options and warrants outstanding were excluded from the calculation of diluted loss per share because their inclusion would have been anti-dilutive.

	<u>Year Ended December 31,</u>		<u>Nine Months Ended September 30,</u>	
	<u>2014</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2016</u>
			(unaudited)	
<b>Basic loss per common share:</b>				
Net loss	\$ (12,942)	\$ (19,170)	\$ (11,245)	\$ (22,532)
Basic weighted-average common shares outstanding	17,479,680	26,888,906	26,863,879	30,085,263
Basic loss per common share	\$ (0.74)	\$ (0.71)	\$ (0.42)	\$ (0.75)
<b>Diluted loss per common share:</b>				
Net loss	\$ (12,942)	\$ (19,170)	\$ (11,245)	\$ (22,532)
Basic weighted-average common shares outstanding	17,479,680	26,888,906	26,863,879	30,085,263
Effect of dilutive securities	—	—	—	—
Diluted weighted-average common shares outstanding	17,479,680	26,888,906	26,863,879	30,085,263
Diluted loss per common share	\$ (0.74)	\$ (0.71)	\$ (0.42)	\$ (0.75)

**Unaudited Pro forma Net Loss Per Share**

The unaudited pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share is computed using the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding and assumes the conversion of all outstanding shares of the redeemable convertible Class A preferred shares into common shares upon completion of the Company's IPO, as if they had converted at the beginning of the respective period or the date of issuance, if later. In addition, the numerator in the pro forma basic and diluted net loss per share calculation has been adjusted to remove gains or losses resulting from the fair value remeasurements of the redeemable convertible Class A preferred share warrant liability as the warrants will be converted into common share warrants and the related redeemable convertible Class A preferred share warrant liability will be reclassified to additional paid-in capital upon the completion of the IPO.

The Company believes the unaudited pro forma basic and diluted loss per share provides material information to investors, as the conversion of the redeemable convertible Class A preferred shares into common shares and the conversion of the redeemable convertible Class A preferred share warrants into common share warrants will occur upon the closing of the IPO.

### 3. Recent Accounting Pronouncements

#### *Early adoption of new accounting pronouncements:*

In November 2015, the FASB, issued Accounting Standards Update (“ASU”), No. 2015-17, “Balance Sheet Classification of Deferred Taxes.” ASU 2015-17 requires entities to present deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities as noncurrent in a classified balance sheet. This ASU is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period, and entities are permitted to apply either prospectively or retrospectively; early adoption is permitted. This standard was adopted retrospectively in the Company’s consolidated financial statements.

In April 2015, the FASB issued ASU 2015-03, “Interest—Imputation of Interest (Subtopic 835-30): Simplifying the Presentation of Debt Issuance Costs”. ASU 2015-03 requires that debt issuance costs related to a recognized debt liability be presented in the balance sheet as a direct deduction from the carrying amount of that debt liability, consistent with debt discounts. ASU 2015-03 is effective for financial statements issued for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2015, and interim periods within those years. This standard was adopted in the Company’s interim condensed consolidated financial statements with no material impact.

#### *Recent accounting pronouncements not yet adopted:*

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-02, “Leases”, which amends lease accounting requiring the recognition of lease assets and lease liabilities by lessees for those leases classified as operating leases under previous U.S. GAAP. The new guidance retains a distinction between finance leases and operating leases, with cash payments from operating leases classified within operating activities in the statement of cash flows. ASU 2016-02 will be effective for fiscal years and interim periods within those years, beginning after December 15, 2018. The Company is currently evaluating the new guidance to determine the impact it will have on its consolidated financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-09, “Compensation – Stock Compensation – Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting”, which simplifies several aspects of the accounting for share-based payment transactions, including the income tax consequences, classification of awards as either equity or liabilities, and classification of the statement of cash flows. The amendments stipulate (a) all excess tax benefits and tax deficiencies should be recognized as income tax expense or benefit in the statement of operations and the tax effects of exercised or vested awards should be treated as discrete items in the reporting period in which they occur, (b) excess tax benefits should be classified along with other tax cash flows as an operating activity, (c) an entity can make an entity-wide accounting policy election to either estimate the number of awards that are expected to vest (current GAAP) or account for forfeitures when they occur, (d) the threshold to qualify for equity classification permits withholding up to the maximum statutory tax rates in the applicable jurisdictions, and (e) cash paid by an employee when directly withholding shares for tax withholding purposes should be classified as financing activity. ASU 2016-09 will be effective for fiscal years and interim periods within those years, beginning on or after December 15, 2016 and early adoption is permitted. The Company is currently evaluating the new guidance to determine the impact it will have on its consolidated financial statements.

In May 2014, the FASB issued ASU 2014-09, “Revenue from Contracts with Customers” (ASC 606). The standard, as subsequently amended, is intended to clarify the principles for recognizing revenue for U.S. GAAP by creating a new Topic 606, “Revenue from Contracts with Customers”. This guidance supersedes the revenue recognition requirements in ASC 605, “Revenue Recognition”, and supersedes some cost guidance included in Subtopic 605-35, “Revenue Recognition—Construction-Type and Production-Type Contracts”. The core principle of the accounting standard is that an entity recognizes revenue to depict the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in exchange for those good or services. The amendments should be applied by either (1) retrospectively to each prior reporting period presented; or (2) retrospectively with the cumulative effect of initially applying this ASU recognized at the date of initial application. The new guidance is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017, which, for the Company, means January 1, 2018. The Company is currently evaluating the new guidance to determine the impact it will have on its consolidated financial statements.

## [Table of Contents](#)

In August 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-15 “Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments,” which addresses eight cash flow classification issues. ASU 2016-15 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017 and interim periods within those years, and early adoption is permitted, including in an interim period. Early adoption requires the adoption of all the amendments in the same period. The standard is to be applied through a retrospective transition method to each period presented. The Company is currently evaluating the new guidance to determine the impact it will have on its consolidated financial statements.

### 4. Short Term Investments

Short-term investments consist of guaranteed investment certificates (“GICs”) held at financial institutions in accordance with the Company’s treasury policy. These GICs bear interest rate of 0.6%-1.0% per annum with a maturity up to 12 months. The Company may redeem these investments 30 days after deposit without penalty.

### 5. Equity Investment and Acquisition of Kairos

#### *Equity Investment in Kairos:*

On December 21, 2015, the Company acquired 19.99% of Kairos, a privately held company specializing in the discovery and development of antibody-drug conjugates, for consideration of \$3,600 (C\$5,000), paid in cash. Legal and scientific transactional costs of \$585 (C\$812) were also capitalized to the initial cost of the equity investment.

The Company’s interest in Kairos was accounted for under the equity method. During the year ended December 31, 2015, the Company had no equity interest in Kairos’ loss.

The following table presents summarized financial information assuming a 100% ownership interest in Kairos prior to the impact of the transaction and excluding the impact from purchase price adjustments arising from the acquisition.

	December 31, 2015
Total assets	\$ 49
Total liabilities	(1,774)
Net assets of Kairos	\$ (1,725)

#### *Acquisition of Kairos:*

##### *Description of the Transaction*

On March 18, 2016, the Company completed the acquisition of all remaining issued and outstanding shares of Kairos, for \$24,778 (C\$32,257). This consideration was comprised of \$23,043 (C\$30,000) in common shares of the Company, and \$1,733 (C\$2,257) in cash, pursuant to a net working capital adjustment determined at closing.

At the time of acquisition, the Company issued 3,628,572 common shares having a fair value of \$19,203 (C\$25,000). The remaining 725,714 common shares, having a fair value of \$3,861 (C\$5,000), were held back for a period of six months under the terms of the agreement for the sellers’ satisfaction of general representations and warranties and potential working capital adjustments and were issuable in six months, subject to deductions for any undisclosed matters that may arise during that period. On September 18, 2016, 721,445 common shares were issued after accounting for adjustments relating to undisclosed pre-acquisition invoices. On the date of the acquisition, refundable SR&ED credits receivable by Kairos related to the period preceding the acquisition are payable to CDRD Ventures Inc. (“CVI”), the former majority shareholder of Kairos. In the nine-month period ending September 30, 2016, a SR&ED receivable and corresponding payable to CVI of \$225 has been recorded in the interim consolidated financial statements.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### *Preliminary Purchase Price Allocation (unaudited)*

The acquisition is accounted for in accordance with ASC—805 Business Combinations—using the acquisition method. The acquisition method of accounting requires, among other things, that the assets acquired and liabilities assumed in a business combination be measured at their fair values at the closing date of the acquisition. For the purpose of these consolidated financial statements, the purchase consideration has been allocated on a preliminary basis based on management's best estimates of the fair values at the time these consolidated financial statements were prepared.

The Company is required to estimate the acquisition date fair value of the common shares issued. The fair value of the common shares issued was determined by the Company's board of directors, with input from management, and takes into account the most recently available valuation of common shares prepared by independent valuation specialists and the assessment of additional objective and subjective factors the Company believes are relevant and which may have changed between the date of the most recent valuation and the date of the acquisition.

The fair value of the previously held 19.99% equity interest is calculated as the implied per share fair value based upon the acquisition purchase price reduced by the lack of control discount associated with the 19.99% holding. Upon acquiring the remaining outstanding ownership interest in Kairos, the Company remeasured its original equity interest to its fair value and recognized a \$177 gain which is included in net loss for the period ended September 30, 2016.

The fair values of the consideration issued, assets acquired and liabilities assumed in the acquisition at March 18, 2016 are not yet final. The Company is continuing its review of the fair values and allocations during the measurement period, which shall not exceed one year from the acquisition date. The preliminary consideration and purchase price allocation, which are subject to final adjustments, are estimated as follows:

<b>Total Consideration:</b>	
4,350,017 Zymeworks common shares	\$22,973
Cash paid	1,733
Total consideration for 80.01% equity	24,706
Fair value of previously held 19.99% equity interest	4,264
Implied purchase price consideration for 100% equity	<u>\$28,970</u>
Net assets acquired:	
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 1,811
Receivables and other assets	546
Acquired IPR&D	20,700
Goodwill	12,016
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	(721)
Deferred tax liabilities	<u>(5,382)</u>
	<u>\$28,970</u>

The preliminary fair value of each IPR&D project is estimated using either the cost approach, market approach or combination of the two. The cost approach estimates the total value of the asset by reference to costs that would have been incurred in order to recreate the asset while the market approach analyses recent transactions involving comparable assets. Within these two approaches the following valuation methods were used: comparable public company cost multiple approach, expected investor return approach, and the guideline technology and collaboration transactions approach. IPR&D are required to be classified as indefinite-lived assets until they become definite lived assets upon the successful completion or the abandonment of the associated research and development effort. Accordingly, all IPR&D acquired is currently classified as indefinite-lived and is not currently being amortized.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Based on the fair values above, an amount of \$12,016 has been allocated to goodwill, which represents the excess of the purchase price over the fair values assigned to the net assets acquired. Goodwill is attributable to strategic, synergistic and other benefits expected to arise after the Company's acquisition of Kairos. Kairos' antibody-drug conjugate platform technology has a potential to develop new technologies and therapeutics, and the Company believes that additional platforms may emerge from the research synergies afforded by the business combination. Synergies are expected as both the Company and Kairos are underpinned by complementary antibody technologies and both have experience in designing and developing antibodies as product candidates. There is also future potential value expected to be derived from Kairos' existing collaboration agreements, and the potential to enter into new collaboration agreements. The Company will also benefit from the expertise, knowledge, experience and networks of the Kairos' management team, as well as the depth and breadth of its existing laboratory research team in the fields of chemistry and biologics.

The full amount of the value of goodwill has been assigned to the entire Company, since management has determined that the Company has only one reporting unit. The goodwill is not deductible for tax purposes, and is not amortized, but will be evaluated for impairment on an annual basis or more often if the Company identifies impairment indicators that would require earlier testing.

At the time of the acquisition, a deferred tax liability of \$5,382 was recorded for the excess of the fair value of the IPR&D over the corresponding tax bases, with a corresponding increase recorded to goodwill. The deferred tax liability relates to an indefinite lived asset. In addition, Zymeworks Inc. has unclaimed tax deductions for SR&ED tax credits with no expiry, for which the Company previously had provided a valuation allowance. Because of the indefinite life of these tax attributes, the deferred tax liability that arose from the preliminary purchase price allocation has been used as a source of potential income in determining that the realization of certain SR&ED tax credits is now more likely than not. Consequently, the Company reduced its valuation allowance by \$5,407 and recognized a corresponding deferred income tax recovery in the statement of loss.

The unaudited interim condensed consolidated statement of loss for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 includes \$(98) related to the equity in loss of Kairos for the period prior to March 18, 2016. Financial and operating results of Kairos are included in the Company's consolidated financial statements effective March 18, 2016.

### *Impairment evaluation for intangible assets and goodwill*

All IPR&D acquired in the Kairos business combination is classified as indefinite-lived and is not currently being amortized. IPR&D becomes definite-lived upon the completion or abandonment of the associated research and development efforts, and will be amortized from that time over an estimated useful life based on respective patent terms. The Company evaluates the recoverable amount of intangible assets on an annual basis and performs an annual evaluation of goodwill as of December 31 each year, unless there is an event or change in the business that could indicate impairment, in which case earlier testing is performed.

For the nine months ended September 30, 2016, the Company recorded an impairment charge of \$768 for the discontinuance of the Co-Development program with Oxford BioTherapeutics ("OBT Co-Development") due to the negative results received from scientific studies conducted during the period subsequent to the acquisition of Kairos. The corresponding deferred tax liability and deferred tax asset balances of \$198 were also reversed which resulted in deferred tax liability and offsetting deferred tax asset of \$5,127 related to IPR&D as of September 30, 2016. The following table summarizes the carrying value of IPR&D, net of impairment as at September 30, 2016:

Acquired IPR&D	\$20,700
Impairment	(768)
As of September 30, 2016	<u>\$19,932</u>

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Company further determined that the impairment of the intangible assets triggered an earlier evaluation of the carrying value of goodwill prior to the scheduled annual impairment testing date of December 31, 2016. As part of the evaluation of the recoverability of goodwill, the Company has identified only one reporting unit to which the total carrying amount of goodwill has been assigned. As at September 30, 2016, the fair value of the reporting unit exceeded the carrying value of the reporting unit, and as such the second step of the impairment test, which measures the amount of impairment charge if any, was not required. In estimating the fair value of the reporting unit, the Company considered the recent independent valuation of the Company, which used the market approach, guideline company transactions method. The guideline company transactions method uses recent merger and acquisition transaction data for acquisitions of target companies that are similar to the Company's reporting unit. No impairment charge on goodwill was recorded for the period ended September 30, 2016.

### 6. Property and Equipment

Property and equipment consists of the following:

	December 31,		September 30,
	2014	2015	2016 (unaudited)
Computer hardware	\$ 836	\$ 871	\$ 1,324
Furniture and fixture	113	167	283
Office equipment	63	149	188
Lab equipment	547	582	2,128
Leasehold improvements	256	367	702
Construction in progress	—	—	245
Property and equipment	1,815	2,136	4,870
Less accumulated depreciation and amortization	(1,312)	(1,355)	(1,672)
Property and equipment, net	<u>\$ 503</u>	<u>\$ 781</u>	<u>\$ 3,198</u>

During the year ended December 31, 2015, the Company entered into a new capital lease for office equipment of \$27 (2014 – \$14). Total assets under capital lease were \$37 and \$461 at December 31, 2015 and 2014, respectively; accumulated depreciation for these assets were \$6 and \$253 at December 31, 2015 and 2014, respectively. As of December 31, 2015, the total future minimum lease payments for the capital leases are \$62.

Depreciation expense on property and equipment for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2014 was \$216 and \$205, respectively, and \$330 and \$210 for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

### 7. Intangible Assets

Intangible assets consist of the following:

	December 31,		September 30,
	2014	2015	2016 (unaudited)
Computer software	\$ 517	\$ 664	\$ 693
Less accumulated depreciation and amortization	(385)	(520)	(597)
Intangible assets, net	<u>\$ 132</u>	<u>\$ 144</u>	<u>\$ 96</u>

Amortization expense on intangible assets for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2014 was \$214 and \$137 respectively and \$74 and \$160 for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

[Table of Contents](#)

**8. Current Liabilities**

Accounts payable and accrued expenses consisted of the following:

	<u>December 31,</u>		<u>September 30,</u>
	<u>2014</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2016</u>
Trade payables	\$1,764	\$2,112	\$ 2,649
Accrued research expenses	380	1,798	1,559
Payable to CVI for Kairos SR&ED receivable (note 5)	—	—	225
Employee compensation and vacation accruals	293	470	149
Accrued legal and professional fees	406	381	640
Other	27	30	144
<b>Total</b>	<b><u>\$2,870</u></b>	<b><u>\$4,791</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 5,366</u></b>

Other current liabilities consisted of the following:

	<u>December 31,</u>		<u>September 30,</u>
	<u>2014</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2016</u>
Fair value of liability classified share options (note 11i)	\$—	\$ 36	\$ 664
Income tax liability (note 15)	—	18	291
Current portion of lease liability	33	6	8
Lease inducements	—	—	20
<b>Total</b>	<b><u>\$ 33</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 60</u></b>	<b><u>\$ 983</u></b>

**9. Convertible debt**

	<u>Principal</u>	<u>Carrying value</u>
<b>December 31, 2013</b>	<b>\$ 6,299</b>	<b>\$ 8,198</b>
Accretion on convertible debt	—	293
Conversion into Class B common shares at maturity, June 16, 2014	(6,180)	(8,405)
Foreign currency adjustment	(119)	(86)
<b>December 31, 2014</b>	<b><u>\$ —</u></b>	<b><u>\$ —</u></b>

The convertible debentures matured on June 16, 2014 and bore interest at an annual rate of 8%, compounding annually until the date of maturity. Upon maturity, pursuant to the optional conversion terms on the convertible debentures, the debenture holder exercised its' option to convert the principal and accrued interest amount of \$8,405 into 4,359,532 Class B common shares of the Company reflecting the conversion price of C\$2.09 per Class B common share. The Class B common shares were subsequently converted into common shares on October 22, 2014 (note 11b).

**10. Warrant liabilities and long-term debt**

**a. Perceptive Debt and preferred share warrant liability**

On June 2, 2016, the Company entered into a Credit Agreement (the "Perceptive Debt") with Perceptive Credit Opportunities Fund L.P. and PCOF Phoenix II Fund L.P. (collectively, the "Lenders"). The total credit facility is for \$15.0 million consisting of Tranche A and Tranche B term loans for \$7.5 million each. The Tranche A term loan was made available to the Company on June 2, 2016, with total net proceeds received of \$6,953,

## [Table of Contents](#)

which excludes other administrative costs, on the transaction date. The Company will be eligible for the Tranche B term loan when it has achieved specific milestones relating to its clinical trials and future collaboration agreements.

The interest rate on the Tranche A term loan is LIBOR plus an applicable margin of 10% per annum with LIBOR to be a minimum of 1%. On September 30, 2016, the applicable interest rate was 11%. The Company will pay monthly interest payments only, up until June 2, 2018, after which monthly principal payments of \$225 will also commence. The remaining outstanding principal balance will be paid on June 2, 2020. The Company may settle the loan earlier, subject to certain penalty payments. Amounts borrowed under the Tranche A or Tranche B term loans and subsequently repaid or prepaid may not be reborrowed.

On June 2, 2016, pursuant to the terms of the Perceptive Debt, the Company also issued Warrant Certificates which entitled Perceptive Credit Opportunities Fund, L.P. to purchase up to 704,081 redeemable convertible Class A preferred shares of the Company at an exercise price of \$4.90 per share, with an expiry term of five years. These warrants are classified as liabilities and recorded at their estimated fair value as they contain a down-round provision and because the shares underlying the warrants may obligate the Company to transfer assets to the holders at a future date under certain circumstances, such as a deemed liquidation event. Changes in fair value are recorded in the consolidated statements of loss and comprehensive loss. At the completion of an IPO, all redeemable convertible Class A preferred share warrants will be converted into common share warrants.

The warrants were initially recorded at their fair value at issuance of \$3,770 and the residual balance of the original principal, \$3,730, has been recorded as long-term debt. The long-term debt will be accreted to its face value of \$7,500 over the four-year term of the Perceptive Debt. On August 3, 2016, the Warrant Certificates were assigned to Perceptive Credit Holdings, LP, an affiliate of the Lenders.

The Company recorded \$277 in interest expense relating to the outstanding principal under the Perceptive Debt, as well as \$198 in change in fair value of warrant liabilities during the nine months ended September 30, 2016.

In addition to the interest payable, the Company paid approximately \$845 of administrative, legal fees and other costs in connection with the Perceptive Debt, including expenses incurred prior to the transaction date. Of this amount, \$425 attributed to the warrants was expensed on the date of the transaction, while \$420 was allocated to long-term debt and will be amortized to interest expense over the term of the Perceptive Debt. For the nine months ended September 30, 2016, \$42 of deferred financing costs were amortized as interest expense.

The Credit Agreement contains various customary affirmative, negative and financial covenants, agreements, representations, warranties, borrowing conditions, and events of default. The Company was in compliance with all covenants at September 30, 2016 (unaudited).

	<u>December 31, 2014</u>	<u>December 31, 2015</u>	<u>September 30, 2016</u> <u>(unaudited)</u>
Long term debt at the time of financing	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 3,730
Accretion	—	—	380
Less: Deferred charges on debt financing, net of amortization	—	—	(378)
Long term debt, net of deferred charges	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 3,732</u>

## [Table of Contents](#)

In accordance with the loan agreement, the Company is obligated to make payments on the principal of the term loan as follows:

2018	\$1,575
2019	2,700
2020	3,225
Total	<u>\$7,500</u>

### **b. Common share warrant liability**

On October 22, 2014, the Company issued 280,000 common share purchase warrants to CTI Life Sciences Fund, L.P. in conjunction with a share exchange. Each warrant entitles the holder of the warrants to subscribe for and purchase, subject to the terms and restrictions of the agreement, one fully paid common share of the Company, at a purchase price of C\$4.86 per common share. The warrants expire upon the earlier of October 22, 2017 or certain transactions or events as defined under the agreement. These warrants were originally recorded in shareholders' equity. Upon the change of the functional currency from Canadian dollars to U.S. dollars effective January 1, 2016, these warrants were reclassified as liability awards at that date with a total fair value of \$268. The change in fair value of the warrants during the period they were classified as equity awards, \$65, is recorded as an adjustment in the shareholders' equity. Subsequently, these liability classified warrants are measured at fair value at each reporting period until exercised or cancelled, with changes in fair value recorded in the consolidated statements of loss and comprehensive loss. Upon the completion of a qualifying public listing of the Company's shares, the Company can accelerate the expiration date by giving written notice to the holder, which will give the holder 30 days to exercise the warrants.

### **c. Warrant liabilities include the following:**

	<u>December 31,</u> <u>2014</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>September 30,</u> <u>2016</u> <u>(unaudited)</u>
Preferred share warrant liabilities	\$—	\$—	\$ 3,968
Common share warrant liabilities	—	—	817
Total warrant liabilities	<u>\$—</u>	<u>\$—</u>	<u>\$ 4,785</u>

The following table presents the changes in fair value of the Company's preferred share warrants:

	<u>Liability at beginning</u> <u>of the period</u>	<u>Warrants issued in</u> <u>the period</u>	<u>Increase (decrease) in</u> <u>fair value of preferred</u> <u>share warrants</u>	<u>Liability at end</u> <u>of the period</u>
Nine months ended September 30, 2016 (unaudited)	\$ —	\$ 3,770	\$ 198	\$ 3,968
Year ended December 31, 2015	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
Year ended December 31, 2014	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —

The following table presents the changes in fair value of the Company's common share warrants:

	<u>Liability at beginning</u> <u>of the period</u>	<u>Reclassification to</u> <u>liabilities from equity</u>	<u>Increase (decrease) in</u> <u>fair value of common</u> <u>share warrants</u>	<u>Liability at end</u> <u>of the period</u>
Nine months ended September 30, 2016 (unaudited)	\$ —	\$ 268	\$ 549	\$ 817
Year ended December 31, 2015	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
Year ended December 31, 2014	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —

## 11. Redeemable Convertible Class A Preferred Shares, Special Shares and Shareholders' Equity

The number of shares and per share amounts are not presented in thousands.

### a. Authorized

The Company has an unlimited number of voting common shares without par value. On December 21, 2015, the Company's Articles of Incorporation were amended to include 15,306,123 Class A preferred shares of which none are issued and outstanding as at December 31, 2015.

### b. Share exchange

On October 22, 2014, 4,359,532 Class B common shares of the Company were exchanged for Class A common shares, on a one-for-one basis (the "Share Exchange"). Immediately following the Share Exchange, all of the issued and outstanding Class A common shares were redesignated as common shares of the Company.

### c. Equity financing

From January 1, 2014 to October 21, 2014, the Company completed multiple tranches of a private placement that began in 2013. The Company issued 2,411,496 common shares at a price of C\$4.86 per share for aggregate gross proceeds of \$10,677 (C\$11,720), bringing the aggregate gross proceeds of the private placement to \$16,079 (C\$17,364). The Company recorded \$28 in share issue costs related to this financing.

On October 22, 2014 and December 18, 2014, the Company completed private placements in which 4,909,091 common shares and 727,273 common shares were issued, respectively, at a price of C\$5.50 for aggregate gross proceeds of \$27,464 (C\$31,000). On December 24, 2014, the Company completed a private placement in which 1,652,893 common shares were issued at a price of C\$6.05 per share for aggregate gross proceeds of \$8,604 (C\$10,000). The Company recorded \$375 in share issue costs related to these financings.

On February 17, 2015, the Company completed a private placement issuance of 367,500 common shares at a price of C\$6.05 per share for gross proceeds of \$1,797 (C\$2,223). The Company recorded \$45 in share issuance costs related to the financing.

On January 7, 2016, the Company completed an equity financing in which 12,554,665 Class A Preferred Shares were issued at a price of \$4.90 per share for gross proceeds of \$61,518. The Company recorded \$2,658 in share issuance costs related to the financing.

### d. Redeemable Convertible Class A Preferred Shares

The Class A preferred shares accrue dividends at 8% per annum non-cumulative, payable only when, and if, declared by the Board of Directors of the Company (the "Board"). In addition, holders of the Class A preferred shares will be entitled to receive, when and as declared by the Board, dividends in an amount equal to any dividend per common share declared by the Board on the common shares multiplied by the number of common shares that would be issued in exchange for the Class A preferred shares upon conversion.

**Optional conversion:** Each Class A preferred share is convertible at any time at the option of the holders into common shares, which is determined by dividing the Class A original issue price of \$4.90 per share by the Class A conversion price in effect at the time of the conversion.

**Mandatory conversion:** Upon either a) the closing of the sale of common shares to the public at a price of at least 1.4 times the Class A original issue price of \$4.90 per share in a firm-commitment underwritten public offering resulting in at least \$50 million of gross proceeds, or b) the date and time, or the occurrence of an event,

## Table of Contents

specified by vote or written consent of the holders of at least a majority of the then outstanding Class A Preferred Share, all outstanding Class A preferred shares will be automatically converted into common shares at the effective conversion rate. However, in the event the common share public issuance price is less than 1.5 times the Class A original issue price of \$4.90 per share, then immediately prior to, and contingent upon such conversion, the Class A conversion price will be automatically adjusted to equal the lesser of (a) the quotient obtained by dividing the per share price in such public offering by 1.5 and (b) the Class A conversion price in effect as of immediately prior to such public offering.

Upon the liquidation, dissolution, reorganization or winding-up of the Company, holders of Class A preferred shares are entitled to receive, before any distribution or payment on the common shares, an amount equal to the greater of:

- (i) a) if such event occurs prior to January 7, 2017, 1.25 times the Class A original issue price of \$4.90 per share,  
b) if such event occurs after January 7, 2017, 1.5 times the Class A original issue price of \$4.90 per share,  
under both cases plus any dividends declared but unpaid.
- (ii) amount per share payable had all Class A preferred shares been converted into common shares in accordance with the conversion mechanism

The preferences over common shareholders cease to exist upon conversion of preferred shares into common shares.

Each preferred shareholder is entitled to the number of votes that such shareholder would be entitled to if such preferred shares were converted to common shares.

The Company assessed the Class A preferred shares for any beneficial conversion features or embedded derivatives, including the conversion option, that would require bifurcation from the applicable series of preferred shares and receive separate accounting treatment. On the date of the issuance of preferred shares, the fair value of the common shares into which the Class A preferred shares were convertible was less than the effective conversion price of such shares and, as such, there was no intrinsic value of the conversion option on the commitment date. There is a contingent beneficial conversion feature that would become applicable if an initial public offering is completed at an issue price in excess of the conversion price within one year of the date the preferred shares were issued. The Company classifies its preferred shares outside of permanent equity as the redemption of such shares is not solely under the control of the Company.

### e. Special Shares

The special shares were issued in 2009, 2010 and 2011 in conjunction with the issuance of convertible debentures. The special shares were redeemed and cancelled on June 16, 2014, in conjunction with the conversion of the convertible debentures into Class B common shares (note 9). The special shares were redeemable at the option of the special shareholders at an amount equal to the aggregate issue price of the special shares being redeemed. The special shares had certain voting rights and preferential liquidation rights. The Company classified its special shares outside of permanent equity as the redemption of such shares was not solely under the control of the Company.

### f. Special purchase warrant

The Special Purchase Warrant (the "Warrant") was issued in conjunction with convertible debentures, and entitled the holder to subscribe for and purchase a number of securities equal to 25% of the securities issued as a result of the conversion of the convertible debentures in connection with certain qualifying transactions. As no qualifying transactions were completed, the Warrant expired on June 16, 2014, in conjunction with the conversion of the convertible debentures into Class B common shares (note 9).

## [Table of Contents](#)

### g. Common Share Purchase Warrant

On October 22, 2014, the Company issued 280,000 common share purchase warrants. The warrants were issued in conjunction with the Share Exchange (note 11b). Each warrant entitles the holder of the warrants to subscribe for and purchase, subject to the terms and restrictions of the agreement, one fully paid common share of the Company, at a purchase price of C\$4.86 per common share. The warrants expire upon the earlier of October 22, 2017 or certain transactions or events as defined under the agreement. The estimated fair value of the warrants was determined using the Black-Scholes option pricing model with the following assumptions:

Dividend yield	0%
Expected volatility	52.27%
Risk-free interest rate	0.57%

The warrants had a fair value of \$333 (C\$374) on issuance.

### h. Redeemable Convertible Class A Preferred Shares Warrant

Class A Preferred Share Warrants were issued on June 2, 2016, pursuant to the terms of the Perceptive Debt, which entitled Perceptive Credit Opportunities Fund, L.P. to purchase up to 704,081 redeemable convertible Class A preferred shares of the Company at an exercise price of \$4.90 per share, with an expiry term of five years (note 10 a). The estimated fair value of the warrants was determined using the Black-Scholes option pricing model with the following assumptions:

Dividend yield	0%
Expected volatility	47.37%
Risk-free interest rate	1.14%

The warrants had a fair value of \$3,770 on issuance.

### i. Stock-based compensation

On July 14, 2006, the shareholders approved an employee stock option plan (the "Stock Option Plan"). The Stock Option Plan provides for the granting of options to directors, officers, employees and consultants. Options to purchase common shares may be granted at an exercise price of each option equal to the last private issuance of common shares immediately preceding the date of the grant. The total number of options outstanding is not to exceed 20% of the issued common shares of the Company.

Options granted under the Stock Option Plan are exercisable at various dates over their ten-year life. New common shares are issued when options are exercised.

For options issued to employees, the shares available for issuance under the Stock Option Plan vest over 4 years. Shares available for issuance under the Stock Option Plan issued to directors vest over 3 years, and shares available for issuance under the Stock Option Plan issued to consultants and members of the Scientific Advisory Board vest immediately upon issuance.

The exercise price of the Company's stock options are denominated in Canadian dollars. The U.S. dollar amounts have been translated using the period end rate or the average rate for the period, as applicable, and have been provided for information purposes.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The following table summarizes information pertaining to the Company's stock options outstanding:

	<u>Number of Options</u>	<u>Weighted- Average Exercise Price (C\$)</u>	<u>Weighted- Average Exercise Price (US\$)</u>	<u>Weighted- Average Contractual Term (years)</u>	<u>Aggregate intrinsic value (C\$)</u>	<u>Aggregate intrinsic value (US\$)</u>
Outstanding, December 31, 2013	1,528,395	2.26	2.12	6.80	3,980	3,742
Granted	394,000	4.86	4.40			
Expired	(49,461)	2.00	1.81			
Exercised	(29,023)	2.07	1.87			
Forfeited	(10,538)	2.79	2.53			
Outstanding, December 31, 2014	1,833,373	2.82	2.43	6.54	5,917	5,100
Granted	909,500	6.05	4.73			
Expired	(14,471)	2.43	1.90			
Exercised	(81,036)	2.00	1.56			
Forfeited	(17,736)	5.09	3.98			
Outstanding, December 31, 2015	2,629,630	3.95	2.85	6.79	3,826	2,764
Granted (unaudited)	1,750,000	5.07	3.84			
Expired (unaudited)	(15,717)	2.80	2.12			
Exercised (unaudited)	(10,833)	2.07	1.57			
Forfeited (unaudited)	(139,310)	5.53	4.18			
Outstanding, September 30, 2016 (unaudited)	4,213,770	4.37	3.33	7.35	16,970	12,938
December 31, 2015:						
Exercisable	1,625,503	2.95	2.13			
Vested and expected to vest	2,580,176	3.92	2.83			
September 30, 2016:						
Exercisable (unaudited)	2,003,574	3.46	2.64			
Vested and expected to vest (unaudited)	4,101,743	4.35	3.32			

The Company received cash of \$17 (C\$22) (September 30, 2015 – \$117 (C\$147)), resulting from stock options exercised. The following table summarizes the amounts received by the Company from stock options exercised:

	<u>Year ended December 31,</u>		<u>Nine months ended September 30, 2016 (unaudited)</u>
	<u>2014</u>	<u>2015</u>	
Amount received from stock options exercised	\$ 55 (C\$ 60)	\$ 128 (C\$ 162)	\$ 17 (C\$ 22)

## Table of Contents

The following table summarizes information pertaining to the Company's stock options outstanding at December 31, 2015 and September 30, 2016:

Exercise price (C\$)	As of December 31, 2015						
	Options outstanding				Options exercisable		
	Number of options outstanding	Weighted-average remaining contractual life (years)	Weighted-average exercise price (C\$)	Weighted-average exercise price (US\$)	Number of options exercisable	Weighted-average exercise price (C\$)	Weighted-average exercise price (US\$)
1.50	40,000	1.4	1.50	1.08	40,000	1.50	1.08
1.99	707,442	3.7	1.99	1.44	707,442	1.99	1.44
2.25	273,500	5.9	2.25	1.63	273,500	2.25	1.63
3.04	321,188	7.0	3.04	2.20	242,682	3.04	2.20
4.86	386,000	8.2	4.86	3.51	184,555	4.86	3.51
6.05	901,500	9.1	6.05	4.37	177,324	6.05	4.37
<b>1.50 to 6.05</b>	<b>2,629,630</b>	<b>6.8</b>	<b>3.95</b>	<b>2.8</b>	<b>1,625,503</b>	<b>2.95</b>	<b>2.13</b>

Exercise price (C\$)	As of September 30, 2016 (unaudited)						
	Options outstanding				Options exercisable		
	Number of options outstanding	Weighted-average remaining contractual life (years)	Weighted-average exercise price (C\$)	Weighted-average exercise price (US\$)	Number of options exercisable	Weighted-average exercise price (C\$)	Weighted-average exercise price (US\$)
1.50	40,000	0.67	1.50	1.14	40,000	1.50	1.14
1.99	697,442	2.91	1.99	1.52	697,442	1.99	1.52
2.25	263,500	5.20	2.25	1.72	263,500	2.25	1.72
3.04	305,478	6.22	3.04	2.32	289,929	3.04	2.32
4.86	364,123	7.42	4.86	3.71	248,788	4.86	3.71
5.07	1,735,000	9.34	5.07	3.87	—	—	—
6.05	808,227	8.34	6.05	4.61	463,915	6.05	4.61
<b>1.50 to 7.37</b>	<b>4,213,770</b>	<b>7.35</b>	<b>4.37</b>	<b>3.33</b>	<b>2,003,574</b>	<b>3.46</b>	<b>2.64</b>

The stock options expire at various dates from February 4, 2017 to April 1, 2026.

A summary of the Company's non-vested stock option activity and related information for the year ended December 31, 2015 and for the nine months ended September 30, 2016 is as follows:

	Number of options	Weighted-average fair value price (C\$)	Fair value (C\$)	Weighted-average fair value price (US\$)
Non-vested, January 1, 2015	609,786	2.11	1,286	1.82
Options granted	909,500	2.79	2,538	2.18
Options vested	(497,429)	2.24	(1,116)	1.75
Options forfeited and cancelled	(17,736)	2.43	(43)	1.90
Non-vested, December 31, 2015	1,004,121	2.65	2,665	1.91
Options granted (unaudited)	1,750,000	2.30	4,018	1.74
Options vested (unaudited)	(404,621)	2.53	(1,025)	1.91
Options forfeited and cancelled (unaudited)	(139,310)	2.65	(369)	2.00
Non-vested, September 30, 2016 (unaudited)	2,210,190	2.39	5,289	1.82

## [Table of Contents](#)

The estimated fair value of options granted to officers, directors, employees and consultants is amortized over the vesting period. Compensation expense is recorded in research and development expenses and general and administration expenses as follows:

The following stock-based compensation amounts were recognized for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015 and the nine-month periods ended September 30, 2015 and 2016. Compensation expense is recorded in research and development expenses and general and administration expenses as follows:

	Year Ended December 31,		Nine months ended September 30,	
	2014	2015	2015 (unaudited)	2016 (unaudited)
Research and development	\$ 363	\$ 924	\$ 763	\$ 1,388
General and administrative	211	465	372	342
Total	\$ 574	\$ 1,389	\$ 1,135	\$ 1,730

For the year ended December 31, 2015, \$1,389 of share based compensation expense included \$1,353 of expense that was recorded in contributed surplus and \$36 of expense that was recorded in the liability classified stock options account.

For the nine months ended September 30, 2016, \$1,347 of share-based compensation expense was recorded in additional paid-in capital and the remaining balance was recorded in liability classified stock options account within the Other current liabilities.

The following table presents the changes in fair value of the liability classified stock options:

	Liability at beginning of the period	Reclassification to liabilities from equity	Increase (decrease) in fair value of liability classified stock options	Foreign currency (gain)	Liability at end of the period
Nine months ended September 30, 2016 (unaudited)	\$ 36	\$ 251	\$ 383	(6)	\$ 664
Year ended December 31, 2015	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 36	—	\$ —
Year ended December 31, 2014	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	—	\$ —

The estimated fair value of the stock options granted was determined using the Black-Scholes option pricing model with the following weighted-average assumptions:

	Year ended December 31,		Nine months ended September 30	
	2014	2015	2015 (unaudited)	2016 (unaudited)
Dividend yield	0%	0%	0%	0%
Expected volatility	52.2%	48.3%	48.4%	47.3%
Risk-free interest rate	2.24%	1.50%	1.52%	1.12%
Expected average life of options	5.8 years	5.75 years	5.70 years	5.91 years

**Expected Volatility**—Volatility is a measure of the amount by which a financial variable such as a share price has fluctuated (historical volatility) or is expected to fluctuate (expected volatility) during a period. As the Company does not yet have sufficient history of its own volatility, the Company has identified several public entities of similar complexity and stage of development and calculates historical volatility using the volatility of these companies.

**Risk-Free Interest Rate**—This rate is from the Government of Canada marketable bonds for the month prior to each option grant during the year, having a term that most closely resembles the expected life of the option.

## [Table of Contents](#)

**Expected Term**—This is the period of time that the options granted are expected to remain unexercised. Options granted have a maximum term of ten years. The Company estimates the expected life of the option term to be six years. The Company uses the simplified method to calculate the average expected term, which represents the average of the vesting period and the contractual term.

**Expected Forfeiture Rate**—The forfeiture rate is the estimated percentage of options granted that is expected to be forfeited or cancelled on an annual basis before becoming fully vested. The Company estimates the forfeiture rate based on turnover data with further consideration given to the class of the employees to whom the options were granted.

**Share Fair Value**—The Company grants stock options at exercise prices not less than the fair value of its common shares as determined by the board of directors, with input from management. Management estimates the fair value of its common shares based on a number of objective and subjective factors, including the most recently available valuation of common shares prepared by independent valuation specialists, external market considerations affecting the biotechnology industry and the historic prices at which the Company sold common shares.

The weighted-average Black-Scholes option pricing assumptions for liability classified stock options outstanding at December 31, 2015 and September 30, 2016 (December 31, 2014: n/a) are as follows:

	<u>December 31, 2015</u>	<u>September 30, 2016 (unaudited)</u>
Dividend yield	0%	0%
Expected volatility	47.7%	47.2%
Risk-free interest rate	0.99%	1.06%
Expected average option term	5.91 years	5.91 years
Number of liability classified share options outstanding	65,000	96,251

The estimated fair value of the equity instrument issued to non-employees are recorded on the earlier of the performance commitment date or the date the services required are completed. For the year ended December 31, 2015, the Company recorded \$ nil (2014 – \$21) stock-based compensation expense for non-employees (for the nine-month periods ended September 30, 2016 and 2015 – nil).

The total intrinsic value of options exercised during the year ended December 31, 2015 and 2014 was C\$328 and C\$81, respectively. At December 31, 2015 and 2014, the unamortized compensation expense related to unvested options was \$798 (C\$1,108) and \$448 (C\$520), respectively. The remaining unamortized compensation expense as of December 31, 2015 will be recognized over the a weighted-average period of 1.90 years.

The total intrinsic value of options exercised during the periods ended September 30, 2016 and 2015 was C\$51 and C\$302, respectively. At September 30, 2016 and 2015, the unamortized compensation expense related to unvested options was \$2,087 (C\$2,747) and \$967 (C\$1,295), respectively. The remaining unamortized compensation expense will be recognized over the a weighted-average period of 2.05 years.

## 12. Government grants and credits

	<u>Year Ended December 31,</u>		<u>Nine months ended September 30,</u>	
	<u>2014</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2015 (unaudited)</u>	<u>2016 (unaudited)</u>
Federal Research Grants (IRAP)	\$ —	\$—	\$ —	\$ —
SR&ED credits, net	2,149	251	—	—
Total	<u>\$2,149</u>	<u>\$251</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Company accrued refundable investment tax credits receivable at December 31, 2015 of \$251 (2014 – \$2,149), which have been recorded as a reduction of research and development expenses in the statement of loss and comprehensive loss. The SR&ED receivable of \$759 includes \$502 relating to the investment tax credit for 2014 that was not received until January 2016. Although the Company has used its best judgment and understanding of the related income tax legislation in determining its claims, it is possible the amounts could increase or decrease materially in the near term, as the Canada Revenue Agency (“CRA”) reserves the right to review and audit the investment tax credit claims.

During the current year the Company did not recognize any grants (2014 – nil) under the National Research Council of Canada’s Industrial Research Assistance Program (“IRAP”). Research grants were recorded as a reduction in research and development expenses and capital asset cost base based on the underlying expenditures. The IRAP funding agreement contains contingency clauses which could require repayment of funding if certain conditions are not met. The Company is in compliance with these conditions.

### **13. Research Collaboration and Licensing Agreements**

The Company has entered into a number of collaboration and licensing agreements including some under which it may receive non-refundable upfront payments for licenses to therapeutic platforms. When the Company determines that the license and the related therapeutic platform have stand-alone value to the licensee, these items are considered a unit of accounting and consideration allocated to this unit of accounting is recognized upon delivery of the therapeutic platform. When research services related to the transfer of the technical information are required, then the license, applicable research services, and therapeutic platform are considered a unit of accounting and the Company generally recognizes revenue from the applicable upfront payments ratably over the estimated period the research services are provided.

The collaborations may also include other research services and contractual milestone payments, which relate to the achievement of pre-specified research, development, regulatory and commercial milestones. The process of successfully achieving the criteria for the milestone payments is highly uncertain. Consequently, there is a significant risk that the Company may not earn all of the milestone payments from each of its strategic partners.

Research and development milestones in the Company’s collaboration agreements may include some, but not necessarily all, of the following types of events:

- completion of preclinical research and development work leading to selection of product candidates;
- initiation of Phase 1, Phase 2 and Phase 3 clinical trials; and
- achievement of certain other technical, scientific or development criteria.

Regulatory milestone payments may include the following types of events:

- filing of regulatory applications for marketing approval in the United States, Europe or Japan, including Investigational New Drug (“IND”) applications and Biologics License Application (“BLA”); and
- marketing approval in major markets, such as the United States, Europe or Japan.

Commercial milestone payments in the Company’s agreements may include payments triggered by annual product sales that achieve pre-specified thresholds and the achievement of these commercial milestones may solely depend upon performance of the collaborator or licensee.

Each contingent and milestone payment is evaluated to determine whether it is substantive and at risk to both parties. The Company recognizes any payment that is contingent upon the achievement of a substantive milestone entirely in the period in which the milestone is achieved assuming collection is reasonably assured. Any revenue from non-substantive milestones is subject to an allocation of arrangement consideration and is

## [Table of Contents](#)

recognized over the remaining period of the performance obligations, if any, relating to the arrangement. If there are no remaining performance obligations under the arrangement at the time the contingent payment is triggered, the contingent payment is recognized as revenue in full upon the triggering event occurring.

### **Strategic Partnership Revenue**

The following table presents summarized revenue recognized from the Company's strategic partnerships.

	Year ended December 31,		Nine months ended September 30,	
	2014	2015	2015	2016 (unaudited)
<b>Merck:</b>				
Research funding payments	\$ —	\$ 857	\$ 446	\$ 777
Milestone revenue	—	—	—	—
<b>Lilly:</b>				
Recognition of upfront payments	970	—	—	—
Milestone revenue	—	1,025	—	—
Research support payments	700	263	260	—
<b>Celgene:</b>				
Recognition of upfront payments	—	7,515	7,515	—
<b>GSK:</b>				
Technology access fee	—	—	—	6,000
<b>Daiichi:</b>				
Technology access fee	—	—	—	2,000
	<u>\$1,670</u>	<u>\$9,660</u>	<u>\$8,221</u>	<u>\$8,777</u>

### **Research and License Agreement with Merck Sharp & Dohme Research Ltd. ("Merck")**

On August 22, 2011, the Company entered into a Research and License Agreement with Merck providing Merck a worldwide license to develop and commercialize novel bispecific antibodies generated through use of the Company's Azymetric platform toward certain exclusive therapeutic targets. Both companies will collaborate to advance the therapeutic platforms, with Merck working to progress the bispecific therapeutic antibody candidates through clinical development and commercialization. No joint development activities to advance the therapeutic platforms have occurred since inception and Merck no longer has a right to such joint activities. In 2013, Merck was also provided with a limited, non-exclusive license to EFECT, to be used together with the Azymetric platform for developing products.

On December 3, 2014, the Company and Merck jointly amended the agreement, including amending certain terms and exclusivities contained therein. Under the terms of the amended agreement, the Company receives funding for certain internal and external research costs incurred in the project. Additionally, the amendment removed a \$2.0 million research milestone from the total milestones the Company would be eligible to receive over the life of the agreement. The new research funding terms were priced at market rate, and the Company concluded that the original agreement was not materially modified. Accordingly, the amendments did not impact the determination of units of accounting or the allocation of the arrangement consideration.

Over the life of the agreement, the Company is eligible to receive payments up to \$190.75 million, comprised of a \$1.25 million upfront payment, \$3.5 million for research phase successes, up to \$6.0 million for completion of IND-enabling studies, up to \$66.0 million for development milestones and up to \$114.0 million for commercial milestones. In addition, the Company is eligible to receive tiered royalty payments on sales of products. Merck will have exclusive worldwide commercialization rights to products derived from the agreement. The Company determined that the research, development and commercial milestones do not constitute milestones and will not be accounted for under the milestone method of revenue recognition. The events and conditions resulting in these payments do not meet the definition of a milestone because the achievement of these events solely depends on Merck's performance.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Upon the execution of the agreement, the Company received a one-time, non-refundable upfront payment of \$1.25 million. The Company's substantive performance obligations under the agreement include providing the license and the transfer of relevant technical information and therapeutic platform to Merck. In accordance with ASC 605-25, the Company identified the following deliverables at the inception of the Merck agreement: (1) the research license, (2) the commercial license, (3) the transfer of the Company's platform technology (Azymetric) (4) research services and technical assistance in connection with the transfer of platform technology to Merck, and (5) research activities to be performed on behalf of Merck. The Company determined that the licenses did not have stand-alone value without the Company's platform technology and its technical assistance during the transfer of the technology. Accordingly, the deliverables (1) through (4) were considered as a single unit of accounting and the upfront payment of \$1.25 million has been allocated to this unit of accounting. The upfront payment was recorded as deferred revenue and recognized into revenue on a straight-line basis from October 1, 2011 through June 30, 2012, the period over which the Company performed the procedures for transferring the Company's know-how and technology and related technical assistance during the transfer process. The research activities to be performed on behalf of Merck after the transfer of the technology are also determined to have stand-alone value as Merck or another third party could provide these services without the Company's assistance. The revenue from this deliverable is recognized upon performance of such activities at rates consistent with prevailing market rates.

The consideration otherwise allocable to delivered units is limited to the amount that is not contingent on the delivery of additional items or fulfillment of other performance conditions. Consequently, the arrangement consideration related to the research activities to be performed on behalf of Merck after the transfer of the technology was excluded from the allocation arrangement consideration because the consideration and performance are contingent upon Merck requesting performance of the services and these services are priced at an estimated fair value.

The upfront payment of \$1.25 million was allocated to the research license deliverable, commercial license deliverable, technology platform deliverable and research services and technical assistance provided during the technology transfer deliverable using the relative estimated selling price method. The Company estimated the best estimate of selling price of the licenses and technology platform based on comparable license and collaboration arrangements. The best estimate of selling price for the other deliverables was estimated using internal estimates of cost to perform the specific services plus a normal profit margin for providing the services.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for Merck and the Company including the right for Merck to terminate the agreement in its sole discretion with advance notice to the Company. The agreement will terminate on the later of: (a) the expiry of the last patent covering a Merck licensed product excluding methods of making the product; or (b) the expiry of the royalty payment obligations by Merck. During the research term, the agreement will terminate if the antibodies do not achieve all the research milestones or if Merck elects to not further develop the antibodies after the research term.

The Company received and recorded non-refundable milestone payments from Merck in the amounts of \$2.0 million and \$1.5 million on September 20, 2012 and April 22, 2013, respectively. These milestone payments were received upon the achievement of certain development activities during the course of the research program and were recorded as revenue upon achievement of the milestone as the Company had no remaining performance obligations under the arrangement. No additional milestone payments or royalties have been received to date.

During the year ended December 31, 2015, the Company recorded \$857 (December 31, 2014 – \$nil) in research support payments from Merck, under the terms of the amended agreement. During the nine months ended September 30, 2016, the Company recorded \$777 in research support payments from Merck (September 30, 2015 – \$446).

***Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Eli Lilly and Company (“Lilly”)***

On December 17, 2013, the Company entered into a Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Lilly to develop novel bispecific antibody therapeutics using the Company’s proprietary Azymetric platform. The Company will apply its Azymetric platform in combination with Lilly’s proprietary targets to create novel bispecific antibodies which Lilly will have the right to develop and commercialize worldwide.

Over the life of the agreement, the Company will receive funding for internal and external research costs incurred on behalf of Lilly on the project, and is eligible to receive potential milestone payments for each product, comprised of \$1.0 million for research phase success, \$2.0 million for IND submission, \$8.0 million for development milestones and up to \$40.0 million for commercial milestones. In addition, the Company is eligible to receive tiered royalty payments on the sale of products. Lilly will have exclusive worldwide commercialization rights to products derived from the collaboration. The Company determined that the research milestone is substantive, while development and commercial milestones do not constitute milestones and will not be accounted for under the milestone method of revenue recognition. The events and conditions resulting in these payments do not meet the definition of a milestone because the achievement of these events solely depends on Lilly’s performance.

Upon the execution of the agreement, the Company received a one-time, non-refundable upfront payment of \$1.0 million. In accordance with ASC 605-25, the Company identified the following deliverables at the inception of the Lilly agreement: (1) the research license, (2) the commercial license, (3) the transfer of the Company’s platform technology (Azymetric), (4) the research services and technical assistance to be provided by the Company in connection with the transfer of intellectual property to Lilly, and (5) research activities to be performed on behalf of Lilly. The Company determined that the licenses did not have stand-alone value without the Company’s platform technology and its technical assistance during the transfer of the technology. Accordingly, the deliverables (1) through (4) were considered as a single unit of accounting and the upfront payment of \$1.0 million has been allocated to this unit of accounting. The payment was recorded as deferred revenue and recognized into revenue on a straight-line basis from December 31, 2013 to June 30, 2014, the period over which the Company performed the procedures for transferring the Company’s know-how and technology and related technical assistance during the transfer process. The research activities to be performed on behalf of Lilly after the transfer of the technology are also determined to have stand-alone value as Lilly or another third party could provide these services without the Company’s assistance. The revenue from this deliverable is recognized upon performance of such activities at rates consistent with prevailing market rates.

The consideration otherwise allocable to delivered units is limited to the amount that is not contingent on the delivery of additional items or fulfillment of other performance conditions. Consequently, the arrangement consideration related to the research activities to be performed on behalf of Lilly after the transfer of the technology was excluded from the allocation arrangement consideration because the consideration and performance are contingent upon Lilly requesting performance of the services and these services are priced at an estimated fair value.

The upfront payment of \$1.0 million was allocated to the research license deliverable, commercial license deliverable, technology platform deliverable and research services and technical assistance provided during the technology transfer deliverable using the relative estimated selling price method. The Company estimated the best estimate of selling price of the licenses and technology platform based on comparable license and collaboration arrangements. The best estimate of selling price for the other deliverables was estimated using internal estimates of cost to perform the specific services plus a normal profit margin for providing the services.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for Lilly and the Company including the right for Lilly to terminate the agreement in its sole discretion with advance notice to us. The agreement will terminate on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis upon the later of the product being no longer covered by certain patents related to the Lilly licensed product, or 10 years after the first commercial sale of the Lilly licensed product in such a country.

## [Table of Contents](#)

On December 11, 2015, the Company recorded non-refundable substantive milestone revenue from Lilly in the amount of \$1.0 million upon the achievement of certain research activities during the course of the research program.

During the year ended December 31, 2015, the Company recorded \$263 (December 31, 2014 – \$700) in research support revenue from Lilly. During the nine months ended September 30, 2016, the Company recorded \$nil in research support payments from Lilly (September 30, 2015 – \$260).

### ***Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Lilly***

On October 22, 2014, the Company entered into a second Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Lilly to develop novel bispecific antibody therapeutics using the Company's proprietary Azymetric platform. This agreement did not alter or amend the initial agreement entered into on December 17, 2013. Under the terms of this agreement, the Company will apply its Azymetric platform in combination with Lilly's proprietary targets to create novel bispecific antibodies which Lilly will develop and commercialize. Each of the two agreements with Lilly were negotiated independently and the deliverables covered by the respective contracts are unrelated to one another as they cover different product candidates. Accordingly, the second Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Lilly has been accounted for as a new arrangement.

The Company is eligible to receive potential milestone payments totaling up to \$375.0 million, comprised of up to \$6.0 million for research success milestone, up to \$24.0 million for IND submission milestones, up to \$60.0 million for development milestones and up to \$285.0 million for commercial milestones. In addition, the Company is eligible to receive tiered royalty payments on the sale of products. Lilly will have exclusive worldwide commercialization rights to products derived from the collaboration. No license, research, development and commercial milestones or royalty payments have been received to date. The Company determined that research milestones are substantive while development and commercial milestones do not constitute milestones and will not be accounted for under the milestone method of revenue recognition. The events and conditions resulting in these payments do not meet the definition of a milestone because the achievement of these events solely depends on Lilly's performance.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for Lilly and us with advance notice to us, in addition to (i) both Lilly and us have certain rights to terminate on a program by program basis due to scientific failure, (ii) Lilly can terminate the agreement on a target pair by target pair basis in its sole discretion after the payment of the initial license fee for such a target pair, (iii) Lilly can terminate the agreement or specific target pairs due to an incurable material breach by us, and under specific conditions, Lilly shall have certain rights to continue the research, development and commercialization of products with their license payment, milestone and royalty obligations reduced by 50% and (iv) Lilly shall have the right to terminate the agreement or specific target pairs in the event of us undergoing a change of control, while retaining certain rights. If the affected research programs have not completed specific research stages, Lilly's obligations to the license payments, milestones and royalties shall be reduced in a tiered fashion ranging from 25-75%

No research, development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date.

### ***Licensing and Collaboration Agreement with Celgene Corporation & Celgene Alpine Investment Co. LLC ("Celgene")***

On December 23, 2014, the Company entered into an agreement with Celgene to develop novel bispecific antibody therapeutics using the Company's proprietary Azymetric platform. The Company will apply its Azymetric platform in combination with Celgene's proprietary targets to create novel bispecific antibodies for which Celgene has an option to develop and commercialize a certain number of products ("Commercial License Option").

## [Table of Contents](#)

Over the life of the agreement, the Company is eligible to receive potential milestone payments totaling up to \$164.0 million per each therapeutic candidate, comprised of a payment of \$7.5 million upon Celgene exercising a Commercial License Option, up to \$101.5 million for development milestones and up to \$55.0 million for commercial milestones. In addition, the Company is eligible to receive tiered royalties calculated upon the global net sales of the resulting products. Celgene will have exclusive worldwide commercialization rights to products derived from the agreement if Celgene elects to exercise a Commercial License Option for each product. The Company determined that research, development and commercial milestones do not constitute milestones and will not be accounted for under the milestone method of revenue recognition. The events and conditions resulting in these payments do not meet the definition of a milestone because the achievement of these events solely depends on Celgene's performance.

Upon the execution of the Agreement, the Company received a one-time, non-refundable payment of \$8.0 million. In accordance with ASC 605-25, the Company identified the following deliverables at the inception of the Celgene agreement: (1) the non-exclusive research license, (2) the transfer of the Company's platform technology (Azymetric) and relevant know-how, and (3) technical assistance if required by Celgene in connection with the transfer of technology. The Company determined that the research license did not have stand-alone value without the Company's platform technology and its technical assistance during the transfer of the technology. The Company concluded that, at the inception of the agreement, Celgene's option to obtain a Commercial License did not represent a deliverable because it is a substantive option and does not contain a significant or incremental discount.

The deliverables are considered a single unit of accounting and the upfront payment of \$8.0 million has been allocated to this unit of accounting. The upfront payment was recognized as revenue ratably over the six-month period ended June 30, 2015, the period during which the Company transferred its technical know-how and technology to Celgene.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for Celgene and us including the right of Celgene to terminate the agreement in its entirety or on a product-by-product basis in its sole discretion with advance notice to us. The agreement will terminate on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis upon the later of the expiration of the last-expiring patent related to the Celgene licensed product, or 10 years after the first commercial sale of the Celgene licensed product in such a country. If Celgene does not exercise its option for the commercial license, the agreement will terminate on a product-by-product basis for which the option was not exercised.

No development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date.

### ***Collaboration and License Agreement with GlaxoSmithKline Intellectual Property Development Ltd. ("GSK")***

On December 1, 2015, the Company entered into a Collaboration and License Agreement with GSK for the research, development, and commercialization of novel Fc-engineered monoclonal and bispecific antibody therapeutics, which have been optimized for specific therapeutic effects. The Company and GSK will collaborate to further develop the Company's Effector Function Enhancement and Control Technology (EFECT) platform through the design, engineering, and testing of novel engineered Fc domains tailored to induce specific antibody-mediated immune responses.

At the conclusion of the research collaboration, both GSK and the Company will have the right to develop and commercialize monoclonal and bispecific antibody candidates that incorporate the Company's optimized immune-modulating Fc domains.

Under the terms of the agreement, GSK will have the right to develop a minimum of four products across multiple disease areas, and the Company will be eligible to receive research, development, and commercial

milestones of up to \$110.0 million for each product. In addition, the Company is eligible to receive tiered sales royalties. Under the terms of the agreement, each party is liable for their own internal and external research costs incurred in the project. Furthermore, the Company will have the right to develop up to four products with the intellectual property arising from the collaboration without any royalty or milestone payment to GSK. The Company determined that research, development and commercial milestones under the agreement do not constitute milestones and will not be accounted for under the milestone method of revenue recognition. The events and conditions resulting in these payments do not meet the definition of a milestone because the achievement of these events solely depends on GSK's performance.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for GSK and us including the right for GSK to terminate the agreement in its sole discretion with advance notice to us, after the research period has advanced beyond a specified stage, and allowing the parties to terminate the agreement by mutual agreement during the research period. If GSK elects not to advance any product into research and development, the agreement will terminate at the end of the research period. If GSK elects to advance one or more products incorporating intellectual property generated under the research period for further research and development, the agreement will terminate on a product-by-product and country-by-country basis upon the latter of the product being no longer covered by a patent related to the GSK licensed product, or 10 years after the first commercial sale of the GSK licensed product in such a country.

No development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date.

#### ***Platform Technology Transfer and License Agreement with GSK***

On April 21, 2016, the Company entered into a Platform Technology Transfer and License Agreement with GSK for the research, development, and commercialization of novel bispecific antibodies enabled using the Company's Azymetric platform. Each of the two agreements with GSK were negotiated independently and the deliverables covered by the respective contracts utilize different therapeutic platforms and are unrelated to one another. Accordingly, the Platform Technology and License Agreement with GSK has been accounted for as a new arrangement.

Upon execution of the agreement, the Company received a technology access fee of \$6.0 million on May 3, 2016. In accordance with ASC 605-25, the Company identified the following deliverables at the inception of the GSK agreement: (1) the non-exclusive research license, (2) commercial license (3) transfer of the Company's platform technology (Azymetric) and relevant know-how, (4) technical assistance if required by GSK in connection with the transfer of technology, and (5) the obligation to provide future technology improvement and updates, when and if available. The Company determined that the licenses did not have stand-alone value without the Company's platform technology and its technical assistance during the transfer of the technology. Accordingly, deliverables (1) through (4) were considered as a single unit of accounting and the technology access fee of \$6.0 million has been allocated to this unit of accounting and has been recognized as revenue upon completion of the transfer of the Company's technology and technical know-how to GSK.

The upfront payment of \$6.0 million was allocated to the research license deliverable, commercial license deliverable, technology platform deliverable and technical assistance provided during the technology transfer deliverable using the relative estimated selling price method. The Company estimated the best estimate of selling price of the licenses and technology platform based on comparable license and collaboration arrangements. The best estimate of selling price for the other deliverables was estimated using internal estimates of cost to perform the specific services plus a normal profit margin for providing the services. The Company concluded that the best estimate of selling price for the obligation to deliver future technology improvements and updates was a nominal amount, as the Company has no intention of performing and has made no commitment to perform or provide additional update work on the applicable technology platform. Accordingly, no arrangement consideration was allocated to this deliverable.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Company is also eligible to receive up to \$30.0 million in research milestone payments; up to \$152.0 million in development milestone payments; and up to \$720.0 million in commercial sales milestone payments. In addition, the Company is entitled to receive tiered royalties on potential sales. The Company determined that research, development and commercial milestones for the GSK agreement do not constitute milestones and will not be accounted for under the milestone method of revenue recognition. The events and conditions resulting in these payments do not meet the definition of a milestone because the achievement of these events solely depends on GSK's performance.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for GSK and us including the right for GSK to terminate the agreement in its sole discretion with advance notice to us. Termination provisions allow for GSK to terminate the agreement or specific antibody sequence pairs due to an incurable material breach by us, and under specific conditions, GSK shall have certain rights to continue the research, development, and commercialization of products with their license payment, milestone, and royalty obligations reduced by 50%.

No research, development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date.

### ***Collaboration and Cross License Agreement with Daiichi Sankyo, Co., Ltd. ("Daiichi")***

On September 26, 2016, the Company entered into a Collaboration and Cross License Agreement with Daiichi for the research, development, and commercialization of novel bispecific antibodies enabled using the Company's Azymetric and EFECT platforms. Additionally, the Company will license immuno-oncology antibodies from Daiichi, with the right to research, develop and commercialize multiple products globally in exchange for royalties on product sales. Under the agreement, Daiichi will have the option to develop and commercialize a single bispecific immuno-oncology therapeutic.

Upon execution of the agreement, the Company received a technology access fee of \$2.0 million. In accordance with ASC 605-25, the Company identified the following deliverables at the inception of the Daiichi agreement: (1) the research license, (2) the transfer of the Company's platform technologies (Azymetric and EFECT) and relevant know-how, and (3) research activities to be performed on behalf of Daiichi. The Company concluded that the license did not have stand-alone value without the Company's platform technologies. Accordingly, the deliverables (1) and (2) were considered as a single unit of accounting and the technology access fee of \$2.0 million was allocated to this unit of accounting, and was recognized as revenue upon delivery of the licenses and transfer of the relevant technology. The research activities to be performed on behalf of Daiichi after the transfer of the technology are also determined to have stand-alone value as Daiichi or another third party could provide these services without the Company's assistance. The revenue to be received from Daiichi from delivery of these services is recognized upon performance of such activities at rates consistent with prevailing market rates. The Company concluded that, at the inception of the agreement, Daiichi's option to obtain a Commercial License did not represent a deliverable because it is a substantive option and did not contain a significant or incremental discount.

The consideration otherwise allocable to delivered units is limited to the amount that is not contingent on the delivery of additional items or fulfillment of other performance conditions. Consequently, the arrangement consideration related to the research activities to be performed on behalf of Daiichi after the transfer of the technology was excluded from the allocation arrangement consideration because the consideration and performance are contingent upon Daiichi requesting performance of the services and these services are priced at an estimated fair value.

The upfront payment of \$2.0 million was allocated to the research license deliverable and technology platform deliverable using the relative estimated selling price method. The Company estimated the best estimate of selling price of the licenses and technology platform based on comparable license and collaboration arrangements.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Company is also eligible to receive up to \$67.9 million in research and development milestone payments and commercial license option; and up to \$80.0 million in commercial sales milestone payments. In addition, the Company is eligible to receive tiered royalties on potential product sales. The Company determined that research, development and commercial milestones do not constitute milestones and will not be accounted for under the milestone method of revenue recognition, except a research milestone for \$1.0 million which is substantive. The events and conditions resulting in these payments do not meet the definition of a milestone because the achievement of these events solely depends on Daiichi's performance.

The agreement contains customary termination rights for Daiichi and us including the right for Daiichi to terminate the rights to our therapeutic platforms in its sole discretion with advance notice to us and for us to terminate our rights to Daiichi's antibodies with advance notice to Daiichi. The agreement shall terminate, with respect to Daiichi's license, if Daiichi fails to exercise its option or, on a Product-by-Product basis, until expiration of Daiichi's royalty obligations.

No research, development or commercial milestone payments or royalties have been received to date.

### **14. Financial instruments**

The Company evaluates financial assets and liabilities subject to fair value measurements on a recurring basis to determine the appropriate level at which to classify them each reporting period. This determination requires the Company to make subjective judgments as to the significance of inputs used in determining fair value and where such inputs lie within the fair value hierarchy. The fair market values of the financial instruments included in the financial statements, which include cash and cash equivalents, short term investments, accounts receivable, accounts payable and accrued liabilities, approximate their carrying values at December 31, 2015 and December 31, 2014, due to their short-term maturities. See note 10 for a summary of the warrant fair value balances.

#### ***Concentration of Credit risk***

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to a concentration of credit risk consist primarily of cash and cash equivalents, short term investments, accounts receivable and other receivables. Cash and cash equivalents and short term investments are invested in accordance with the Company's Treasury Policy with the primary objective being the preservation of capital and maintenance of liquidity. The Treasury Policy includes guidelines on the quality of financial instruments and defines allowable investments that the Company believes minimizes the exposure to concentration of credit risk. The Company limits its exposure to credit loss by placing its cash and cash equivalents with high credit quality financial institutions.

The Company does not currently maintain a provision for bad debts on accounts receivable. The maximum exposure to credit risk for accounts receivable at the reporting date was \$1.5 million (2014 – \$0.3 million) and all account receivables are due within a year.

#### ***Liquidity risk***

Liquidity risk is the risk that the Company will encounter difficulty in meeting the obligations associated with its financial liabilities that are settled by delivering cash or another financial asset. The Company's approach to managing liquidity is to ensure, as far as possible, that it will always have sufficient liquidity to meet its liabilities when due. The ability to do this relies on the Company collecting its trade receivables in a timely manner, by maintaining sufficient cash and cash equivalents and securing additional financing as needed.

The Company's financial obligations include accounts payable and accrued liabilities which generally fall due within 45 days and the Company's current portion of capital lease obligations which fall due within the next 12 months.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Foreign currency risk**

The Company undertakes certain transactions in currencies other than U.S. dollars and as such is subject to risk due to fluctuations in exchange rates. The Company does not use derivative instruments to hedge exposure to foreign exchange rate risk due to the low volume of transactions denominated in foreign currencies. Non-U.S. dollar denominated payables are paid at the converted rate as due.

The operating results and financial position of the Company are reported in U.S. dollars in the Company's financial statements. The fluctuation of the U.S. dollar in relation to the Canadian dollar and other foreign currencies will consequently have an impact upon the Company's loss and may also affect the value of the Company's assets and the amount of shareholders' equity.

### **15. Income Taxes**

a. Income tax expense (recovery) varies from the amounts that would be computed by applying the expected income tax rate of 26% to loss before income taxes as shown in the following tables:

	Year ended December 31,	
	2014	2015
Computed taxes at Canadian tax rate (26%)	\$ (3,365)	\$ (4,975)
Non-deductible expenses	155	368
Difference between domestic and foreign tax rate	—	11
Effect of change in tax rate	—	—
Adjustments to prior year	(17)	(2)
Change in valuation allowance	4,927	6,098
Other	(1,700)	(1,466)
Income tax expense	\$ —	\$ 34

	Year ended December 31	
	2014	2015
Current income tax expense	\$ —	\$ 18
Deferred income tax expense	—	16
Income tax expense	—	34

Income tax expense for the year ended December 31, 2015 arose from the operations of Zymeworks Biopharmaceuticals Inc., the Company's wholly owned subsidiary in the United States.

## [Table of Contents](#)

b. Deferred income tax assets and liabilities result from the temporary differences between the amount of assets and liabilities recognized for financial statement and income tax purposes. The significant components of the deferred income tax assets and liabilities are as follows:

	<u>December 31,</u> <u>2014</u>	<u>December 31,</u> <u>2015</u>
<b>Deferred tax assets:</b>		
Non-capital losses carried forward	\$ 4,172	\$ 5,279
Share issue costs	94	44
Property and equipment	57	158
Research and development deductions and credits	7,232	9,940
Other	1	8
	<u>11,556</u>	<u>15,429</u>
<b>Deferred tax liabilities:</b>		
Property and equipment	<u>—</u>	<u>(24)</u>
	<u>—</u>	<u>(24)</u>
	<u>11,556</u>	<u>15,405</u>
Less: valuation allowance	<u>(11,556)</u>	<u>(15,421)</u>
Net deferred tax liabilities	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ (16)</u>

The realization of deferred income tax assets is dependent upon the generation of sufficient taxable income during future periods in which the temporary differences are expected to reverse. The valuation allowance is reviewed on a quarterly basis and if the assessment of the “more likely than not” criteria changes, the valuation allowance is adjusted accordingly.

c. At December 31, 2015, the Company has net operating losses carried forward for tax purposes in Canada, which are available to reduce taxable income of future years of approximately \$20.3 million (December 31, 2014—\$16.0 million) expiring commencing 2026 through 2035.

At December 31, 2015, the Company also has unclaimed tax deductions for scientific research and experimental development expenditures of approximately \$26.4 million (2014—\$21.9 million) with no expiry. At December 31, 2015, the Company has approximately \$3.9 million (2014—\$2.0 million) of investment tax credits available to offset Canadian federal and provincial taxes payable expiring commencing in 2021 through 2035.

## [Table of Contents](#)

d. The investment tax credits and non-capital losses and net operating losses for income tax purposes expire as follows:

<u>Expiry date</u>	<u>Investment tax credits</u>	<u>Non-capital losses</u>
2021	\$ 86	\$ —
2022	158	—
2023	94	—
2024	1	—
2025	522	—
2026	31	191
2027	30	417
2028	19	636
2029	24	868
2030	14	1,271
2031	133	1,800
2032	490	583
2033	557	1,970
2034	381	5,546
2035	1,378	7,020
	<u>\$ 3,918</u>	<u>\$ 20,302</u>

The benefit of an uncertain tax position that is more likely than not of being sustained upon audit by the relevant taxing authority must be recognized at the largest amount that is more likely than not to be sustained. No portion of the benefit of an uncertain tax position may be recognized if the position has less than a 50% likelihood of being sustained. The Company currently do not have any unrecognized tax benefits of uncertain tax positions. The Company does not expect any significant increases to their unrecognized tax benefits within twelve months of the reporting date.

The Company currently files income tax returns in Canada and the United States, the jurisdictions in which the Company believes that it is subject to tax. Further, while the statute of limitations in each jurisdiction where an income tax return has been filed generally limits the examination period, as a result of loss carry-forwards, the limitation period for examination generally does not expire until several years after the loss carry-forwards are utilized. Other than routine audits by tax authorities for tax credits and tax refunds that the Company has claimed, Management is not aware of any other material income tax examination currently in progress by any taxing jurisdiction. Tax years ranging from 2003 to 2015 remain subject to Canadian income tax examinations.

## 16. Commitments and Contingencies

### *Lease Commitments*

The Company leases office premises in Vancouver, British Columbia and Seattle, Washington that expire in August 2021 and January 2022, respectively. The Company has also entered into a lease for lab space in Vancouver, British Columbia that will commence in September 2016 and will expire in August 2021. The leases contain rent escalation clauses. The Company also leases pieces of office equipment under capital lease agreements. Future minimum lease payments under the non-cancellable operating leases and capital leases at September 30, 2016 are as follows:

	<u>Payments Due By Period (unaudited)</u>				<u>Total</u>
	<u>Less Than 1 Year</u>	<u>1 to 3 Years</u>	<u>3 to 5 Years</u>	<u>More Than 5 Years</u>	
Capital lease obligations	\$ 6	\$ 8	\$ 2	\$ —	\$ 16
Operating lease obligations	1,585	3,596	3,314	174	8,669
Total contractual obligations	<u>1,591</u>	<u>3,604</u>	<u>3,316</u>	<u>174</u>	<u>8,685</u>

### ***Other Commitments***

The Company has entered into research collaboration agreements with strategic partners, in the ordinary course of operations, that may include contractual milestone payments related to the achievement of pre-specified research, development, regulatory and commercialization events and indemnification provisions, which are common in such agreements. The maximum amount of potential future indemnification is unlimited; however, the Company currently holds commercial and product liability insurance. This insurance limits the Company's liability and may enable it to recover a portion of any future amounts paid. Historically, the Company has not made any indemnification payments under such agreements and the Company believes that the fair value of these indemnification obligations is minimal. Accordingly, the Company has not recognized any liabilities relating to these obligations for any period presented.

In August 2016, the Company entered into a license agreement with Innovative Targeting Solutions Inc., or ITS, to use ITS' protein engineering technology for the development and commercialization of antibody and protein therapeutics. Pursuant to the agreement, the Company agreed to pay an aggregate of \$12.0 million in annual licensing fees to ITS over a five-year period. The licensing fee for the first year was \$1.0 million, which has been recorded in prepaid assets and is being amortized over a twelve-month period. The Company may also be required to make payments to ITS upon the achievement of certain development and commercial milestones, as well as royalty payments on net sales.

In connection with the Kairos acquisition, the Company may be required to make future payments to CVI upon the direct achievement of certain development milestones for products incorporating certain Kairos intellectual property, as well as royalty payments on the net sales of such products. For out-licensed products and technologies incorporating certain Kairos intellectual property, the Company may be required to pay CVI a mid-single digit percentage of the future revenue as a result of a revenue sharing agreement.

### ***Contingencies***

From time to time, the Company may be subject to various legal proceedings and claims related to matters arising in the ordinary course of business. The Company does not believe it is currently subject to any material matters where there is at least a reasonable possibility that a material loss may be incurred.

### **17. Subsequent Events**

In addition to events subsequent to December 31, 2015 disclosed elsewhere herein, the Company notes the following:

On November 9, 2016, the Company granted a total of 595,855 stock options, with an exercise price of C\$8.69 to certain employees in conjunction with its quarterly option grants.

On November 9, 2016, the Company amended the Stock Option Plan to (i) provide for the grant of incentive stock options to certain U.S. option holders and (ii) authorize the Company's board of directors to extend the terms of certain stock options.

On November 17, 2016, the Company and its former Chief Scientific Officer ("CSO") entered into a Separation Agreement and Release ("Separation Agreement"). The Separation Agreement includes certain terms related to salary, stock awards and benefits continuance.

On December 1, 2016, Lilly notified the Company that it has achieved a research milestone specified under the second licensing and collaboration agreement entitling the Company to receive a \$2.0 million milestone payment.

On January 6, 2017, the Company granted a total of 22,000 stock options with an exercise price of C\$9.49 to certain employees in conjunction with its quarterly option grants.

**18. Reclassification of Expenses**

The Company reclassified certain legal expenses from research and development expenses to general and administrative expenses, including \$1,196 and \$1,346 for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2015, respectively. The Company also reclassified \$1,058 and \$1,474 for the nine months ended September 30, 2015 and 2016, respectively.

**UNAUDITED PRO FORMA CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**
**Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Statement of Loss (Unaudited)**
**(Expressed in thousands of U.S. dollars except share and per share data)**

	Nine months ended September 30, 2016				Zymeworks Inc. Pro Forma Consolidated
	Historical Zymeworks Inc.	Historical Kairos Therapeutics Inc.	Pro Forma Adjustments	Note	
Revenue					
Research and developmental collaborations	\$ 8,777	\$ —	\$ —		\$ 8,777
Operating expenses:					
Research and development	27,898	91	(75)	3e	27,914
Government grants and credits	—	(432)	—		(432)
	27,898	(341)	(75)		27,482
General and administrative	7,437	727	(40)	3e	8,124
Total operating expenses	\$ 35,335	\$ 386	\$ (115)		\$ 35,606
Loss from operations	\$ (26,558)	\$ (386)	\$ 115		\$ (26,829)
Other income and expenses:					
Interest and other expense	(749)	—	—		(749)
Change in fair value of warrant liabilities	(747)	—	—		(747)
Accretion	(380)	—	—		(380)
Interest and other income	238	—	—		238
Foreign exchange gain / (loss)	1,273	—	—		1,273
Equity loss on investment	(98)	—	98	3a	—
Gain on fair value of equity investment	177	—	(177)	3b	—
Impairment on IPR&D intangible assets	(768)	—	—		(768)
Loss before income taxes	(27,612)	(386)	36		(27,962)
Income tax expense	(327)	—	—		(327)
Deferred income tax benefit	5,407	—	(5,407)	3c	—
Net loss	\$ (22,532)	\$ (386)	\$ (5,371)		\$ (28,289)
Basic and diluted loss per common share	(0.75)				(0.90)
Weighted-average number of outstanding shares—basic and diluted	30,085,263		1,238,326	3d	31,323,589

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated statement of loss.

**Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Statement of Loss (Unaudited)**  
 (Expressed in thousands of U.S. dollars except share and per share data)

	Year Ended December 31, 2015				
	Historical Zymeworks Inc.	Historical Kairos Therapeutics Inc.	Pro Forma Adjustments	Note	Zymeworks Inc. Pro Forma Consolidated
Revenue					
Research and developmental collaborations	\$ 9,660	\$ —	\$ —		\$ 9,660
Operating expenses:					
Research and development	24,654	349	—		25,003
Government grants and credits	(251)	(189)	—		(440)
	24,403	160	—		24,563
General and administrative	5,217	770	—		5,987
Total operating expenses	\$ 29,620	\$ 930	\$ —		\$ 30,550
Loss from operations	\$ (19,960)	\$ (930)	\$ —		\$ (20,890)
Other income and expenses:					
Interest and other expense	(18)	—	—		(18)
Interest and other income	324	—	—		324
Foreign exchange gain / (loss)	518	—	—		518
Loss before income taxes	(19,136)	(930)	—		(20,066)
Income tax expense	(34)	—	—		(34)
Net loss	\$ (19,170)	\$ (930)	\$ —		\$ (20,100)
Basic and diluted loss per common share	(0.71)				(0.64)
Weighted-average number of outstanding shares—basic and diluted	26,888,906		4,350,017	3d	31,238,923

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of this unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated statement of loss.*

**Notes to the Pro Forma Condensed Consolidated Statements of Loss for the nine months ended  
September 30, 2016 and for the year ended December 31, 2015  
(Expressed in thousands of U.S. dollars except share and per share data) (Unaudited)**

**1. Basis of presentation**

These unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated statements of loss (“pro forma financial statements”) have been prepared in connection with the acquisition of Kairos Therapeutics Inc. (“Kairos”) by Zymeworks Inc. (the “Company”). The unaudited pro forma financial statements of the Company and its subsidiaries have been prepared, for illustrative purposes only, as if the acquisition described in note 2 had occurred on January 1, 2015. A pro forma condensed consolidated balance sheet has not been provided as the acquisition has been reflected in the Company’s September 30, 2016 consolidated balance sheet.

These unaudited pro forma financial statements have been prepared in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles (“U.S. GAAP”) using the accounting policies described in the Company’s audited consolidated financial statements as at December 31, 2015. The unaudited pro-forma financial statements should be read together with the audited consolidated financial statements of the Company for the year ended December 31, 2015, and notes thereto, as well as the unaudited condensed interim consolidated financial statements of the Company for the nine months ended September 30, 2016.

The unaudited pro forma financial statements were prepared in accordance with Article 11 of Regulation S-X. Accordingly, the historical consolidated financial statements have been adjusted in the pro forma financial statements to give effect to pro forma events that are (1) directly attributable to the acquisition, (2) expected to have a continuing impact on the Company, and (3) factually supportable. The pro forma financial statements present the loss from continuing operations before nonrecurring charges or credits directly attributable to the acquisition.

The historical Kairos results from operations included in the unaudited pro forma financial statements have been prepared from information derived from the following:

(a) Audited financial statements of Kairos for the year ended March 31, 2015 and the nine months ended December 31, 2015, which appear elsewhere in this prospectus; and

(b) The accounting records of Kairos for the period from January 1, 2015 to March 31, 2015 and for the period from January 1, 2016 to the date of acquisition, March 18, 2016.

As Kairos financial statements and accounting records are prepared in Canadian dollars, for the purposes of these unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated statements of loss, its results of operations for the periods presented have been translated into U.S. dollars based on the average exchange rate for the respective periods presented. To comply with the rules and regulations of the SEC, the Kairos amounts included in the unaudited pro forma condensed consolidated statement of loss for the year ended December 31, 2015 have been calculated by combining the amounts included in Kairos’ statement of loss and comprehensive loss for the nine months ended December 31, 2015 with its results of operations for the three months ended March 31, 2015, which amounts have been extracted from Kairos’ accounting records and are included in Kairos’ statement of loss and comprehensive loss for the year ended March 31, 2015.

The unaudited pro-forma financial statements do not necessarily reflect what the combined company’s results of operations would have been had the acquisition occurred on January 1, 2015. They may also not be useful in predicting future results of operations for the combined company. The actual results from operations may differ significantly from the pro forma results reflected herein. The combined results of operations do not reflect the realization of any expected cost savings or other synergies from the acquisition of Kairos as a result of planned cost savings or other initiatives following the completion of the acquisition.

## 2. Description of transaction and preliminary purchase price allocation

On March 18, 2016, the Company completed the acquisition of all remaining issued and outstanding shares of Kairos for \$24,778 (C\$32,257). This consideration was comprised of \$23,043 (C\$30,000) in common share equity of the Company, and \$1,733 (C\$2,257) in cash, pursuant to a net working capital adjustment determined at closing. At the time of acquisition, the Company issued 3,628,572 common shares having a fair value of \$19,203 (C\$ \$25,000). The remaining 725,714 common shares having a fair value of \$3,861 (C\$ \$5,000) were held back for a period of six months under the terms of the agreement for the seller's satisfaction of general representations and warranties and for potential working capital adjustments and were issuable in six months, subject to adjustments for any undisclosed matters that may have arisen during that period. On September 18, 2016, 721,445 common shares were issued after accounting for the finalization of adjustments relating to undisclosed pre-acquisition invoices. Prior to the completion of the acquisition, the Company held a 19.99% ownership interest in Kairos, which was accounted for under the equity method.

The acquisition is accounted for in accordance with ASC—805 Business Combinations using the acquisition method with the Company identified as the acquirer. The fair values of the consideration issued, assets acquired and liabilities assumed in the acquisition at March 18, 2016 are not yet final. The Company is continuing its review of the fair values and allocations during the measurement period, which shall not exceed one year from the acquisition date. The preliminary consideration and purchase price allocation was as follows:

<b>Total Consideration:</b>	
4,350,017 Zymeworks common shares	\$22,973
Cash paid	1,733
Total consideration for 80.01% equity	24,706
Fair value of previously held 19.99% equity interest	4,264
Implied purchase price consideration for 100% equity	<u>\$28,970</u>
<b>Net assets acquired:</b>	
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 1,811
Receivables and other assets	546
IPR&D	20,700
Goodwill	12,016
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	(721)
Deferred tax liabilities	(5,382)
	<u>\$28,970</u>

The preliminary fair value of each IPR&D is estimated using either the cost approach, market approach or combination of the two. The cost approach estimates the total value of the asset by reference to costs that would have been incurred in order to recreate the asset while the market approach analyses recent transactions involving comparable assets. Within these two approaches the following valuation methods were used: comparable public company cost multiple approach, expected investor return approach, and the guideline technology and collaboration transactions approach. IPR&D are required to be classified as indefinite-lived assets until they become definite lived assets upon the successful completion or the abandonment of the associated research and development effort. Accordingly, all IPR&D acquired is currently classified as indefinite-lived and is not currently being amortized.

Based on the fair values above, an amount of \$12,016 has been allocated to goodwill, which represents the excess of the purchase price over the fair values assigned to the net assets acquired. Goodwill is attributable to strategic, synergistic and other benefits expected to arise after the Company's acquisition of Kairos. Kairos' antibody-drug conjugate ("ADC") platform technology has a potential to develop new technologies and therapeutics, and the Company believes that additional platform may emerge from the research synergies

afforded by the business combination. Synergies are expected as both the Company and Kairos are underpinned by complementary antibody technologies and both are experts in designing and developing antibodies as therapeutic drug candidates. There is also future potential value expected to be derived from Kairos' existing collaboration agreements, and the potential to enter into new collaboration agreements. The Company will also benefit from the expertise, knowledge, experience and networks of the Kairos' management team, as well as the depth and breadth of its existing laboratory research team in the fields of chemistry and biologics.

The full amount of the value of goodwill has been assigned to the entire Company, since management has determined that the Company has only one reporting unit. The goodwill is not deductible for tax purposes, and is not amortized, but will be evaluated for impairment on an annual basis or more often if the Company identifies impairment indicators that would require earlier testing.

A deferred tax liability of \$5,382 was recorded for the excess of the fair value of the IPR&D over the corresponding tax bases, with a corresponding increase recorded to goodwill. The deferred tax liability relates to an indefinite lived asset. In addition, Zymeworks Inc. has unclaimed tax deductions for scientific research and experimental development expenditures with no expiry, for which the Company previously had provided a valuation allowance. Because of the indefinite life of these tax attributes, the deferred tax liability that arose from the preliminary purchase price allocation has been used as a source of potential income in determining that the realization of certain SR&ED tax credits is now more likely than not. Consequently, the Company reduced its valuation allowance by \$5,407 and recognized a corresponding deferred income tax benefit in the statement of operations.

This preliminary purchase price allocation has been used to prepare pro forma adjustments in the pro forma financial statements. The final purchase price allocation will be determined when the Company has completed the detailed valuations and necessary calculations. The final allocation could differ materially from the preliminary allocation used in the pro forma adjustments. The final allocation could include changes in the allocations to IPR&D and goodwill, the determination of the deferred tax liability and resulting reduction in the valuation allowance, and other changes to assets and liabilities.

### **3. Pro forma adjustments**

The pro forma adjustments are based on preliminary estimates and assumptions that are subject to change. The unaudited pro forma financial statements reflect the following adjustments as if the acquisition of Kairos had occurred on January 1, 2015.

- a) To eliminate the equity in loss of Kairos for the nine months ended September 30, 2016.
- b) To eliminate the gain that was recorded due to remeasurement of the fair value of the Company's original 19.99% interest in Kairos at the acquisition date.
- c) To eliminate the deferred income tax benefit related to the reduction in the Company's valuation allowance that is directly attributable to the acquisition and that is not expected to have a continuing impact on the Company.
- d) Represents the increase in the weighted average shares in connection with the issuance of 4,350,017 common shares related to the acquisition of Kairos as if the acquisition had taken place on January 1, 2015. For the periods presented, diluted loss per common share does not differ from basic loss per common share since the effect of the Company's stock options and warrants is anti-dilutive.
- e) To eliminate non-recurring transaction costs that are directly attributable to the Kairos acquisition.



**Financial Statements**

**Kairos Therapeutics Inc.**

**(Expressed in Canadian dollars)**

**Nine months ended December 31, 2015 and year ended  
March 31, 2015**

## INDEPENDENT AUDITORS' REPORT

The Board of Directors of Kairos Therapeutics Inc.

### Report on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of Kairos Therapeutics Inc., which comprise the balance sheets as of December 31, 2015 and March 31, 2015, the related statements of loss and comprehensive loss, changes in shareholders' equity (deficiency), and cash flows for the nine months ended December 31, 2015 and for the year ended March 31, 2015, and the related notes to the financial statements.

#### *Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements*

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

#### *Auditors' Responsibility*

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditors' judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

#### *Opinion*

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Kairos Therapeutics Inc. as of December 31, 2015 and March 31, 2015, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the nine months ended December 31, 2015 and for the year ended March 31, 2015 in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

#### *Emphasis of Matter*

Without modifying our opinion, we draw attention to note 1 in the financial statements which indicates that Kairos Therapeutics Inc. has continued to incur net losses. These conditions, along with other matters as set forth in note 1 in the financial statements, indicate the existence of a material uncertainty that casts significant doubt about Kairos Therapeutics Inc.'s ability to continue as a going concern.

/s/ KPMG LLP  
Chartered Professional Accountants  
October 11, 2016  
Vancouver, Canada

**Kairos Therapeutics Inc.**  
**Balance Sheets As Of December 31, 2015 and March 31, 2015**  
**(Expressed in Canadian dollars)**

	December 31 2015 \$	March 31 2015 \$
<b>ASSETS</b>		
<b>Current assets:</b>		
Cash and cash equivalents	2,990,298	20,762
Government grants and other receivables	81,539	61,482
Prepaid expenses	4,255	—
	<b>3,076,092</b>	<b>82,244</b>
Equipment (note 7)	3,813	—
	<b>3,079,905</b>	<b>82,244</b>
<b>LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY (DEFICIENCY)</b>		
<b>Current Liabilities</b>		
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities (note 6)	473,343	74,593
Loan payable (note 5)	—	1,474,364
	<b>473,343</b>	<b>1,548,957</b>
<b>Shareholders' equity (deficiency):</b>		
Common shares: 2,009,333 issued and outstanding (note 4)	20,094	16,984
Preferred shares: 438,081 issued (note 4)	5,000,000	—
Deficit	(2,413,532)	(1,483,697)
	<b>2,606,562</b>	<b>(1,466,713)</b>
	<b>3,079,905</b>	<b>82,244</b>

Nature of business and going concern (note 1)

Related party transactions (note 6)

Commitments and contingencies (note 10)

Subsequent event (note 11)

See accompanying notes to financial statements.

**Kairos Therapeutics Inc.**  
**Statements Of Loss and Comprehensive Loss For And The Nine Months Ended December 31, 2015 and for The Year Ended March 31, 2015**  
**(Expressed in Canadian dollars)**

	Nine months ended December 31 2015 \$	Year ended March 31 2015 \$
<b>EXPENSES</b> (note 6)		
General and administrative	851,831	665,830
Project Expenditures	267,392	798,743
Depreciation	762	—
Government grants	(190,150)	(183,040)
<b>Loss and comprehensive loss</b>	<b><u>(929,835)</u></b>	<b><u>(1,281,533)</u></b>

See accompanying notes to financial statements.

**Kairos Therapeutics Inc.**  
**Statements of Changes in Shareholder's Equity (Deficiency) for the nine months ended December 31, 2015 and for the year ended March 31, 2015**  
**(Expressed in Canadian dollars)**

	Common Shares		Preferred shares		Accumulated Deficit	Total \$
	Number	Amount \$	Number	Amount \$		
<b>Balance at March 31, 2014</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>—</b>	<b>—</b>	<b>(202,164)</b>	<b>(202,163)</b>
Issuance of common shares (note 4(a)(i))	1,698,332	16,983	—	—	—	16,983
Loss for the year	—	—	—	—	(1,281,533)	(1,281,533)
<b>Balance at March 31, 2015</b>	<b>1,698,333</b>	<b>16,984</b>	<b>—</b>	<b>—</b>	<b>(1,483,697)</b>	<b>(1,466,713)</b>
Issuance of common shares on exercise of options (note 4(b))	311,000	3,110	—	—	—	3,110
Issuance of preferred shares (note 4(a)(ii))	—	—	438,081	5,000,000	—	5,000,000
Loss for the period	—	—	—	—	(929,835)	(929,835)
<b>Balance at December 31, 2015</b>	<b><u>2,009,333</u></b>	<b><u>20,094</u></b>	<b><u>438,081</u></b>	<b><u>5,000,000</u></b>	<b><u>(2,413,532)</u></b>	<b><u>2,606,562</u></b>

See accompanying notes to financial statements.

**Kairos Therapeutics Inc.**  
**Statements Of Cash Flows For The Nine Months Ended December 31, 2015 and for the Year Ended March 31, 2015**  
**(Expressed in Canadian dollars)**

	Nine months ended December 31 2015 \$	Year ended March 31 2015 \$
<b>OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>		
Loss for the period	(929,835)	(1,281,533)
Items not involving cash:		
Depreciation of property and equipment (note 7)	762	—
Contractor expenses paid by related party	—	1,474,364
Changes in non-cash operating working capital:		
Government grants and other receivables	(20,057)	(61,482)
Prepared expenses	(4,255)	—
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	398,750	(127,570)
Net cash used in operating activities	<u>(554,635)</u>	<u>3,779</u>
<b>FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>		
Loan repaid	(1,474,364)	—
Issuance of share capital	5,003,110	16,983
Net cash provided by financing activities	<u>3,528,746</u>	<u>16,983</u>
<b>INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>		
Acquisition of equipment (note 7)	(4,575)	—
Increase in cash and cash equivalents	2,969,536	20,762
Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of period	20,762	—
Cash and cash equivalents, end of period	<u>2,990,298</u>	<u>20,762</u>

See accompanying notes to financial statements.

## Notes To The Financial Statements

### 1. NATURE OF BUSINESS AND GOING CONCERN

Kairos Therapeutics Inc. (the “Company”) was incorporated under the Business Corporations Act (British Columbia) on December 18, 2013. The Company is developing a pipeline of antibody-drug conjugate (“ADC”) therapeutics for the treatment of various forms of cancer. The technology was developed in-house at The Centre for Drug Research and Development (“CDRD”) and has been exclusively licensed to the Company from CDRD through its commercialization vehicle, CDRD Ventures Inc. Losses are expected to continue for the foreseeable future as the Company invests in product development.

The Company has incurred losses since inception and as at December 31, 2015, there is significant doubt about the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern, which is dependent upon its ability to obtain financing and to ultimately achieve profitable operations. The outcome of these matters cannot be predicted at this time.

These financial statements do not include any adjustments to the amounts and classifications of assets and liabilities that might be necessary should the Company be unable to continue in business.

Subsequent to period end, the Company was acquired by Zymeworks Inc. (note 11).

### 2. SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

The financial statements of the Company have been prepared in accordance with “U.S. GAAP.”

#### *Use of estimates*

The preparation of the financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP requires the Company to make estimates and judgments in certain circumstances that affect the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, revenue and expenses, and related disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities. In preparing these financial statements, management has made its best estimates and judgments of certain amounts included in the financial statements, giving due consideration to materiality. On an ongoing basis, the Company evaluates its estimates, including those related to government grants and credits, stock-based compensation, accrual of expenses and other contingencies. Management bases its estimates on historical experience or on various other assumptions that it believes to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could differ from these estimates.

#### *Cash and cash equivalents*

Cash and cash equivalents include cash on hand and short term deposits, with a maturity term of three months or less when acquired.

#### *Government grants and other receivables*

Government grants and other receivables are reported in the balance sheet at outstanding amounts. A majority of the receivables are due from a government agency, therefore collection risk is low.

#### *Equipment*

Equipment is recorded at cost, less accumulated depreciation. Depreciation is calculated on a straight-line basis over the following useful lives:

<u>Asset class</u>	<u>Rate</u>
Computer equipment	36 months

***Government grants and credits***

Government grants are recognized where there is reasonable assurance that the grant will be received and all attached conditions will be complied with. Reimbursements of eligible costs pursuant to government assistance programs are recorded as a reduction of research and development costs when the related costs have been incurred and there is reasonable assurance regarding collection of the claim. Grant claims not settled by the balance sheet date are recorded as receivables. The determination of the amount of the claim, and hence the receivable amount, requires management to make calculations based on its interpretation of eligible expenditures in accordance with the terms of the programs. The reimbursement claims submitted by the Company are subject to review by the relevant government agencies. Although the Company has used its best judgment and understanding of the related program agreements in determining the receivable amount, it is possible that the amounts could increase or decrease by a material amount in the near term dependent on the review and audit by the government agency.

The Company participates in the SR&ED Program, a federal tax incentive program that encourages Canadian businesses to conduct research and development in Canada. The benefits of investment tax credits for scientific research and development expenditures are recognized in the year the qualifying expenditure is made provided there is reasonable assurance of recoverability. This investment tax credit reduces the carrying cost of research and development expenditures. To date, the Company has a limited history of SR&ED claims and has not yet received or accrued amounts for investment tax credits receivable.

***Research and development costs***

Research and development expenses include costs that the Company incurs for its own and for the Company's strategic partners' research and development activities. Research and development expenditures are expensed as incurred. These costs primarily consist of employee related expenses including salaries and benefits, expenses incurred under agreements with contract research organizations, investigative sites and consultants that conduct the Company's clinical trials, the cost of acquiring and manufacturing clinical trial materials and other allocated expenses, share-based compensation expense, and costs associated with nonclinical activities and regulatory approvals.

***Stock-based compensation***

The Company recognizes stock-based compensation expense on share awards granted to employees and members of the board of directors based on their estimated grant date fair value using the Black-Scholes option pricing model. This Black-Scholes option pricing model uses various inputs to measure fair value, including estimated fair value of the Company's underlying common share at the grant date, expected term, estimated volatility, risk-free interest rate and expected dividend yields of the Company's common shares. The Company recognizes stock-based compensation expense, net of estimated forfeitures, in the statements of operations and comprehensive loss on a straight-line basis over the requisite service period.

***Financial instruments***

The Company accounts for fair value measurements in accordance with the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 820, Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures ("ASC 820"). ASC 820 defines fair value, establishes a fair value hierarchy for assets and liabilities measured at fair value, and requires expanded disclosures about fair value measurements.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The ASC 820 hierarchy ranks the quality of reliability of inputs, or assumptions, used in the determination of fair value, and requires assets and liabilities carried at fair value to be classified and disclosed in one of the following three categories:

- Level 1—Fair value is determined by using unadjusted quoted prices that are available in active markets for identical assets and liabilities. Cash and cash equivalents are assessed as a Level 1 financial instrument.
- Level 2—Fair value is determined by using inputs other than Level 1 quoted prices that are directly or indirectly observable. Inputs can include quoted prices for similar assets and liabilities in active markets or quoted prices for identical assets and liabilities in inactive markets. Related inputs can also include those used in valuation or other pricing models, such as interest rates and yield curves that can be corroborated by observable market data.
- Level 3—Fair value is determined by inputs that are unobservable and not corroborated by market data. Use of these inputs involves significant and subjective judgments to be made by a reporting entity—e.g., determining an appropriate adjustment to a discount factor for illiquidity associated with a given security.

### **Income Taxes**

The Company accounts for income taxes using the liability method of tax allocation. Deferred income taxes are recognized for the deferred income tax consequences attributable to differences between the carrying values of assets and liabilities and their respective income tax bases. Deferred income tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted income tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect on deferred income tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates is included in income when a change in tax rates is enacted. Deferred income tax assets are evaluated periodically and if realization is not considered more likely than not, a valuation allowance is provided. Income tax credits, such as investment tax credits, are included as part of the provision for income taxes.

### **3. RECENT ACCOUNTING PRONOUNCEMENTS**

In August 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-15, “Presentation of Financial Statements—Going Concern”, outlining management’s responsibility to evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about an entity’s ability to continue as a going concern, along with the required disclosures. ASU 2014-15 is effective for the annual period ending after December 15, 2016 with early adoption permitted. The Company does not anticipate a material impact to the Company’s financial statements as a result of this change.

### **4. SHARE CAPITAL**

Authorized - unlimited number of common shares with no par value

- unlimited Class A, B, C, D preferred shares with no par value

- (a) Share issuances
- (i) Common shares

The Company’s President acquired 748,333 shares for cash of \$0.01 per share which were placed in escrow, subject to an agreement dated April 1, 2014, to meet certain performance condition milestones for the Company’s research and development program. During December 2015, the performance conditions were met, the shares vested and were released from escrow.

Several Share Option Agreements, totaling 311,000 common shares, were signed and granted with an effective date of November 19, 2014. These options were exercised during the period ended December 31, 2015 and had an exercise price of \$0.01 each, payable in cash, and a nominal fair value at the grant date.

On April 1, 2014 the Company issued 949,999 common shares for \$9,500.

- (ii) Preferred share units

## [Table of Contents](#)

On December 21, 2015, the Company issued 438,081 Class A non-voting preferred share units to Zymeworks Inc. for total cash proceeds of \$5,000,000. Each preferred share unit consists of one Class A preferred share and one warrant. The warrants are convertible into 566,583 Class A preferred shares at an exercise price of \$0.01 per share with no expiry date.

Dividends on all preferred shares are at the Company's discretion and are non-cumulative. Preferred shares have priority over common shares with respect to dividends.

### (b) Share option plan

	Number of optioned common shares	Weighted average exercise price \$	Weighted average remaining contractual life (years)
Outstanding, March 31, 2014	—	—	—
Options granted	311,000	0.01	
Outstanding March 31, 2015	311,000	0.01	9.64
Options exercised	(311,000)	0.01	
Outstanding December 31, 2015	—	—	—

As at December 31, 2015, nil (March 31, 2015—54,000) options were vested and exercisable.

## 5. LOAN PAYABLE RELATED PARTIES

A Loan Agreement was signed on January 2, 2014 for the Company to receive up to \$1,700,000 from CDRD Ventures Inc., a shareholder, in the form of expenses paid on behalf of the Company. The loan was repaid on December 23, 2015 with the funds received from Zymeworks Inc. on the sale of preferred shares. The loan was non-interest bearing with a security interest in favor of CDRD Ventures Inc. in all of the present and after-acquired personal property of the Company, and was due on December 18, 2016.

## 6. RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

As at December 31, 2015, the Company had a balance of \$250,979 (March 31, 2015—\$74,593) in accounts payable due to CDRD Ventures Inc. for contractor's expenses paid on its behalf.

For the nine months ended December 31, 2015, the Company incurred \$245,298 (year ended March 31, 2015—\$573,663) for certain project and general and administrative expenses paid by CDRD Ventures Inc. on its behalf.

The Company has also received certain personnel services from CDRD Ventures Inc. at no charge since its inception.

## 7. EQUIPMENT

	Cost \$	Accumulated depreciation \$	Net book value \$
Computer equipment	4,575	762	3,183

## 8. FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS

The Company evaluates financial assets and liabilities subject to fair value measurements on a recurring basis to determine the appropriate level at which to classify them each reporting period. This determination

## [Table of Contents](#)

requires the Company to make subjective judgments as to the significance of inputs used in determining fair value and where such inputs lie within the fair value hierarchy. The fair market values of the financial instruments included in the financial statements, which include cash and cash equivalents, government grants and other receivables, accounts payable and accrued liabilities and loan payable, approximate their carrying values at December 31, 2015 and March 31, 2015, due to their short term maturities.

### *Credit risk*

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to a credit risk consist primarily of cash and cash equivalents and government grants and other receivables. The Company limits its exposure to credit loss by placing its cash and cash equivalents with high credit quality financial institutions.

The maximum exposure to credit risk for government grants and other receivables at December 31, 2015 was \$81,539 (March 31, 2015—\$61,482) and all receivables are due within a year.

### *Liquidity risk*

Liquidity risk is the risk that the Company will encounter difficulty in meeting the obligations associated with its financial liabilities that are settled by delivering cash or another financial asset.

The Company's approach to managing liquidity is to ensure, as far as possible, that it will always have sufficient liquidity to meet its liabilities when due. The ability to do this relies on the Company collecting its receivables in a timely manner, by maintaining sufficient cash and cash equivalents and securing additional financing as needed.

## **9. INCOME TAXES**

At December 31, 2015 the Company has net operating losses carried forward for tax purposes in Canada, which are available to reduce future taxable income of future years of approximately \$2,413,500 (March 31, 2015—\$1,279,000) expiring starting in 2024. A full valuation allowance has been provided. The difference between the statutory tax rate of 26% and actual taxes of nil is due to the non-recognition of the net operating losses carried forward.

## **10. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES**

The Company is committed to a royalty payments to CDRD Ventures Inc. for licensed technology at a rate of 2.5% and 5% of direct sales for certain products. Further, the Company is committed to a revenue share equal to 15% of all revenue actually received by the Company or its affiliates.

The Company has entered into license and research agreements that include indemnification provisions that are customary in the industry. These indemnification provisions generally require the Company to compensate the other party for certain damages and costs incurred as a result of third party claims or damages arising from these transactions.

The maximum amount of potential future indemnification is \$25,000. Historically, the Company has not made any indemnification payments under such agreements and the Company believes that the fair value of these indemnification obligations is minimal. Accordingly, the Company has not recognized any liabilities relating to these obligations for any period presented.

## **11. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

On March 18, 2016, the Company was sold to Zymeworks Inc. for \$32.26 million, which was settled in cash and shares of Zymeworks Inc. Retention bonuses to key employees are included in the Investment Agreement with Zymeworks Inc. given that certain employees stayed until the closing of the transaction. Total bonuses paid as a result of the closing of transaction were \$303,728. Prior to the completion of the sale, Zymeworks Inc. held all of the preferred shares issued by the Company (note 4(a)(ii)).

Shares

# Zymeworks Inc.

Common Shares



---

PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS

, 2017

---

*Joint Book-Running Managers*

**Citigroup  
Barclays  
Wells Fargo Securities**

---

*Lead Manager*

**Canaccord Genuity**

---

*Co-Manager*

**Cormark Securities (USA) Limited**

---

Through and including \_\_\_\_\_, 2017 (the 25th day after the date of this prospectus), all dealers that effect transactions in these securities, whether or not participating in this offering, may be required to deliver a prospectus. This is in addition to a dealer's obligation to deliver a prospectus when acting as an underwriter and with respect to an unsold allotment or subscription.

---

---

**PART II**

**INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS**

**Item 6. Indemnification of Directors and Officers**

Under the BCBCA, we may indemnify an individual who:

- a) is or was our director or officer;
- b) is or was a director or officer (y) at our request, or (z) of another corporation at the time when such corporation is or was an affiliate of ours; or
- c) at our request, is or was, or holds or held a position equivalent to that of a director or officer of a partnership, trust, joint venture or other unincorporated entity,

against a judgment, penalty or fine awarded or imposed in, or an amount paid in settlement of, any legal proceeding or investigative action, whether current, threatened, pending or completed, in which such eligible party is involved because of that association with us or other entity.

However, indemnification is prohibited under the BCBCA if:

- a) such eligible party did not act honestly and in good faith with a view to our best interests (or the other entity, as the case may be);
- b) in the case of a proceeding other than a civil proceeding, such eligible party did not have reasonable grounds for believing that such person's conduct was lawful;
- c) the indemnity or payment is made under an earlier agreement to indemnify or pay expenses and, at the time that the agreement to indemnify or pay expenses was made, the Company was prohibited from giving the indemnity or paying the expenses by its articles; or
- d) the indemnity or payment is made otherwise than under an earlier agreement to indemnify or pay expenses and, at the time that the indemnity or payment is made, the Company was prohibited from giving the indemnity or paying the expenses by its articles.

We may not indemnify or pay the expenses of an eligible party in respect of an action brought against an eligible party by or on behalf of us.

The BCBCA allows us to pay, as they are incurred in advance of a final disposition of a proceeding, the expenses actually and reasonably incurred by the eligible party, provided that we receive from such eligible party an undertaking to repay the amounts advanced if it is ultimately determined that such payment is prohibited. Following the final disposition of an eligible proceeding, the BCBCA requires us to pay the expenses actually and reasonably incurred by the eligible party in respect of that proceeding if the eligible party has not been reimbursed for those expenses and is wholly successful, on the merits or otherwise, in the outcome of the proceeding, or is substantially successful on the merits in the outcome of the proceeding.

Despite the foregoing, on application by us or an eligible party, a court may:

- a) order us to indemnify an eligible party in respect of an eligible proceeding;
- b) order us to pay some or all of the expenses incurred by an eligible party in an eligible proceeding;
- c) order enforcement of or any payment under an indemnification agreement;
- d) order us to pay some or all of the expenses actually and reasonably incurred by a person in obtaining the order of the court; and
- e) make any other order the court considers appropriate.

## Table of Contents

The BCBCA provides that we may purchase and maintain insurance for the benefit of an eligible party (or their heirs and personal or other legal representatives of the eligible party) against any liability that may be incurred by reason of the eligible party being or having been a director or officer, or in an equivalent position of ours or that of an associated corporation.

Our articles provide that, subject to the BCBCA, we must indemnify our directors, former directors or alternate directors and his or her heirs and legal personal representatives against all judgments, penalties or fines awarded or imposed in, or an amount paid in settlement of, all legal proceedings, investigative actions or other eligible proceedings (whether current, threatened, pending or completed) to which such person is or may be liable, and we must, after the final disposition of a legal proceeding, investigative action or other eligible proceeding, pay the expenses (which includes costs, charges and expenses, including legal and other fees but does not include judgments, penalties, fines or amounts paid in settlement of a proceeding) actually and reasonably incurred by such person in respect of that proceeding.

We have entered into indemnity agreements with our directors and certain officers which provide, among other things, that we will indemnify him or her to the fullest extent permitted by law from and against all liabilities, costs, charges and expenses incurred as a result of his or her actions in the exercise of his or her duties as a director or officer.

Prior to completion of this offering, we intend to enter into new indemnification agreements with each of our current directors and officers. The indemnification agreements will generally require that we indemnify and hold the indemnitees harmless to the greatest extent permitted by law for liabilities arising out of the indemnitees' service to us as directors and officers, if the indemnitees acted honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of the Company and, with respect to criminal and administrative actions or other non-civil proceedings that are enforced by monetary penalty, if the indemnitee had reasonable grounds to believe that his or her conduct was lawful. The indemnification agreements will also provide for the advancing of defense expenses to the indemnitees by us.

At present, we are not aware of any pending or threatened litigation or proceeding involving any of our directors, officers, employees or agents in which indemnification would be required or permitted.

The proposed form of Underwriting Agreement filed as Exhibit 1.1 to this Registration Statement provides for indemnification of our officers and directors by the underwriters against certain liabilities.

### **Item 7. Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities**

Set forth below is information regarding all securities issued by us without registration under the Securities Act since December 31, 2013. The information presented below does not give effect to our corporate reorganization as described in the prospectus forming part of this registration statement.

#### ***Common Share Issuances***

- From January 13, 2014 to October 21, 2014, we issued 2,411,496 of our common shares completing multiple tranches of a private placement that began in 2013, at a price of C\$4.86 per share. These shares were issued in an offshore transaction in reliance on the exemption from registration provided by Regulation S under the Securities Act.
- On October 22, 2014 and December 18, 2014, we completed private placements in which 4,909,091 and 727,273 of our common shares were issued, respectively, at a price of C\$5.50 per share. These shares were issued in an offshore transaction in reliance on the exemption from registration provided by Regulation S under the Securities Act.
- On December 24, 2014, we completed a private placement in which 1,652,893 common shares were issued at a price of C\$6.05 per share. These shares were issued in an offshore transaction in reliance on the exemption from registration provided by Regulation S under the Securities Act.

## Table of Contents

- On February 17, 2015, we completed a private placement issuance of 367,500 common shares at a price of C\$6.05 per share. These shares were issued in an offshore transaction in reliance on the exemption from registration provided by Regulation S under the Securities Act.
- On March 18, 2016, we completed our acquisition of Kairos and issued 3,628,572 common shares having a fair market value of \$19.2 million (C\$25.0 million) or \$5.29 per share (C\$6.89 per share). These shares were issued in an offshore transaction in reliance on the exemption from registration provided by Regulation S under the Securities Act.
- On September 18, 2016, we issued 721,445 of our common shares having a fair market value of C\$6.89 per share to account for adjustments relating to undisclosed Kairos pre-acquisition invoices. These shares were issued in an offshore transaction in reliance on the exemption from registration provided by Regulation S under the Securities Act.
- Since December 31, 2013, we have issued and sold to our employees, consultants and advisors an aggregate of 312,136 common shares in connection with the exercise of options granted under our equity compensation plans, at exercise prices ranging from C\$1.50 to C\$6.05 per share. The shares were either issued in an offshore transaction pursuant to Regulation S under the Securities Act or pursuant to Rule 701 under the Securities Act as transactions pursuant to written compensatory plans or pursuant to a written contract relating to compensation.

### ***Stock Option Grants***

- Since December 31, 2013, we have granted our employees, consultants and advisors options to purchase an aggregate of 4,757,472 common shares under our equity compensation plans at exercise prices ranging from C\$4.86 to C\$9.49 per share. The options were either issued in an offshore transaction pursuant to Regulation S under the Securities Act or pursuant to Rule 701 under the Securities Act as transactions pursuant to written compensatory plans or pursuant to a written contract relating to compensation.

### ***Preferred Share Issuances***

- On January 7, 2016, we issued an aggregate of 12,554,665 Class A preferred shares for \$4.90 per preferred share in connection with its Class A financing for an aggregate purchase price of approximately \$61.5 million. The preferred shares were issued in reliance on the exemption from registration under Regulation S or Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act on the basis that the transaction did not involve a public offering.

### ***Warrants***

- On October 22, 2014 we issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 280,000 common shares for an exercise price of C\$4.86 per share. On June 2, 2016, we issued a warrant to purchase 704,081 Class A preferred shares at an exercise price of \$4.90 per warrant, respectively. The warrants were issued in reliance on the exemption from registration under Regulation S or Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act on the basis that each transaction did not involve a public offering.

None of the foregoing transactions involved any underwriters, underwriting discounts or commissions or any public offering. All recipients had adequate access, through their relationships with us, to information about us. The sales of these securities were made without any general solicitation or advertising.

## **Item 8. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules**

The exhibits listed in the exhibits index, appearing elsewhere in this Registration Statement, have been filed as part of this Registration Statement.

## [Table of Contents](#)

All schedules have been omitted because they are not required, are not applicable or the information is otherwise set forth in the financial statements and related notes thereto.

### **Item 9. Undertakings**

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the Registrant pursuant to the provisions described in Item 6 hereof, or otherwise, the Registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the SEC such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the Registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the Registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the Registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

The undersigned Registrant hereby undertakes:

- To provide the underwriters specified in the underwriting agreement, at the closing, certificates in such denominations and registered in such names as required by the underwriters to permit prompt delivery to each purchaser.
- That for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the Registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4), or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.
- That for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the Registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form F-1 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, on \_\_\_\_\_, 2017.

ZYMEWORKS INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: Ali Tehrani

Title: President and Chief Executive Officer

## POWER OF ATTORNEY

Each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints each of Ali Tehrani and Neil Klompas as his true and lawful attorney-in-fact and agent, each acting alone, with full power of substitution and resubstitution, for him and in his name, place and stead, in any and all capacities, to sign any or all amendments (including post-effective amendments) to this registration statement and to sign any related registration statement that is to be effective upon filing pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act of 1933, and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto, and other documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, granting unto said attorneys-in-fact and agents, each acting alone, full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite and necessary to be done in and about the premises, as fully to all intents and purposes as he might or could do in person, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorneys-in-fact and agents, each action alone, or his substitute or substitutes, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signatures</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
_____ Ali Tehrani	President and Chief Executive Officer and Director (Principal Executive Officer)	, 2017
_____ Neil Klompas	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	, 2017
_____ Nick Bedford	Director	, 2017
_____ Kerry Blanchard	Director	, 2017
_____ Noel Hall	Director	, 2017
_____ Kenneth Hillan	Director	, 2017
_____ Dion Madsen	Director	, 2017

[Table of Contents](#)

<u>Signatures</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
_____ Hollings Renton	Director	, 2017
_____ Shermaine Tilley	Director	, 2017
_____ Lota Zoth	Director	, 2017

**AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the undersigned certifies that it is the duly authorized United States representative of the registrant and has duly caused this Registration Statement on Form F-1 to be signed by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, on , 2017.

ZYMEWORKS BIOPHARMACEUTICALS INC.  
(Authorized Representative in the United States)

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

**EXHIBIT INDEX**

<b>Exhibit No.</b>	<b>Description</b>
1.1*	Form of Underwriting Agreement.
3.1*	Form of Notice of Articles of the Registrant to be effective upon the closing of the offering.
3.2*	Form of Articles of the Registrant to be effective upon the closing of the offering.
4.1*	Specimen common share certificate.
4.2**	Form of Common Share Purchase Warrant issued to CTI Life Sciences Fund, L.P., dated October 22, 2014.
4.3**	Form of Warrant issued to Perceptive Credit Opportunities Fund, L.P.
4.4**	Investor Rights Agreement, dated January 7, 2016, by and among the Registrant and the investors listed on Schedule A-1 and Schedule A-2 thereto.
5.1*	Opinion of Blake, Cassels & Graydon LLP.
5.2*	Opinion of McCarthy Tétrault LLP.
10.1**#	Employment Agreement, dated December 13, 2007, by and between the Registrant and Dr. Ali Tehrani, as amended January 1, 2014.
10.2**#	Amended and Restated Employment Agreement, dated January 17, 2017, by and between the Registrant and Dr. Ali Tehrani.
10.3**#	Employment Agreement, dated January 25, 2007, by and between the Registrant and Neil Klompas, as amended October 23, 2007 and January 1, 2014.
10.4**#	Amended and Restated Employment Agreement, dated January 17, 2017, by and between the Registrant and Neil Klompas.
10.5**#	Employment Agreement, dated June 1, 2016, by and between the Registrant and Diana Hausman.
10.6**#	Amended and Restated Employment Agreement, dated January 18, 2017, by and between the Registrant and Diana Hausman.
10.7**#	Employment Agreement, dated July 1, 2007, by and between the Registrant and Surjit Dixit, as amended October 23, 2007.
10.8**#	Amended and Restated Employment Agreement, dated January 17, 2017, by and between the Registrant and Surjit Dixit.
10.9**#	Employment Agreement, dated March 18, 2016, by and between the Registrant and John Babcook.
10.10**#	Amended and Restated Employment Agreement, dated January 17, 2017, by and between the Registrant and John Babcook.
10.11**#	Employment Agreement, dated January 1, 2012, by and between the Registrant and Dr. Gordon Ng.
10.12**#	Separation Agreement, dated November 17, 2016, by and between the Registrant and Dr. Gordon Ng.
10.13##	Form of Indemnity Agreement between the Registrant and its officers and directors.
10.14*#	Employee Stock Option Plan and forms of agreements thereunder.
10.15*#	Amended and Restated Stock Option Plan to be effective upon the closing of the offering.
10.16*†	Amended and Restated Research and License Agreement, effective as of December 3, 2014, by and between the Registrant and Merck Sharp & Dohme Research GmbH.

## Table of Contents

<u>Exhibit No.</u>	<u>Description</u>
10.17*†	Licensing and Collaboration Agreement, effective as of December 17, 2013, by and between the Registrant and Eli Lilly and Company.
10.18*†	First Amendment to Licensing and Collaboration Agreement, effective as of May 30, 2014, by and between the Registrant and Eli Lilly and Company, as amended February 25, 2014 and June 16, 2014.
10.19*†	Licensing and Collaboration Agreement, effective as of October 22, 2014, by and between the Registrant and Eli Lilly and Company.
10.20*†	First Amendment to Licensing and Collaboration Agreement, effective as of June 4, 2015, by and between the Registrant and Eli Lilly and Company.
10.21*†	Second Amendment to Licensing and Collaboration Agreement, effective as of January 24, 2017, by and between the Registrant and Eli Lilly and Company.
10.22*†	Collaboration Agreement, effective as of December 23, 2014, by and among the Registrant, Celgene Corporation and Celgene Alpine Investment Co. LLC.
10.23*†	Collaboration and License Agreement, effective as of December 1, 2015, by and between the Registrant and GlaxoSmithKline Intellectual Property Development Limited.
10.24*†	Platform Technology Transfer and License Agreement, effective as of April 21, 2016, by and between the Registrant and GlaxoSmithKline Intellectual Property Development Limited.
10.25*†	Collaboration and Cross License Agreement, effective as of September 26, 2016, by and between the Registrant and Daiichi Sankyo Co., Ltd.
10.26**	Lease of Office Space Agreement dated as of April 6, 2015, by and between Poplar Properties Ltd. and Zymeworks Inc. and the Amendment thereto dated August 28, 2015.
10.27**	Credit Agreement and Guaranty, dated June 2, 2016, by and among the Registrant, Perceptive Credit Opportunities Fund, L.P. and PCOF Phoenix II Fund, L.P. and the guarantors from time to time party thereto.
16.1*	Letter from PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, dated _____, regarding the change in independent registered public accounting firm.
21.1**	Subsidiaries of the Registrant.
23.1*	Consent of KPMG LLP, an Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm.
23.2*	Consent of Blake, Cassels & Graydon LLP (included in Exhibit 5.1).
23.3*	Consent of McCarthy Tétrault LLP (included in Exhibit 5.2).
24.1	Powers of Attorney (reference is made to the signature pages of this Registration Statement)

\* To be filed by amendment.

\*\* Previously filed.

† Registrant has omitted portions of the referenced exhibit pursuant to a request for confidential treatment under Rule 406 promulgated under the Securities Act.

# Indicates management contract or compensatory plan.